

**HIS**

**BRITIS**

**By**

Author of "Go

"History m  
teging him with

**PRINT**

A

# HISTORY OF CANADA,

AND OF THE OTHER

BRITISH PROVINCES IN NORTH AMERICA.

By J. GEORGE HODGINS, LL.B., F.R.G.S.,

Author of "Geography and History of the British Colonies," "Lovell's General Geography,"  
and "Easy Lessons in General Geography."

Illustrated by Seventy-Two Engravings.



"History maketh a young man to be old, without either wrinkles or grey hairs, privi-  
leging him with the experience of age without . . . its . . . . . infirmities."—FULLER.

Content :

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY JOHN LOVELL;

AND FOR SALE AT THE BOOKSTORES.

1866.



RARE  
FC  
170  
H6

---

Entered, according to the Act of the Provincial Parliament, in the year  
one thousand eight hundred and sixty-six,

BY JOHN LOVELL,

In the Office of the Registrar of the Province of Canada.

---

42407

PI

gra  
esse  
reso  
reg  
it i  
mar  
the  
less  
mu  
Bri

A  
and  
sim  
assu  
mer  
seek  
and  
of g  
the  
the  
stag  
othe  
T  
a co  
aut  
T  
ced  
the

4

## EXTRACTS

FROM THE

### PREFATORY NOTE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

To have at least a general acquaintance with the geography and history of the country in which we reside, is essential to our intelligent appreciation of its physical resources and civil institutions. This is not only true in regard to those who are native born in the provinces, but it is especially the case with the newer residents in it,—many of whom have come hither long after the period of their school education had closed, when they had, doubtless, neither the inclination nor the opportunity of learning much of interest in regard to the history or condition of British America.

As colonists, we are politically in a transition state, . . . . and . . . . our status has yet to be determined. From the simple condition of Crown Colonies, we have gradually assumed responsibilities in government, trade, and commerce, which indicate a position of more stability. In seeking still further to concentrate our power and strength, and give a greater permanence to our institutions and form of government, . . . . how important to us are not only the teachings of history, but especially an acquaintance with the history of our own past condition, and with the various stages of colonial existence through which we and the other British American colonies have passed.

To furnish this information, at Mr. Lovell's request, in a connected and summary form, has been the object of the author in preparing this School History. . . . .

To say that the preparation of this and the author's preceding books has been an agreeable duty, is but to express the general feeling of those who have had the pleasure and

opportunity of aiding Mr. Lovell in his patriotic purpose of providing a colonial series of text-books within the provinces, especially adapted for use in the Schools in every part of the proposed Confederation. In the preparation and publication of these books, Mr. Lovell (one of the most enterprising of colonial publishers) is not only enabled, directly and indirectly, to give constant employment to numbers of persons, but he is enabled to effect a more patriotic purpose,—of keeping within the country large sums of money to promote its own industry, which were formerly sent, year after year, to the United States and England, to pay the artisan and publisher in those countries for books which were in use among us, and which were either ill adapted to our peculiar circumstances or inimical to our institutions.

A Biographical, Geographical, and General Index has been added at the end of the book; as also a Table giving the approximate pronunciation of some of the more difficult names, &c., in the History.

---

#### PREFATORY NOTE TO THE STEREOTYPED EDITION.

The Author has endeavoured carefully to revise the present edition, and to correct some errors which had crept into the History on its first production. Having had access to some new and valuable historical works (published since the first edition appeared) the Author has been enabled materially to enlarge several of the earlier chapters in the book, besides supplying omissions in most of the others. By adding as much of detail as possible, he has also sought to render the whole book more interesting and attractive. The approximate pronunciation of French and Indian names has been inserted in the text. To make room for these important additions, and also for several engravings, the publisher has consented to add *thirty-eight* extra pages to the book, thus making this stereotyped edition much more full and complete than the first edition.

# A HISTORY OF CANADA,

AND OF THE OTHER BRITISH PROVINCES.

---

## Preliminary.

RIGHTLY to understand the past and present history of the Provinces of British North America, it is necessary that we should include in it a brief reference to the earlier annals of those European nations whose discoveries and enterprise form the background of our own historical times. Especially should we take a rapid glance at the history of those two great nations which first brought the civilization of Europe to these shores. We should know something of the ancient Britons when they were first visited by the ubiquitous Roman;—when, from a rude and helpless infancy, they struggled and rose to a more than tribal manhood, even in those days of brief and lawless chieftainship. We should study their after-history, when invasion, disaster, and defeat, like the flames of a fiery furnace, had gradually fused their fitful nationality into that of their successive invaders; and we should feel proud of them, when, in after-times, the commercial tastes and regal instincts, which led them to plant colonies and establish good government, had slowly developed the institutions and moulded the national character of the people of that freedom-loving land which we rejoice to call our Mother Country.

Nor should we omit to take an equally rapid glance at the contemporaneous history of that other great and chiv-

alrous people who first discovered and colonized Canada;— a people who, by many national *souvenirs*, have left upon the broad and noble features of the whole of the North American continent, the deep impress of their undaunted courage and active enterprise in exploration and discovery.

After these rapid surveys should follow the main subject of the book,—a comprehensive summary of Franco-British American History during the last three hundred years.

We should as a people, in a devout and thankful spirit, “remember all the way which the LORD hath led [us] in the wilderness,” since we were planted here as a cluster of colonies; how He has preserved to us, and, after some agitation and strife, has even augmented to us, the enjoyment of those blessings of civil and religious freedom for which our fathers contended, and for which, as a nation, the empire of our Queen is so pre-eminently distinguished. Under His providential guidance and protection we have reached a period of great political prosperity and social peace, so that the British Colonies in America may be considered at this day as among the freest and most contented communities in the world.

In this grateful spirit, we purpose briefly to treat the subjects of this little work, and have divided them as follows:

PART I.—Introductory Sketches of European History.

PART II.—Era of Voyage and Discovery.

PART III.—Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

PART IV.—Sketch of Civil, Social, and Physical Progress of Canada.

PART V.—Sketches of the History of the Other British Provinces.

PART VI.—Summary Sketch of the History of Nova Scotia.

PART VII.—Summary Sketch of the History of New Brunswick.

PART VIII.—Summary Sketch of History of Prince Edward Island.

PART IX.—Summary Sketch of History of Island of Newfoundland.

PART X.—Summary Sketch of the History of the Hudson Bay Territory, Vancouver Island, and British Columbia.



## PART I.

### Introductory Sketches of European History

#### CHAPTER I.

BRIEF SUMMARY SKETCH OF ENGLISH HISTORY UNTIL THE  
DISCOVERY OF NEWFOUNDLAND BY CABOT, A.D. 1496.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Conquests of Britain—Rule of the Plantagenets and Tudors.*

1. *The Ancient Britons.*—England, when first conquered by the Romans, under Julius Cæsar, 55 B.C., was peopled by rude, warlike tribes, who lived in huts, and supported themselves by hunting and fishing. They could ill resist, at that time, the bravery and skill of the Roman hosts. Nevertheless, the neighbouring tribes rallied round their chiefs, and advanced even into the sea to give battle to the invaders; but they were overborne by the superior force and prowess of their more practised foe. Thus the Roman power first obtained a footing in Britain. For nearly five hundred years the Romans maintained but a feeble sovereignty over Britain, harassed as they were by the Picts and Scots. At length, A.D. 410, threatened by invasion from the Goths and Vandals at home, they silently withdrew, and, in 426, left Britain to her fate.

2. *The Saxons.*—Soon after the Romans left England, the Britons sought aid from the Saxons (a German tribe) against their old enemies, the Picts and Scots. The Saxons consented to aid them; but, in turn, became their conquerors. At the end of two hundred years they were masters of the whole country, and divided it into seven kingdoms, called the Saxon

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was England first visited? How were they received? Describe the condition of the inhabitants. What was the character of the Roman rule in Britain? Who next visited England?



**Hep-tar-chy.** About this time Christianity was introduced into Britain, and the mysterious worship of the Druids gradually ceased. The Hep-tar-chy continued for about two hundred years; when the seven kingdoms were united into one, under Egbert, a Saxon king, A.D. 827. The name "England"\* was given to the country by order of Egbert, (who was himself its first King) at a general Council held at Winchester in 829.

3. *The Danes.*—About the year of our Lord 883, a warlike people from Denmark and Norway made a descent upon the coasts of England.† They harassed the country, until A.D.



Alfred the Great.

896, when the celebrated King Alfred the Great drove them from the kingdom. With great sagacity he constructed a fleet of small ships or boats, with which he attacked and defeated the Danes before they could land upon the coast. In this way he laid the foundation of England's naval supremacy, which from that day to the present has been nobly maintained. For 160

years after Alfred's death, the Danes and Anglo-Saxon inhabitants fiercely contended, with more or less success, for the mastery of England. At length, in 1066, a third combatant appeared upon the field, who ultimately decided the contest.

4. *The Norman Conquest.*—William, duke of Normandy, a leader of the Normans, or Northmen, from Denmark, who had

\* This name was derived from *Anglen*, a village near Sleswick, in Denmark,—the inhabitants of which having joined the Saxon freebooters, had succeeded in establishing East Anglia, a kingdom of the Heptarchy.

† Being from the north of Europe, they were called Northmen. From their warlike supremacy at sea, they were also known as the sea-kings. During some of their expeditions, these Northmen are said to have reached America, by way of Iceland.

**QUESTIONS.**—What religious change took place about this time? What is said of Egbert? Give the derivation of "England." For what are we indebted to King Alfred? What two invasions of England took place?

settled in France, claimed the throne of England, which had been unjustly left to him (instead of to Edgar,) by King Edward the Confessor. On the death of King Edward, William invaded England and defeated Harold II, Edward's unlawful successor, who thus became the last of the Saxon kings. William the First, now called the Conqueror, divided the country among his principal adherents, and made them barons, or feudal lords of the soil. For about 100 years, William and his successors ruled England with great severity. During this period the Crusades commenced.\* The Norman kings were succeeded, A.D. 1154, by the restored Saxon-line, known as the Plantagenets,—so named from Henry II (Plantagenet), son of Matilda, the heiress to the throne.

5. *The Plantagenets* ruled England for about 250 years. Their united reign is celebrated for several memorable events: 1st. The Conquest of Ireland by Henry II, A.D. 1172. 2nd. The granting, by King John, in 1215, of Magna Charta, [kar-ta] or the great charter of personal and civil liberty, which we still enjoy. 3rd. The first assembling of Parliament by Henry III, in 1265. 4th. The Conquest of Wales by Edward I, 1283. And 5th. The then decisive battle of Bannockburn, in Scotland, gained by Robert Bruce, 1314, and the heroic battles of Crécy [kres-se] 1346, and Poitiers [pwy-te-ay] in France, 1356.

6. *The Wars of the Roses.*†—This celebrated civil war which commenced in 1455 between two rival claimants for the English Crown and their adherents, lasted for nearly thirty years,

\* The Crusades (from *crux*, a cross) were projected by Peter the Hermit, a French officer of Amiens, [a-mo-an] who turned pilgrim, and travelled in the Holy Land. On his return he induced Pope Urban to convene the Council which, in 1094, authorized him to rouse Europe to expel the Saracens from Palestine. The first Crusade began in 1096, and the seventh and last ended in 1291. It is estimated that about 2,000,000 people lost their lives in these Crusades.

† So called from the red and white roses, adopted as the distinctive badges of the Houses of York and Lancaster, the combatants in the wars.

QUESTIONS.—How did the Norman Invasion affect England? Describe the celebrated religious war. Who succeeded the Norman kings? Give a sketch of their reign. What is said of the civil war of the roses in 1455–85?

fruitlessly deluging the land with blood. It was finally brought to a close in 1485, by the decisive battle of Bosworth Field, and the subsequent marriage of the victorious Henry Tudor of Lancaster to Elizabeth of York,—representatives of the two parties in the civil strife of the Red and White roses.

7. *The most celebrated Events of these Times* were:—the first translation of the Bible into English by John Wycliffe, A.D. 1380; the Religious Reformation in Bohemia, 1405; the battle of Agincourt [a-zhans-koor] in France in 1415, and the subsequent loss of nearly all the English possessions in that country, 1450; the discovery of the art of printing in Germany in 1440, and its introduction into England in 1471; the more celebrated Religious Reformation which took place in Germany, under Luther, 1517, and which spread to England in 1534.

8. *The Tudors.*—With the elevation of the Tudor family to the throne of England in 1485, culminating in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, in 1558, commenced one of the most memorable periods in English history. With it also commenced the history of America. For it was Henry VII, when other sovereigns refused, that Columbus applied, but in vain, for aid in his attempt to discover a new world. Being mortified to find that he had



Queen Elizabeth of England. lost this golden opportunity of linking his name with the most famous event of his times, Henry, in 1496, commissioned John Cabot to visit the New World, and make discoveries therein. In Queen Elizabeth's time, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, half-brother to Sir Walter Raleigh, sailed to Newfoundland, and took formal possession of the island for her majesty, in 1583, and in the queen's name, first planted the red-cross flag in the New World. Next year a place further

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the most noted events of these times. What family next ruled England? Mention the chief events of their united reign. How did Henry VII aid in the discovery of America? What else was done?

South was discovered by Sir Walter Raleigh, and by him named Virginia, after Elizabeth, the Virgin queen of England.

## CHAPTER II.

### SUMMARY SKETCH OF FRENCH HISTORY UNTIL THE DISCOVERY OF CANADA BY CARTIER, A. D. 1534.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Conquest of Ancient Gaul—Its Inhabitants—Early Dynasties—Wars with England—French Discovery.*

1. *Ancient Gaul.*—Although the Greeks colonized Mas-sa-li-a (Mar-seilles) [mar-saylz] in Ancient Gaul, B.C. 600, and the Romans Pro-vinci-a (Provence) [pro-vonss] B.C. 121, yet it was not until the entire conquest of Gaul by Julius Cæsar, 50 B.C., that France assumed historical prominence. Like England, France had suffered from the incursions of various neighbouring tribes, and like England these tribes gradually became incorporated with the inhabitants, and all together were ultimately blended into one people.

2. *The Franks.*—Some of the German tribes from Franconia, which had spread themselves over Ancient Gaul, united A.D. 476, as Franks, or freemen, to rid themselves of the Roman yoke. Being successful, the name of Franck-en-ric, or Frank's Kingdom, was given to the country by them. The inhabitants have since been known as Franks, or French. Phar-a-mond, A.D. 418, Clo-di-on, his son, in 428, and Mer-o-væ-us, son-in-law to Clodion, in 448, are supposed to have been the first kings of the Franks.

3. *The Mer-ovin-gian.*—This weak and cruel dynasty was founded by Clo-vis, the grandson of Merovæus, in 481. He was nominally the first Christian king of France. The dynasty was, in 752, succeeded by —

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Ancient Gaul? In what respect was ancient France like England? What is said of the Franks or French? Who were the first kings of France? Give an account of the Merovingian dynasty.

4. *The Car-lo-vingian*—which was so called from the celebrated Carlos (or Charles) Martel, its founder. It lasted for upwards of two hundred years; and its kings were among the most famous in early French history. The illustrious Charlemagne, [sharl-man<sup>s</sup>] who was the most powerful monarch of his times (768), and of his dynasty, laid the foundation of much of the subsequent greatness of France. The succeeding dynasty was called—

5. *The Capetian*,—from Hugh Capet, duke of France, Count of Paris and Orleans. It commenced in 987, and ended with Louis Philippe, in 1848. It was under the earlier Capetian [-shan] kings that chivalry and the Crusades took their rise. Philip Augustus, the most noted of these kings, wrested nearly the whole of France from King John of England, (1204) and greatly consolidated his kingdom. Under the celebrated King Louis IX (called for his many virtues St. Louis), the Crusades were ended (1270); and during the reign of Philip the Fair (1302), a representative parliament, or states-general, was first assembled, in place of the annual assembly of the Champ de Mars. Judicial Parliaments, or Courts of law, were also established.

6. *Struggle with England*.—The following one hundred and fifty years were remarkable for an heroic struggle between the French and the English. Although the English were finally defeated, and in 1450, restricted to their possession of Calais, yet the memorable battles of Crecy in 1346, Poitiers in 1356, and Agincourt in 1415, fully maintained the character of the French and English nations for bravery and valour.

7. *Period of French Discovery*.—During the reign of Francis I, the enlightened monarch of France (1515–1547), the French commenced their remarkable career of exploration in the New World. French fishermen from Brittany had indeed visited Cape Breton [bret-ton] in 1506; and in that year Denys, a

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Carlovingian dynasty; of the Capetian. How did the struggle with England end? How did the period of French colonial discovery commence? Who first visited Cape Breton?



Frenchman, drew a map of the Gulf of St. Lawrence; but the first voyage of discovery under royal authority was made by John Ver-az-zani in 1523. In consequence of the discoveries which he made; the French laid formal claim to all the lands and coasts of the new world which had been visited by him.

### CHAPTER III.

BRIEF REFERENCES TO OTHER EUROPEAN HISTORY CONNECTED  
WITH THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, A.D. 1492.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Early European Discovery and Commerce—Crusades—Marco Polo—First Modern Colonies—Origin of the Slave Trade.*

1. *Other European Efforts.*—Although the discovery of the northern part of America, including that which is now called British America and the United States, was chiefly due to the English and French, it is proper briefly to refer to the efforts of other European nations, whose earlier discoveries in America stimulated both the French and English to maritime adventure and commercial enterprise in the new world.

2. *Causes leading to Early Discoveries.*—Maritime tastes, created by a proximity to, and a familiarity with, the sea, invariably lead to adventurous research and to deeds of daring. It was so with the Phœ-ni-cians\* and Northmen in early times; with the Venetians and Genoese in the middle ages; and with Spain, Portugal, France, and England in later times. It is so with every commercial people at the present day.

3. *Earliest Commercial Nation.*—The Phœnicians coasted along the Mediterranean until they were familiar with its principal outlines and headlands, and with the configuration of the neighbouring coasts. They then ventured out beyond the

\* The Phœnicians of history were the Canaanites of Scripture. They occupied the northern coast of Palestine.

QUESTIONS.—What claims did the French set up? What is said of the other European efforts at discovery? What led to the early discoveries? Who were the first navigators? What is said of the earliest com. nation?



"Pillars of Hercules,"\* to the tin-islands of Britain. The Northmen, from forays along their own coast, made a descent upon those of their neighbours; and, having fearlessly launched out into the ocean as far as Iceland, they are supposed to have reached Greenland, and even to have gone as far south on the American coast as Massachusetts, in 986 and 1004.

4. *Rise of Commercial Enterprise.*—The invasion and conquests by Greece and Rome in Asia, no less than the inroads of northern tribes into southern and western Europe, spread abroad some knowledge of the existence of other lands and of their reputed riches. This knowledge was soon turned to account by the more sagacious and enlightened nations; and thus commercial enterprise took its rise. In such a pursuit, some nations would naturally take the lead. This was especially so in the case of the celebrated republic of Venice, whose chief glory was its pre-eminence in the commercial rivalry of the times. It soon distanced all competitors, and for a long time monopolized the trade between Europe and the East.

5. *Commerce and the Crusades.*—The interruption of this commerce by the irruptions of the Arabs, or Saracens, into Europe, was more than counterbalanced by the increased commercial activity to which the prosecution of the crusades gave rise. The conveyance of troops and war-material alone, greatly developed the maritime skill, ability and resources, not only of those nations engaged in the contest, but also of other surrounding maritime nations.

6. *Marco Polo and his Career.*—The successful efforts of the Tartars, about this time (1210), under their celebrated leader Genghis Khan, [jen-jis-kun], to extend their conquest from Asia into Europe, brought them and the Christian nations into contact; and propositions were made that they should unite against

\* Lofty headlands on the opposite coasts of Spain and Africa, near the Straits of Gibraltar.

QUESTIONS. —What led to the rise of commercial enterprise in Europe? Which nation took the lead? How did the Crusades affect commerce? What is said of the Arabs and Europeans? Sketch the career of the Polo family.

the Saracens and drive them out of Palestine. Ambassadors were sent to the Great Khan by the Pope, and by St. Louis of France. The coming of these ambassadors opened a new channel of communication with the East, and induced two brothers, by the name of Polo, to explore it. They took with them on their return, in 1275, Marco, a son of one of the brothers, who entered into the active service of the Khan. About twenty years afterwards he was taken prisoner by the Genoese. While in prison, in 1298, he wrote such accounts of his travels and adventures in the Western Pacific as greatly stimulated that spirit of enterprise and discovery which led afterwards to the discovery of the New World.

7. *Other exciting Causes of Discovery.*—The glowing accounts of Eastern riches, which were brought back from Asia by travellers, induced Europeans from all parts of the west and south to visit it. The splendour and luxury which had been introduced by the Arabs, or Saracens (785), and afterwards by the Moors on their conquest of Spain (1238), also attracted many persons thither. These persons brought with them a variety of knowledge of other countries, which stimulated a desire for more. The introduction of the mariner's compass into Europe, in the thirteenth century, greatly aided the adventurous trader to extend his voyage, and to seek out new and distant places of trade.

8. *First Portuguese Colonies.*—The conquests in the Spanish peninsula by the Moors, led to reprisals. The Portuguese took and held the Moorish port of Ceuta, [su-ta] in Africa, and from thence extended their discoveries along the coast and to the islands of Western Africa, 1419-30. Some of these islands were well known to the ancients; for the first meridian of longitude was mentioned by Hip-par-chus, 140 B.C., as being fixed at Ferro, the most westerly of the "Fortunate" (now known as the Canary) Isles. These islands were afterwards re-discovered

---

QUESTIONS.—What happened to Polo? Mention the other exciting causes which led to further discoveries? What led to the planting of Portuguese colonies in Africa? What is said of the islands of the African coast?

by Bethencourt, [ba-ton-koor,] a Norman, about A.D. 1400. His descendants sold them to the Spaniards, who took possession of them in 1483; but it was the Portuguese who colonized both the Madeira and Cape de Verd islands, 1420. They shared in the belief that Asia might be reached by coasting along the continent of Africa, and formally applied to the Pope for a grant "of all lands or islands, peopled by Ma-hom-e-tans and Pagans, lying between Cape Boj-a-dor [door] and the East Indies." In their after-efforts to carry out this project, Bartholomew Di-az, a Portuguese, discovered the Cape of Good Hope, —five years after the discovery of America.

9. *Origin of the Slave-Trade.*—In 1441, some Portuguese, sailing along the coast of Africa, reached Cape Blanco; and, having taken some Moorish prisoners, they exchanged, or ransomed, them the next year for gold-dust and negroes. In this way commenced, on the coast of Africa, that baneful traffic in negroes, which was afterwards extended to British and French America, and to the West India Islands, but which is now happily abolished throughout the British and French dominions, and in other countries, including the United States

## PART II.

### Era of Voyages and Discoveries.

#### CHAPTER IV.

#### VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

##### *Early Discoveries—Career of Columbus.*

1. *Christopher Columbus.*—About this time (1441), Christopher Columbus, the future discoverer of America, was born in Gen-o-a, a seaport in Northern Italy. In Lisbon, whither he went, he devoted his time to the making of maps and globes,

**QUESTIONS.**—When was the Cape of Good Hope discovered? What is said of the origin and abolition of the slave-trade. What notable birth occurred in 1441? Give a sketch of the early career of Christopher Columbus.

A.D. 1400.  
k possee-  
colonized  
ey shared  
along the  
ope for a  
-tans and  
the East  
, Bartho-  
od Hope,

rtuguese,  
co; and,  
nged, or  
oes. In  
baneful  
o British  
nt whiel  
French  
d States

MBUS.

Christo-  
born in  
ther he  
globes,

What is  
birth o-  
olumbus.



Christopher Columbus.

and thus greatly contributed to the information and success of the Portuguese navigators. He framed rules for the calculation of latitude and longitude by the sailors, when at sea out of sight of land. He also sailed on vōyages down the coast of Africa, and otherwise became familiar with the sea to the westward.

2. *The Progress of Geographical Knowledge up to this time*

was slow; but it had at length reached a point which excited great curiosity in the minds of all scholarly and intelligent men. From Marco Polo's statements, it was known that an ocean lay to the east of Asia. The reputed discoveries of countries which had been made by the Northmen, far to the westward, by way of Iceland, together with the statements of one of these Northmen, (that he had been taken as a prisoner to the south amongst civilized people,) fully impressed the navigators of the period with the belief that these countries were situated in or near Asia. This belief was based upon the descriptions of southern Asia by Ptolemy, (confirmed as they were by the statements of Marco Polo,) that Asia extended far eastward into the ocean. On globes constructed at this time, "Cipango" (Japan) was placed within 70 degrees of the Azores, and "India extra Gangem" within 90; whereas they are more than double that number of degrees distant from these islands. It was easy to imagine, therefore, that a navigator, with a little bravery and perseverance, would soon traverse the short distance thus laid down on the map.

3. *Early Efforts of Columbus.*—It was under a belief of these facts, that Columbus first applied to the King of Portugal

QUESTIONS.—Trace the progress in geographical knowledge in Europe up to the time of Columbus. Where was Southern Asia supposed to be? Give the ancient name of Japan. What were the early efforts of Columbus?

for means to prosecute his voyage of discovery to India. Having failed to induce either that king, or Henry VII of England, to enter into his project, he sought the aid of the court of Spain. After seven years of disappointment, he at length succeeded in inducing Isabella, the noble-minded Queen of Spain, to devote a portion of her own Castilian patrimony to the success of his scheme of discovery.

*4. Religious Objects of the Expedition.*

—So strongly impressed was Columbus with the Christian objects of his mission, that he proposed to consecrate the treasure which he hoped to obtain while away to the pious purpose of rescuing the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem from the hands of the infidel Saracens. His own immediate design in undertaking this voyage to Asia—or India, as it was then called—was to convert the Great Khan of Tartary and his subjects to Christianity; and for this purpose Columbus actually took out letters with him to that monarch.

*5. Voyage of Columbus.*—The port of Palos [pa-loce] in Spain was selected as the place of embarkation. For some misdeemeanour, this port was required to furnish the king with two small vessels for a year. After repeated delays and discouragements, a little fleet of three vessels was, by the aid of the brothers Pinzon,—two courageous navigators,—got ready for sea; and on the 3rd of August, 1492, Columbus set sail on his memorable voyage. On leaving the harbour he steered directly for the Canary Islands, where he arrived on the 9th. Here he remained until the 6th of September, making repairs. On the 9th of that month he passed Ferro, (the last of the Canary



Queen Isabella of Spain.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Describe the religious views of Columbus. Where did he embark? Why was this port selected? Who accompanied Columbus? Give the number of ships, and date of sailing. Where did Columbus stop?





The Fleet of Columbus.

Isles,) and, with a feeling of sadness and awe, struck out into the unknown Atlantic. For several days the ships glided rapidly onward in their course, and, with the aid of the steady trade-winds,

quickly increased their distance from Europe. Apprehension and alarm arose on every side at the unvarying course of the wind,—at the increasing length of the voyage,—at the variation of the needle of the compass, and at other occurrences, which the superstitious sailors regarded as ominous of evil. Columbus was daily beset by the mutinous murmurs and discontent of his crew, who threatened to throw him into the sea, and return to Europe. His courageous spirit, and the religious belief in a special providence in his favour, kept him calm and firm in the midst of the painful uncertainty and treacherous fears of his comrades. Time after time, the morning haze and the evening cloud-bank, revealing a fancied coast or island, beguiled the mutinous sailors from their fatal purpose, and raised the hopes of all, to be in mid-day again dashed down in bitter disappointment and chagrin. Thus the weary days and nights wore on, until Columbus himself almost faltered in his purpose. At length a day, long memorable in the annals of great nations, dawned upon the little fleet; and the sight of several land birds, some sea weed, and the twigs and branches of drifting trees, revived the spirits of the dispirited and mutinous seamen. As night drew on, the keen eyes of the commander—made doubly sensitive by long and weary watch-

---

QUESTIONS.—When did Columbus set out? Describe the state of feeling on board the little fleet. How did Columbus control his companions? Mention the circumstances under which Columbus first saw the new land



ing—detected the glimmer of a beacon-light, as it glanced in the uncertain gloom of midnight. Oh, how long and painful were those hours of suspense to the almost fainting heart of Columbus! At length, as the twilight advanced, hope dawned upon the expectant mariners; and, ere the sun appeared above the horizon, the impassioned voices of the crews shouted, in tumultuous joy, the thrilling words "Land! land!" And so it was: there lay before them a beauteous island of the New World, revealed in all the loveliness of a tropical clime. On that memorable day, the 11th of October, 1492, Columbus left his ship. On landing, he kissed the soil with great religious fervour, and planted the flag of Spain on the Island of San Sal-vador, [-dore] in the Ba-ha-ma group. In a spirit of devout thankfulness for the accomplishment of so great an event, the crews chanted the *Te Deum*, and spent several days in unrestrained admiration and enjoyment.

6. *Further Discoveries of Columbus.*—Columbus was delighted with the appearance of the island, and with its inhabitants. He firmly believed that he had reached an island at the extremity of India; and, with that belief, he gave the name of Indians to the mild and gentle natives which he found there. He treated them most kindly, and sought to ascertain from them where they had procured their gold ornaments. They pointed to the south, and tried to convey to him an idea of the great wealth of the king, and the inexhaustible riches, of that distant country. After exchanging glass beads and other trinkets with the natives for gold and cotton, he weighed anchor and proceeded southward in search of Marco Polo's famous island of Cipango, or Japan. On his way he visited several other islands, and at length reached a very large and beautiful one, called by the natives Cuba. This he thought was either Cipango itself, or the main land of India, in the dominions of the Great Khan. After consulting his maps and listening

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Columbus express his gratitude to God? Under what impressions did he act on landing? How was he received by the inhabitants? What did he name them, and why? What did he next do?

to the pantomimic descriptions of the natives, he despatched an embassy into the interior in search of the city of the sovereign, to whom he had letters. The embassy soon returned disappointed. Columbus, after having consulted the natives, stood to the eastward, and discovered His-pan-i-cola, or Hayti [hay-tee]. Here he was kindly received by Gu-a-ca-na-gu-ri, a native cazique, or chieftain. While on this coast his ship was wrecked; but out of the pieces of the wreck he constructed a small fort to protect his crew, as well as the timid natives, from the fierce Caribs,—a neighbouring tribe of which he had heard. He manned the little fort with the guns of the ship, and left there such of the crew as wished to remain on the island. Shortly afterwards he set sail, by way of the Azores and Portugal, for Palos, at which place he arrived after many adventures, on the 15th of March, 1493,—having been absent from Spain about seven months. There was great rejoicing on his arrival, and he himself was ennobled. He made three other voyages to America (the last in 1502), and died in 1506. His remains were interred at Havanna in Cuba.

7. *Amer-i-cus Ves-pu-ci-us*, a distinguished Florentine navigator and scholar, made four voyages to the New World. Having, in the year after the death of Columbus, (when his statements could not be refuted,) written an eloquent account of his voyages, in which he falsely claimed the honour of having first reached the main land, and to have made a separate voyage to the continent himself, it was, by common usage, named after him. He died in the year 1514.



Americus Vespucius.

QUESTIONS.—On leaving the island, in what direction did Columbus steer? Mention his next discoveries. At what places did Columbus touch on his way home? How and why was the name "America" first given?

## CHAPTER V.

## VOYAGES OF THE CABOTS, CORTEREAL, VERRAZZANI, CARTIER, ROBERVAL, AND OTHERS.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery of Newfoundland, Canada and Acadie.*

1 *Cabot's Discovery of Newfoundland.*—The news of the notable discovery of Columbus soon reached England, then a



Sebastian Cabot.

maritime power of inferior importance. John Cabot, a Venetian merchant, residing at Bristol, fired with a spirit of emulation, sought for and obtained a commission, in 1496, from Henry VII, to make a voyage to the New World. Henry, the more readily entered into Cabot's scheme, for he was mortified to find that, by refusing to aid Columbus in his great under-

taking, he had lost a notable opportunity of linking his name with a memorable discovery. In June, 1497, Cabot left Bristol with his son Sebastian for the new world. After crossing the Atlantic, he reached a coast on the 24th of June, which he named Prima Vista, and which is supposed to have been some part of Nova Scotia, or of the northern part of Trinity Bay coast, Newfoundland. On St. John's day, he came to an island, which he named St. Jean, or St. John, (afterwards Prince Edward). By virtue of Cabot's discoveries, the English laid claim to the islands and lands which he had visited. In 1498, Sebastian Cabot\* made a second voyage,

\* Sebastian Cabot, son of Sir John Cabot, and a more celebrated navi-

QUESTIONS.—To what subject does the fifth chapter relate? What led to the expedition of the Cabots? Describe the course of their voyage. Mention the places which Sebastian Cabot discovered? Sketch his life.

CARTIER,

ie.

s of the  
d, then a  
r impor-  
Venetian  
Bristol,  
mulation,  
commis-  
y VII, to  
y World.  
entered

he was  
refusing  
at under  
is name  
bot left  
After  
of June,  
to have  
part of  
he came  
(after-  
ries, the  
he had  
voyage,  
tod navi-

What led  
voyage.  
his life.

and sailed as far north as Hudson Bay, on his way to China. Unable to proceed farther, he turned southward and went as far as Flor-i-da. On his way thither, he touched at Newfoundland, which he named Ba-ca-lé-os,—the native, as well as the Breton, or Basque [back], name for codfish, which abounds on the coast. From this circumstance it is supposed that the Breton fishermen had frequented these shores before they were visited by Sebastian Cabot.

1. *Cortereal's Voyages*.—In 1500, Gaspard Cor-te-real, a Portuguese,\* made a voyage to Lab-ra-dor, Newfoundland, and New England. Slavery being an important traffic with the Portuguese, Cortereal captured fifty Indians, whom he sold as slaves on his return to Europe. He made a second voyage in 1501, and having reached Hudson Strait, was never afterwards heard of. His brother Michael is also supposed to have perished in 1502, while endeavouring to seek out and rescue him.

3. *Verazzani's Voyage*.†—About this time the value of the gator than his father, was born in England in 1477. He sailed with him from Bristol, in 1497, and passed down the coast of America from latitude 56° to latitude 36°. Under the patronage of the Court of Spain, he made a voyage in 1525, as far south as the Brazils. Having entered the River La Plata, he erected a fort at St. Salvador, which he had discovered and named. He was a very distinguished navigator; and to him we are indebted for having first detected the variation of the mariner's compass. He published a volume before his death, containing an account of his voyages and discoveries. He died in 1557, aged 80.

\* Gaspard Cortereal, a Portuguese, was despatched from Lisbon by the King of Portugal, in 1500. He discovered Labrador and Greenland. (His father is said to have discovered Newfoundland in 1463.) He again left Lisbon for the New World in 1501, but was never heard of afterwards.

† John Verazzani was a Florentine navigator in the service of France. In 1524, he took possession of the coast from Carolina to Nova Scotia, and called it New France. Having given spirituous liquors to the natives at one place, they called it Man-na-ha-tan, or place of drunkenness,—afterwards contracted to Man-hat-tan Island, now the site of the city of New York. He is said to have made another voyage in 1525, but it is not known.

QUESTIONS.—What was peculiar about the name which Cabot gave to Newfoundland? Mention the chief incidents of Cortereal's voyages. How did he treat the Indians? Give a sketch of the lives of Cortereal & Verazzani.

cod-fisheries attracted the notice of the French. In 1506, Denys, of Honfleur, explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence; and in 1508, Aubert, of Dieppe [de-epp], did the same. The French fishermen also frequented the Banks of Newfoundland. In 1518, the Baron de Léry attempted to settle Sable Island, and left some cattle there after him. In 1524, John Ver-az-zani, a Florentine navigator, in command of four French vessels, made a voyage to America. He made a second voyage, under the patronage of Francis I, in 1525, and explored more than 2,000 miles of coast, from 34° down to 50°. He returned to France during that year. In consequence of these discoveries by Verazzani, the French king claimed possession of all places visited by him. He is said to have made a third voyage in the same year, but what became of him was never known.



John Verazzani.

4. *Cartier's Discovery of Canada.*—The supposed ill fate of Verazzani deterred the French for many years from any further attempt to explore the New World. In 1534,—nine years afterwards,—however, Philip Chabot [shah-bo], admiral of France, urged the king, Francis I, not to let Spain excel him in enterprise, but to establish a colony in the New World. He recommended that Jacques Cartier, [zhak-car-te-ay], a noted navigator of



Jacques Cartier.

St. Malo, should command an expedition of discovery to the New World.\* The Emperor Charles V of Spain, and Joam III

\* Jacques Cartier, the discoverer of Canada, was born at St. Malo, France, in 1500. He was despatched to the west by Francis I, in 1534. On the 20th April, he sailed from St. Malo, reached Newfoundland on the 10th

**QUESTIONS.**—Describe Verazzani's voyage. What led to the despatch of another expedition from France to America? Why was it opposed? When, and from what place, did Cartier sail from Europe? Sketch his life.



FRANCIS I.

and voyage,  
sored more  
e returned  
e discov-  
ion of a l  
rd voyage  
r knowr.  
d ill fate  
rench for  
attemp-  
1534,—  
er, Philip  
France,  
let Spain  
to estab-  
ld. He  
Cartier,  
gator of  
y to the  
Joam III  
St. Malo.  
1534. On  
a the 10th

despatch  
opposed?  
h his life.

of Portugal, having already sought to establish colonies there, protested against the projected expedition of Francis I, who sarcastically replied, "I should like to see the clause in our Father Adam's will and testament which bequeaths to my royal brothers alone so vast a heritage." At length, on the 20th of April, 1534, Cartier left St. Malo, a port on the coast of Brittany, with two ships. Twenty days after, he reached a cape on the Newfoundland coast, which he named Bona Vista.



Cartier's Ship.

He turned southwards for a short distance, and then northwards to the Strait of Belle Isle [bel-eel]. Passing through this strait, he turned southwards until he reached a coast, now known as that of New Brunswick. Here, on the 9th of July, he entered a Bay, in proceeding up which, he and his companions experienced such intense heat that he called it the "Baie des Chaleurs." Passing north-

wards out of this bay, he rounded the peninsula, and, on the 24th of July, landed on the coast since known as "Gaspé,"—an Indian name for Land's end. There he erected a cross thirty feet high, on which he placed a shield bearing the

May, the Bay des Chaleurs [sha-loor] on the 9th July, the coast of Gaspé [gas-pay] on the 24th, and returned to France in August. He made his second voyage in 1535. On the festival of St. Laurent, in August, he reached a bay of the gulf and river, which, in honour of the day, he called the St. Lawrence. In September he reached Stad-a-co-na, the present site of Quebec, where Don-na-co-na, an Algonquin [al-gon-kan-s] chief, welcomed him. In October he visited Hochelaga [ho-she-lah-ga], an Indian village near the present site of Montreal, where a chief of the Huron Indians welcomed him. He very soon afterwards returned to France, forcibly taking with him the chief, Donnacona. In 1541, as second in command to M. de Ro-ber-val, he again visited Canada; but having met with many disasters, he returned to France, and died soon after.

QUESTIONS.—What did Francis I say in reply to Joam and Charles? Describe the course of Cartier's voyage. At what places in New Brunswick and in Canada did he land? How did he assert the sovereignty of France?



fleur-de-lis [flur-dé-lee] and an inscription, as emblematical of the new sovereignty of France in America. Thus was accomplished a most memorable event; and thus was Canada silently and unconsciously incorporated into a mighty empire. Thus too was completed that three-fold act of discovery in America—Spain in the West Indies, England in Newfoundland, and France in Canada—which, as a natural consequence, placed side by side on a vast unknown continent, the symbols of the sovereignty of three of the greatest nations of Europe.\*

5. *Cartier's Further Discoveries.*—Cartier did not long remain on the Gaspé coast; but having made a little further exploration, he turned his face homewards, taking with him two natives. These Indians having told him of the existence of a great river, which they called Hochelaga, leading up so far into the country, that “no man had (so far as they knew) ever yet traced it to its source,” Cartier felt the more anxious to explore it, and the Indian countries through which it flowed. On his return to France, the news of his discovery, and the account given by the two Indians of the great river yet unexplored, were received with so much interest, that on the 19th May, 1535, Cartier again left St. Malo in command of three ships. After a tempestuous voyage, he arrived at Newfoundland on the 7th of July. Here he waited for two of his ships, which had been separated from him; and on the 7th of August he proceeded to explore the Gulf which he had visited the year before. On the 10th, he anchored in a bay at the mouth of a river, now called St. John. To this bay he gave the name of St. Lawrence,—having entered it on the festival of that saint. The name thus given to the little bay has since been applied to the vast gulf and noble river which Cartier was the first European to discover and explore. On the 15th, he reached a large island, to which he gave the name of L'Assomption [las-son<sup>s</sup>-se-on]. The Indian name of this island,

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of other nations? What did Cartier further do? Did the news of Cartier's discoveries lead to anything? Describe the course of his second voyage. How did the name St. Lawrence originate?

emathical of  
was accom-  
as Canada  
ty empire.

discovery in  
foundland,  
nsequence,  
he symbols  
Europe.\*  
ong remain  
er explora  
vo natives.

of a great  
r into the  
ever yet  
to explore  
wed. On

and the  
r yet un  
at on the  
mand o  
d at New

two of his  
n the 7th  
had vis-  
a bay at  
y he gave  
e festival

as since  
rtier was  
15th, he  
of L'As-  
s island,

er further  
scribe the  
originate?

Na-tis-co-tee, has since been changed to An-ti-cos-ti. On the 1st of September, Cartier reached the mouth of a deep and gloomy river, still known by the Indian name of the Saguenay [sagg-ê-nee].

6. *Cartier and Donnacona*.—Having passed an island, which, from the abundance of hazel-nuts found on it, he called Isle aux Coudres, Cartier, on the 7th of September, came to a large and fertile island, which was covered with wild grapes. To this island he gave the name of Bacchus: but it is now known as the Isle of Orleans. Here he sent his two Gaspé Indians ashore to make enquiries, and to propitiate the natives in favour of the new-comers. Next day he was received with friendly courtesy by the Algonquin [al-gon-kan] chief, Don-na-co-na. Proceeding a short distance up the stream, he moored his vessels for the winter in a basin where the river St. Charles (which he named St. Croix) [khrwha] mingles its waters with the St. Lawrence. In the angle formed by the confluence of these two rivers stood the Indian village of Stad-a-co-na, to which Cartier was welcomed by his new friend, the Algonquin chief. Cartier was much struck with the beauty of the surrounding scenery, and with the appearance of the bold cape or headland which rose almost perpendicularly along the left, or northern, bank of the noble river, to which, at its narrowest part, the Indians had given a name since memorable as that of Képec, or Quebec, which, in the Indian tongue, signifies a "strait."

7. *Cartier at Hochelaga*.—Cartier did not long remain at Stadacona. Having heard of a larger village, or kan-na-ta,\*—

\* The Algonquin Indians at Stadacona (Quebec) having thus intimated to Cartier that *Kan-na-ta*, a collection of wigwams, or native Huron village, was farther up the river, he probably understood them to apply that word to the whole country lying beyond him. Hence, in this way, it is likely that the name Kannata, or Canada, was given to the entire country which Cartier was then engaged in exploring.

QUESTIONS.—What other names did Cartier give? Describe Cartier's visit to Donnacona and to his village. Explain the Indian name of Quebec. What is said of the supposed derivation of the name of Canada.

a native encampment,—up the river, he left two of his vessels behind, and, on the 2nd of October, reached Ho-che-la-ga, situated on a large and fertile island, near the site of the present city of Montreal. Here he was well received by upwards of 1,000 Huron Indians, and treated with much kindness. The feeble old *ag-o-han-na*, or chief of the Hurons, regarded him as a superior being, who was able to renew his youth, and to heal the sick. Many of the sick were brought to him to be cured, over whom he read a portion of St. John's Gospel and prayed, making at the same time the sign of the cross. He found the encampment, or village, well planned and admirably defended. Near the village stood a lofty hill,—to which he gave the name of Mount Royal; and from the top of which a panorama of great beauty and extent spread out before him.

8. *Return to France.*—Cartier did not long remain at Hoche-laga, but returned to Quebec early in October. Fearing hostilities, he made a strong enclosure near his ships, and placed cannon in position to defend it. During the following winter his men suffered much from scurvy and cold; he was therefore anxious to return to France. On the 3rd of May he erected a cross, with the arms of France upon it, in token of having taken possession of the country on behalf of his sovereign. He then suddenly seized Donnacona and four other Indians, and on the 6th of May proceeded down the river, but did not reach St. Malo until the 8th July, 1536. These Indians with their chief never returned to Canada, as they died soon after reaching France. Before he died, Donnacona and the other Indians were baptized with great ceremony in the cathedral of Rouen [roo-on\*].

9. *Expedition of Roberval.*—Owing to religious dissensions in France, and to a war with Spain, five years elapsed after Cartier's return, before another expedition was projected. To the command of this expedition, the king appointed Jean François

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe Cartier's visit to Hochelaga. Under what circumstances did Cartier pass the winter? Describe his act of treachery to the Indians. What steps were taken in sending out Roberval's expedition?

his vessels  
e-la-ga, situ  
the present  
upwards of  
ness. The  
ded him as  
ath, and to  
him to be  
Gospel an  
cross He  
admirably  
which he  
of which a  
ore him.

at Hoche-

Fearing  
ships, and  
e following  
d; he was  
of May he  
ken of hav  
sovereign.  
r Indians;  
ut did not  
dians with  
soon after  
the other  
thedral of

ensions in  
after Car-  
To the  
François

r what cir-  
renchery to  
xpedition!

de la Roque[roke], Lord of Rob-er-val in Pic-är-dy.\* Cartier was named second in command. M. de Rob-er-val also received a commission as viceroy of the new colony. A delay having occurred, Cartier was, in May, 1541, despatched in advance. Roberval followed him, in April of the next year. In the meantime, Cartier reached the scene of his first visit; but fearing the hostility of the Indians, on account of his treachery to Donnacona, he removed a little farther up the river, to Cape Rouge. Here a little settlement was made (protected by two forts) which was named Charlesbourg Royal. Leaving vicomte de Beaupré [bo-pray] in command, Cartier sailed up to Hoche-la-ga and tried to pass the Sault St. Louis (now called the Machine Rapids); but being unsuccessful, he returned to Cape Rouge for the winter. In the spring he was treated with such hostility by the Indians that he set out at once for France. At Newfoundland he was met by Roberval, the viceroy, who commanded him to return to Canada. To avoid doing so, he weighed anchor in the night and sailed for France. He died here soon after. For his eminent services he was ennobled by the king; and license to trade in Canada was granted to his heirs for twelve years after his death. Roberval continued his voyage to the place where Cartier had wintered, at Cape Rouge. Here he remained, and in the spring proceeded to explore the Saguenay River. After suffering various hardships, he returned to France in 1543. For six years afterwards, no effort was made to colonise Canada.

10. *Other Futile Expeditions—Feudal System introduced.*—During the next fifty years little was accomplished. Colonies

\* Jean François de la Roque, Sieur de Roberval, a native of Picardy, France, was appointed Viceroy of Canada in 1540, and sailed thence, from Rochelle, in 1542. He met Cartier (returning to France) at St. Johns, Newfoundland, in June. Having wintered at Cape Rouge, above Quebec, he, in June, 1543, explored the river Saguenay.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Roberval's life. Trace Cartier's further career. How did the Roberval expedition end? What other steps were taken to promote colonization in New France, and what was the result?

in Brazil and Florida were projected; but after a trial they failed, and were abandoned. In 1598, the Marquis de la Roche [rosh] was constituted the first lieutenant-general of the king, and was invested by him with power "to grant leases of lands in New France, in form of fiefs, to men of gentle blood." This was the origin of the feudal system which was afterwards introduced into Canada. It was subsequently modified by Cardinal Richelieu into a seigniorial tenure, which was not finally abolished until 1854. The marquis sailed for Nova Scotia, but only reached Sable Island, where he landed forty French convicts, until he could select the site of a settlement. This a storm prevented him from doing; and after touching on the coast of Nova Scotia, he returned to France, leaving the convicts to their fate. In 1605 the king sent Chedotel, a Norman pilot, to them with relief, but only twelve were found alive. These were brought back to France, and pardoned by king Henri IV, on account of their sufferings. The marquis, having lost all his fortune, died unhappily soon after.

## PART III.

### CHAPTER VI.

#### I. INTRODUCTORY SKETCH OF BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

##### *Growth and Extent of British North America.*

Size, about the same as the United States, or equal to a square of 1,770 m.

1. *Growth of British North America.*—For a long time after the discovery of America, Great Britain had no permanent foothold in any part of her present North American possessions. For many years she maintained but a nominal claim, for fish-

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of feudal system and the seigniorial tenure? Give the particulars of the Marquis de la Roche's expedition, and of the fate of the convicts and of himself. What is said of British America.

rial they  
la Roche  
the king,  
s of lands  
1." This  
rds intro-  
Cardinal  
ot finally  
a Scotia,  
y French  
nt. This  
ng on the  
aving the  
edotel, a  
ere found  
rdoned by  
marquis,

ERICA.

ica.

of 1,770 m.  
time after  
anent foot-  
ssessions.  
, for fish-

rial tenure?  
and of the  
h America.

g purposes, upon the outlying island of Newfoundland,—her  
verignty over which was chiefly based upon Cabot's dis-  
covery in 1497, and Sir Humphrey Gilbert's act of possession  
in 1583. It therefore forms an interesting study to mark the  
slow and steady steps by which Great Britain gradually ad-  
vanced her power and increased her influence in this hemi-  
sphere, until at length she absorbed under the dominion of  
her flag nearly the whole of the North American continent,  
from the Gulf of Mexico to Hudson Bay. It is further inter-  
esting, after tracing the striking series of events which led to  
the absorption of this vast territory, to note the growth of that  
restless and ambitious spirit among her own children, which  
finally rose up defiantly in rebellion against her authority,  
and in the end bereft her of more than half of her possessions,  
as well as the chief part of her strength on this vast continent.  
And it is no less instructive to see, how that, in her newly  
acquired province on the St. Lawrence, and in the youthful  
colonies on the seaboard, the singular devotion of a then alien  
and mixed population (in resisting the tempting offers of her  
own rebellious sons), prevented them from wresting from the  
mother country the whole of her remaining patrimony;—how  
that out of the "few arpents of snow"\* left to her after the  
American revolution, there has gradually grown up and flour-  
ished, around that very contemned and inhospitable New  
France, a cluster of prosperous colonies, which stretch across  
the continent from the island of Newfoundland to that of Van-  
couver, and which, with heart-felt sincerity, now rejoice in their  
local attachment to the same beloved sovereign.

\* This striking remark in regard to New France was made by a French  
courtier to the king, Louis XV, to palliate the disgrace of having given up  
the colony; and it is in singular harmony with the sneering remarks  
made, but with a different object, by the noted Voltaire, at a dinner at  
his chateau at Ferney, in honour of the surrender of Canada to England.

QUESTIONS.—How was Great Britain enabled to retain her present  
North American provinces? Against what adverse influences had she  
to contend? How did the French regard their loss of New France?



## GEOGRAPHICAL AND STATISTICAL INTRODUCTION.

3. *Noted For.*—British North America is noted for its great extent; its numerous lakes and rivers; its natural facilities for communication between Europe and Asia; its mineral deposits: its fisheries; its great timber-areas; its fertile soil for settlement; and its free monarchical institutions.

4. *The Present Political Divisions* of British North America, with the extent, population, and capitals of these divisions, are as follows:

NAME.	Area in Eng. Sq. Miles.*	Population.	CAPITAL.	Where Situated.	Population
Lower Canada... }	210,000	1,111,566	Quebec }	St. Lawr'ce	62,000
Upper Canada... }	180,000	1,396,091	Tor'nto }	Lk. Ontario	45,000
Nova Scotia & C. B.	19,650	330,857	Halifax .....	S. E. coast,	26,000
New Brunswick ...	27,710	252,047	Fredericton	Riv. St. John,	6,000
Pr. Edward Island.	2,134	80,857	Charlot'town	Centre of isl.	7,000
Newfoundland ....	57,000	122,638	St. Johns ...	S. E. Penins.	30,500
Hudson Bay Ter.			York Fac'y,	Hayes River.	
Red River..... }	1,800,000	175,000	Fort Garry,	Assiniboine	& Red
British Columbia. }	213,500	12,000	New West-	Fraser River,	River
			minster....	S. of island,	1,000
Vancouver Island }	16,000	23,000	Victoria .....		8,000

5. *Revenue, Debt, &c.*, of the six Provinces in 1865 were:

Name.	Revenue.	Debt.	Imports.	Exports.	Tonnage.
Canada....	\$11,250,000	\$68,000,000	\$46,000,000	\$42,000,000	9,000,000
Nov. Scotia	1,300,000	5,000,000	10,250,000	8,500,000	1,500,000
NewBrun.	1,000,000	6,000,000	8,500,000	9,000,000	1,500,000
Newfound.	500,000	1,000,000	5,250,000	6,000,000	250,000
Pr. Ed. Isl.	200,000	250,000	1,600,000	1,600,000	150,000
B. Colu'bia					
Vanc'v. Isl.	700,000	200,000	8,000,000	9,000,000	342,000
Total ....	\$14,950,000	\$80,450,000	\$73,500,000	\$76,100,000	12,742,000

\* A square tract of country of an equal number of miles each way, may be obtained by extracting the square root of the square miles here given.

QUESTIONS.—For what is B. N. America noted? Give its present political divisions, with their extent and population. Give the name and population of each of the capitals in question, the revenue, debt, &c.

ION.

for its great  
facilities for  
mineral de-  
fertile soil for

North Amer-  
of these divis-

here ated.	Popu- lation
Lawrence	62,000
Ontario	45,000
Coast,	28,000
St. John,	6,000
of Isl.	7,000
Penins.	30,500
River.	
boine & Red	
Rivers	1,000
River,	8,000
land,	

865 were :

S.	Tonnage.
000	9,000,000
000	1,500,000
000	1,500,000
000	250,000
000	150,000
000	842,000
000	12,742,000

each way, ma-  
es here given.

s present poli-  
the name and  
nus, debt, &c.

6. *Discovery, Acquisition, &c.*—The name of the discoverer, mode of acquisition, and time when government was first established in the divisions of British North America, are, as nearly as possible, given in the following table:

NAME.	DISCOVERER AND DATE.	MODE OF ACQUI- SITION & DATE.	GOVERNMENT ESTABLISHED.
Lower Canada. {	Jac. Cartier, 1535.	Capitulation 1760.	French, 1608; Eng- lish, 1763; separ. govt. 1792; united 1840.
Upper Canada. {	Champlain, 1615.	Cession, 1763.	
Nova Scotia.... {	Seb. Cabot, 1498.	Cabot's visit and treaty of 1713.	Separ. govt. 1745; sep. govt. 1784; united 1819.
Cape Breton ... {	Seb. Cabot, 1498.	Capitulation 1758.	
New Brunswick..	Jac. Cartier, 1535.	Treaty, 1713.	Separate govt. 1784.
Pr. Edward Island	Seb. Cabot, 1498.	Treaty, 1763.	Separate govern- ment, 1771.
Newfoundland...	Sir J. Cabot, 1497.	Sir H. Gilbert 1583, Utrecht tr. 1713.	By Charles I, 1663; separ. govt. 1723.
Hudson-Bay ... {	H. Hudson, 1619 and 1794.	Treaty, 1713 and 1763.	Charter 1670, and license 1821 & 1842
Red River.... {	Canadian explor- ers.	Lord Selkirk's settlement 1811.	Proposed Crown Colony.
British Columbia,	Sir Alexander Mackenzie, 1793	Treaty, 1793.	[1858. Act of Parliament
Vancouver Island	Sir Francis Drake, 1759.	Vancouver's visit, 1792; settled 1848.	Charter to Hudson Bay Co., 1849.

7. *The General Area* of these divisions of British North America is, as near as we can determine, as follows :

NAME.	Aver. length in m.	Aver. width in m.	Miles of sea- coast lines.	Area in acres.	Acres sold.	Acres in cultiva- tion.
Lower Canada. {	1,300	300	1,000	160,500,000 {	13,680,000	4,804,285
Upper Canada.. {					17,708,222	6,051,620
Nova Scotia.... {	350	100	1,150	13,534,200	5,748,900	1,028,082
Cape Breton.... {	190	150	500	17,600,000	6,636,380	835,108
New Brunswick..						
Prince Edward	180	30	350	1,370,000	1,365,000	368,127
Island .....	409	300	1,100	23,040,000	100,000	41,108
Newfoundland Id.						
Hudson Bay {			1,500			
Territory.... {						
Red River Sett.. {						
British Columbia.	450	250	900	136,640,000	60,000	6,500
Vancouver Island	278	55	850	8,320,000	65,000	7,000

QUESTIONS.—Give particulars of the date of discovery, mode of acquisition, and government of the several provinces of British North America, with the names of each. Give as near as you can their area, &c. east-line, &c.

## Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

### CHAPTER VII.

#### FIRST SETTLEMENT OF CANADA, 1604-1608.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

##### *Causes leading to the Settlement of New France.*

1. *Commercial Efforts.*—Not only did French fishermen continue to frequent the coast of Newfoundland, but, under the patronage of Henri IV, Dupont Gravé, [due-pon'-gra-vay] a merchant of St. Malo, and Chauvin, [shaw-van'] a master-mariner of Rouen, [rwan] made several voyages to Tad-ous-sac, and brought home cargoes of the rich furs which had been collected there from places north of it. A stone building (the first ever put up in Canada) was erected there, and for a time the fur-trade was prosperous. Subsequent voyages, however, having proved unsuccessful, De Chaete, the governor of Dieppe [de-epp], formed a company of Rouen and other merchants to prosecute the traffic in furs more vigorously.

2. *Champlain's First Voyage.*—The first expedition to Canada, projected by this company, consisted of three small ships. It was placed under the command of Samuel de Champlain [shaum-plan'], a distinguished captain in the French navy.\*

\* Samuel de Champlain, a native of Brouage, in France, explored the St. Lawrence, with Dupont Gravé, from Tadoussac to Three Rivers, in 1603-7. On the 3rd July, 1608, he founded the city of Quebec. In 1609, he ascended the river Richelieu [reech-el-yu], and discovered Lake Champlain. In 1615, he ascended the Ottawa to Lake Nip-is-sing; descended French River to Georgian Bay; and from Lake Simcoe he passed, by a long portage, to the head-waters of the river Trent, and thence to Lake Ontario. He then crossed to Os-we-go. He had many unnecessary conflicts with the Iroquois Indians. In 1629, his capital was captured by the English, under Sir David Kertk, but, in 1632, restored. In 1633, he was appointed the first governor of Canada. He died in 1635, very deeply regretted.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the causes which led to the first formation of a French company of merchants to promote trade with the new French colony. Describe Champlain's first voyage, and give a sketch of his life.

ada.

3.

nce.

fishermen  
under the  
[gra-vay] a  
a master-  
ad-ous-sac,  
had been  
ilding (the  
for a time  
, however,  
overnor of  
other mer-  
sly.

to Canada,  
ships. It  
Champlain  
ch navy.\*

explored the St.  
ers, in 1603-7.  
he ascended  
amplain. In  
French River  
g portage, to  
io. He then  
the Iroquois  
, under Sir  
ated the first

mation of a  
new French  
h of his in-

In company with Dupont Gravé he reached the St. Lawrence in 1603, and lost no time in pushing his way up the river as far as Hochelaga, stopping at Three Rivers to examine its fitness for a trading post. When he reached Hochelaga, he found it deserted except by a few Algonquins. With some of these Indians he essayed to pass the rapids of the Sault St. Louis [soo-san'-loo-ee] (Lachine) in his boats, but could not, owing to the strong current. He obtained from the Indians, rude sketches on bark, of the river and country above the rapids, and carefully noted all he saw. Having prepared for the information of the king, Henri IV, a chart, illustrating his explorations, he and Dupont Gravé returned to France.

3. *Champlain's Second Voyage—*  
*adieu settled.*—The French monarch (Henri IV) regarded Champlain's explorations with favour.\* Upon de Chaste's death, he conferred upon Pierre Dugas, sieur de Monts, [mohn'] governor of Pons, (a distinguished Huguenot) greatly enlarged trading privileges. He also made him



Henri IV of France.

\* Henri de Bourbon, the celebrated King of France and Navarre, was born at Paris in 1553. He was the third son of Anthony de Bourbon and Jane d'Albret, heiress of Henri d'Albret, King of Navarre. On the sudden death of his mother, who was a Huguenot, and who had brought up her son to the Protestant faith, he became King of Navarre. Just before his death by assassination, Henri III, King of France, acknowledged the King of Navarre as his lawful successor. Henri IV had, however, to wage a war against "the League" before he obtained the crown. One of his splendid victories over the Leaguers is celebrated by Lord Macaulay in his stirring ode on the "Battle of Ivry." At length, Henri having abjured the Protestant faith, the opposing party acknowledged him as King of France in 1593. To his distinguished minister, the Duke de Sully, he was indebted for an able administration of the finances and of the general affairs of the kingdom. After reigning twenty-one years, he was in turn assassinated, and in 1610 was succeeded by his son Louis XIII.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Champlain's second voyage in 1604. Mention the discoveries which he made in this expedition. Who succeeded de Chaste? Give a sketch of the life of King Henri IV of France.

lieutenant-general of Acadie.\* In company with Champlain, Dupont Gravé and De Poutrincourt, [poo-trahn'-kooor,] de Monts, with a very mixed class of colonists, sailed in March, 1604, for Acadie (Nova Scotia), which he preferred for his proposed colony. De Monts having reached Cape la Hève, Nova Scotia, waited a month for Dupont Gravé's store ship, at Port Mouton (so called from a sheep which had fallen overboard out of the ship). They then made their way round the peninsula into a large bay which De Monts named La Baie Française (now called Fundy). While Dupont Gravé sailed for Tadoussac to trade with the Indians, De Monts, pursued his voyage, and discovered a beautiful spot, near an enclosed sheet of water which he named Port Royal (An-nap-o-lis). Poutrincourt, who was delighted with the place, selected it as a place of settlement; and De Monts, who by his patent owned one half of the continent, made him a grant of it. This grant—the first ever made in America—was afterwards confirmed by letters patent from Henri IV. De Monts then sailed in search of a suitable place for his new colony. He discovered the St. John river, and proceeding on, at length fixed upon a rocky islet, at the mouth of another river, which he named Ste. Croix. Here he remained during the winter, while Champlain explored the coast as far as Penobscot. In the following summer he went in search of a more eligible site for his settlement; but an untoward accident having occurred at Cape Cod, he became discouraged and returned to Ste. Croix.

4. *Removal of the Colony, and its Abandonment.*—Not wishing to remain another winter at Ste. Croix, de Monts removed the colony to Port Royal. Unpleasant news, however, induced him

---

\* This name first appears in a public document in 1604, when Pierre Du Guast, or Dugas, sieur de Monts, petitioned King Henri IV, for leave to colonise "La Cadie, or Acadie." The name is supposed to be derived from *La-quod-die*, the Indian name of a local fish called a polluck.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Poutrincourt's settlement and the grant which was made of it to him? Give a sketch of de Monts' explorations and settlement at Ste. Croix. Why did he abandon it?



Champlain,  
n-koor,] de  
d in March,  
rred for his  
be la Hève,  
store ship,  
fallen over-  
y round the  
ed La Baie  
ravé sailed  
ts, pursued  
an enclosed  
n-nap-o-lis).  
ected it as  
patent owned  
This grant  
confirmed by  
ed in search  
vered the St.  
pon a rocky  
d Ste. Croix.  
ain explored  
summer he  
lement; but  
l, he became

-Not wishing  
removed the  
induced him

t, when Pierre  
ri IV, for leave  
l to be derived  
olluck.

and the gran-  
s' exploration

to return at once to France, where he found strong opposition to his colonizing schemes. Through the zeal of Poutrincourt and Marc Lescarbot (a lawyer and poet) he was enabled to fit out another ship and to despatch it to the colony in charge of these two friends. In the meantime Dupont Gravé, who had employed his leisure in exploring the neighbouring coasts, returned to France; while Poutrincourt and Champlain continued the explorations, leaving Lescarbot in charge of the colony. Lescarbot busied himself in tilling the soil, and in collecting materials for a projected history of New France. His versatility and vivacity infused new life into the self-exiled colonists at Port Royal; but in the midst of their enjoyment, news arrived that the de Monts' charter had been rescinded, and that the company refused any longer to bear the great expense of the colony. There was, therefore, no alternative but to abandon it; and much to the grief of Membertou, (the venerable Indian saganore of Annapolis, who had been their fast friend,) Poutrincourt, Champlain, Lescarbot, and other colonists, quitted the settlement and returned to France in 1607.

5. *Champlain's Third Voyage—Quebec Founded.*—De Monts, having transferred all interest in Port Royal to Poutrincourt, sought for and obtained in 1607, a renewal of the fur trade monopoly for one year, on condition that he would colonize Canada, with a view to open up through it a route to India and China. (See NOVA SCOTIA, Part vi, Chapter xxviii.) De Monts lost no time in fitting out an expedition of two vessels, under Champlain and Dupont Gravé, to traffic with the Indians, and to explore the St. Lawrence. Champlain sailed from France on the 13th April, 1608, and reached Tadoussac on the 3rd June. Dupont Gravé had been there a few days before him, but was in the hostile hands of some Basque traders, who refused to let him trade with the Indians. The arrival of Champlain set matters right, and he proceeded up the river.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the settlement of Port Royal succeed? By whom and what were the explorations made? What is said of Lescarbot? When did Champlain make his third voyage, and what was its object?

On 3rd July, he reached the spot which, seventy-three years before, had been visited by Cartier. The beautiful fall on the north side of the St. Lawrence, and at the head of the Isle of Orleans, he named "*le Sault de Montmorenci*," after the Admiral of France. No trace of Stadacona remained. Near the site of that village, and at a place called Kébec by the Indians, Champlain erected a rude fort,—in this way foreshadowing the future destiny of a spot which has since become so famous in the military annals of two great nations.—Thus, after long years of retribution, misfortune, and doubt, a footing was obtained, and the infant capital of New France in America was founded in Canada. From that centre of civilization radiated, in later years, a series of French settlements, which to the east embraced the islands of Newfoundland, Cape Breton, and Prince Edward, as well as Acadie, or Nova Scotia, and stretched away to the west from Montreal to Frontenac, Niagara, Pen-e-tan-guish-enc, and Detroit, and thence across the continent to Flor-ï-da and Louisiana [loo-ees-ë-an-ä-ä].

## CHAPTER VII

### SKETCH OF FRENCH RULE—FIRST PERIOD, 1608–1672.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Champlain's Colony—Early Trading Efforts—Unfortunate Indian League—Iroquois Wars—Political Progress—Development of the Fur-Trade—Colonial Trading Contests.*

1. *Champlain's First Discovery.*—Ere Champlain's colony was settled in its new home a shadow fell upon it. A conspiracy was formed among his own men to kill him, and to give the Basque traders possession of the place. Remorse, however, seized one of the traitors and he revealed the plot. The ring-leader was hanged, and his co-conspirators were sent as convicts.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of his having founded the capital of New France, and of the after-extent of the French settlements in America? To what does Chapter viii relate? What event occurred at the settlement?

three years  
fall on the  
the Isle of  
the Admiral  
the site of  
ans, Cham  
g the future  
ous in the  
long years  
obtained,  
as founded  
ed, in later  
to the east  
reton, and  
cotia, and  
Frontenac,  
nce across  
n."

to the galleys. Thus the little colony was providentially saved. Anxious to explore the country near his new settlement, Champlain entered into friendly relations with the neighbouring tribes. The Hurons, and Ottawas, or Algonquins, being oppressed by a superior race unknown to Champlain, gladly accepted his offer. In May, 1609, a war-party having come to Quebec, accompanied him up the St. Lawrence. On reaching the River of the Iroquois, (a tributary of the St. Lawrence,)\* he turned southwards with his dusky allies, and continued his canoe-voyage up the stream, until he came to that beautiful lake which, as a memorial of his discoveries, still bears his name.† [See paragraph 33 of Chapter ix.]

2. *Fatal Effects of Champlain's Indian League.*—Champlain proceeded up this lake to its further extremity. Here he and his Indian allies encountered a band of Iroquois, who gave battle; but they were utterly defeated by the superior arms of the new friends of the Algonquins. Thus, in an unprovoked contest, the first Indian blood was unwarrantably shed in

1672.

unfortunate  
progress—Dis-  
contests.

n's colony  
A conspi-  
and to give  
however,  
The ring-  
s convicts

\* This river, so noted in the early history of Canada, and in the desolating wars between the French colonists and the Iroquois, was first known as the *River of the Iroquois*, (as it led up to the eastern portion of the Iroquois territory, which was inhabited by the Mohawks). It was afterwards named the *Richelieu*, (from the distinguished French Cardinal of that name,) when M. de Montmagny [mont'-man-ye] erected Fort Richelieu at the mouth of the river, as a barrier against the Iroquois, in 1641. 2. Subsequently the river was named *St. Lawrence*, (after a captain of the Carignan [car-ee-n-yan] regiment, who rebuilt Fort Richelieu). The river was also called *Chambly*, after de Chambly, a captain of the same regiment, who erected Fort St. Louis, which was afterwards known as Fort Chambly. M. de Salieres [sal-ee-ere], another Carignan captain, erected Fort Ste. Thérèse, [thay-race] nine miles above Chambly, on the same river. M. de Mothe, a fourth Carignan captain, erected Fort Ste. Anne on Mothe island, at the foot of Lake Champlain.

† This lake, so long a highway between the territories of the hostile Hurons and Iroquois Indians, received from them the name of *Can-i-a-de-re-gu-a-ran-te*, or the "Lake-Gate of the Country."

ital of New  
merica? To  
settlements

QUESTIONS.—What notable discovery did Champlain make? Give the Indian name of the Lake. What is said of the Iroquois River? Give the particulars of Champlain's fatal Indian league against the Iroquois.

Canada by the white man. Bitterly and fiercely, and for many years, was this fatal error again and again avenged, until the lives of hundreds of French colonists had atoned for the life of every Iroquois who had fallen in this first memorable battle with the European colonists in Canada.

3. *Champlain's Further Discoveries.*—Champlain soon afterwards returned to Quebec, and thence to France. He was received with great favour by Henri IV, to whom he brought presents of belts of wampum, porcupine quills, and other curiosities. As a mark of favour the king gave the name of New France to his new American possessions. Although De Monts had failed to obtain a renewal of his trading privileges, he nevertheless, with the aid of the Merchants' Company, fitted out in 1610 a fourth expedition, under the command of Champlain and Dupont Gravé. This expedition reached Tadoussac after a pleasant passage of eighteen days. Here they found rival fur traders; but such was Champlain's love of adventure that he determined to make further explorations. He joined the Huron Indians in another attack on an entrenched camp of the Iroquois, at the mouth of the River of the Iroquois. The contest was a severe one; but the arms of the French quickly decided it in favour of their Indian allies. Champlain, soon afterwards returned to Quebec, where, tired of Indian warfare, he devoted himself for a time to the culture of flowers and fruit.

4. *Death of Henri IV—Trading Post at Montreal.*—At Quebec, Champlain heard with profound regret of the assassination of king Henri IV. De Monts' influence at court having now entirely ceased, commercial rivalry nearly ruined the fur trade. Champlain returned to France in August, but returned to Canada in the spring of 1611, to make another effort to retrieve de Monts' fortunes and those of his trading associates. With this view he determined to erect a permanent trading

---

QUESTIONS.—How was Champlain received in France? What name did the king give to his new possessions? Give a sketch of Champlain's further explorations and Indian contests. What sad event occurred in 1610?

and for many  
years, and the  
the life of  
able battle

soon after-

He was  
he brought  
and other  
the name

Although

his trading

Merchants'

on, under

v6. This

passage of

but such

ermined to

Indians in

ois, at the

as a severe

t in favour

s returned

ed himself

trealt.—At

he assassi-

rt having

ed the fur

t returned

r effort to

associates.

nt trading

at name did

in's further

ed in 1610

post as far up above Quebec as the rapids would permit, and also one easily accessible to the Ottawa and neighbouring Indian tribes. After visiting various places, Champlain at length selected Mount Royal, which lay at the foot of the Sault St. Louis (Lachine), and at the confluence of the two great rivers (the Ottawa and the St. Lawrence). To the adjacent island he gave the name of Ste. Hélène, after his wife. Having cleared the ground he proceeded to erect his new trading fort. He fixed it on the spot now occupied by the hospital of the Grey Nuns of Montreal (Sœurs Grises), and named it *Place Royale*. No sooner had he commenced his labours than a crowd of trading adventurers, who had followed him from France, appeared at Montreal, and sought to monopolise the fur traffic with the Indians. Not wishing that they should profit by his labours, Champlain returned to Quebec, and soon after left for France to confer with de Monts on the depressed state of the affairs of the company. De Monts, engrossed in other matters and much discouraged, left Champlain to his own resources. Knowing that without the aid of some powerful hand to assist them, the colony would soon sink, Champlain made a great effort, and in 1612 prevailed upon Prince Charles de Bourbon, Count de Soissons [swaw-son\*] to become the patron of Canada. De Soissons, was commissioned as lieutenant general (with Champlain as his deputy), but being attacked with fever, he died soon afterwards. Henri de Bourbon, Prince de Condé,\* however, took his place.

5. *Trading Disputes—Ottawa Explorations.*—Champlain foreseeing the ruinous consequences of unrestricted rivalry, proposed to share his new trading privileges with his competitors in the fur traffic. The Rouen and St. Malo traders accepted his

\* This prince should not be confounded with his son, "the great Condé," who was born in 1621, and who afterwards became so famous in the French war against Spain, under the celebrated Marshal Turenne [tu-renn].

QUESTIONS.—Give particulars of the new trading fort established at Hochelaga by Champlain. What island near this fort did he name? Mention the discouragements he met with. Who became patron of Canada?



offer, and formed a Merchants' Company; but those of Rochelle stood out, and preferred the chances of an illicit trade. He had, therefore, great difficulty in reconciling the disputes which arose out of the new trading privileges which had been conferred upon the Merchants' Company; but at length he partially succeeded, and, in 1613, again embarked for Canada. Stopping a short time at Quebec, he proceeded up the river to Hochelaga (Montreal). Here he did not delay long, but turned his attention to exploration. Taking the northern channel of the river, Champlain, accompanied by Etienne Brulé,\* his faithful interpreter, and his comrades, soon entered the Ottawa and proceeded up that river. Surprised at its uniform breadth and volume, they still advanced in the hope of reaching China and Japan, by way of the Hudson Bay, which had only lately (1610) been discovered by Henry Hudson.† This Champlain had been led to believe he could do, by the mis-statements of a boasting adventurer, named Vignan, who professed to have explored the route far inland. At length having reached a point beyond the head of a lake (now known as Coulonge,) the party stopped to confer with Tes-sou-at, the chieftain of the place. Here, after a feast, Champlain urged the chief to give him canoes and convoy to the territory of the Nipissings, which Vignan had described as being



Henry Hudson.

\* This brave and energetic Frenchman accompanied Champlain through nearly all his explorations. He also acted as a scout when the Huron Indians made a raid into the Iroquois country, and performed many perilous feats of daring among them. He was treacherously murdered by the Hurons at one of their villages near Penetanguishene in 1632.

† Henry Hudson was an eminent English navigator, but his early history is unknown. He was sent, in 1607, by some London merchants, to discover

**QUESTIONS.**— How did Champlain seek to settle the trading disputes? Where did he hope to go? What company did he form? Who stood out? After visiting Hochelaga, what did Champlain do? Give a sketch of Brulé.

of Rochelle  
trade. He  
putes which  
d been con-  
length he  
for Canada.  
the river to  
out turned  
channel of  
Brulé,\* his  
the Ottawa  
rm breadth  
hing China  
only lately  
mplain had  
a boasting



ON

in through  
the Huron  
med many  
urdered by  
32.  
arly history  
to discover

disputes?  
stood out?  
h of Brulé.

near an ocean at the north. Tessouat laughed at the credulous Champlain, and insisted upon killing the imposter Vignan for having thus deceived him. He assured Champlain that Vignan had never seen the country of the Nipissings, but had remained there with him until he had returned to Montreal. Tessouat further discouraged Champlain; and he having also learned, from the significant sign-language of the Indians, that the source of the Ottawa lay far to the northwest, despaired to reach it. He then returned down the Ottawa and St. Lawrence to Quebec, and thence to St. Malo, in August, 1613. ✓

6. *Reverses—First Missionaries to Canada.*—The Prince de Condé proved to be a mercenary, though from his position, an influential patron and viceroy. A new and enlarged company was incorporated under his auspices; and an effort was made to introduce Christianity among the Indians. For this purpose, Champlain brought out with him, in 1615, four Récollets [reco-lay] fathers, (Jamay, d'Olbeau, le Caron and du Plessis,)†

a north-west passage to China and Japan, but only reached 80° north latitude, and returned. In a second voyage he went as far as Nova Zembla. In 1609, he was despatched on a third voyage, by the Dutch East India Company (who called him Hendrick Hudson), and discovered the beautiful river Hudson, in the State of New York. In 1610, he undertook a fourth voyage, in a bark named the "Discovery," and in June reached Greenland. Proceeding along the Labrador coast, which he named Nova Britannia, he discovered, in 60° north latitude, a strait leading into a vast bay; (the strait and bay are now named after him). He entered it, and went southwards. Unable to bear the severe climate, he prepared to return; but having threatened his mutinous crew, they entered his cabin at night, pillooned his arms, and put him, with his son John, and seven infirm men, on shore in a boat. Hudson and these men were never heard of afterwards. A few of the mutineers reached England, in 1611, after having justly suffered very great hardships.

† The Récollets, a later branch of the Franciscans, founded by St. Francis d'Assisi, were known as Franciscans of the Strict Observance. The name is derived from the practice of strict spiritual re-collection which was required of the brethren. They were approved by Clement VII in 1532.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Hudson's life. Mention Champlain's adventure at Lake Coulonge. How was Christianity introduced into Canada? Who were the first missionaries? Describe the religious order.

3. 20

as missionaries to Canada. The first mass ever celebrated in Canada was performed by Jamay and le Caron, at the Rive des Prairies, in June, 1615, and by d'Olbeau and du Plessis at Quebec.

7. *Discovery of Lakes Nipissing and Huron.*—Nothing daunted at his previous failure, Champlain determined to renew his explorations. D'Olbeau had gone as a missionary to the Montagnais, near Tadoussac, Jamay and du Plessis remained at Quebec, while le Caron started with the Huron Indians in advance of Champlain up the Ottawa. Passing Lake Coulonge, where he had been before in his explorations, Champlain followed up the tributary waters of the Mattawin river to Lake Nip-is-sing, where he stopped two days with the Nipissing, or Neb-e-cer-i-ni Indians,—also called Sorciers, (Sorcerer,) from their ill repute as magicians—thence down a river, since known as French River, into what is now known as Georgian Bay and Lake Huron, but which he called Mer Douce [mare-ducel]. Turning southwards he followed the coast of the Georgian Bay until he reached the head of Matchadash Bay. From Peretanguishene he followed an Indian trail far inland through a rich wooded country, to a palisaded village named O-tou-a-cha, one of the principal lodges of the Huron Indians. Here he was well received; but eager to explore further, he visited other villages to the westward. At length he reached Carhagou-ha (with its triple palisade thirty-five feet high) where he met the Recollet father, Le Caron, who was rejoiced to see him. Le Caron, on the twenty-sixth of July, signalised the event by celebrating mass, and chanting the *Te Deum* for the first time in these Western wilds. From this spot he turned his steps eastwards and soon reached Ca-hi-a-gu-e, (in our modern Orillia,) the rendez-vous or chief lodge of the great Huron settlement near Lake Simcoe, which was afterwards known as the French Mission of St. Jean Baptiste.

---

QUESTIONS.—What religious event occurred in 1615? Give a sketch of the explorations made by Champlain in 1615-16. What is said of the Indians and places which he visited? What occurred near Lake Simcoe?

Cahie  
invin  
jecte  
this  
upon  
and  
pene  
Erie  
on t  
Iroq  
rows  
little  
Lak  
wat  
rive  
to t  
Hur  
this  
can  
rive  
10t  
wer  
Wi  
rus  
the  
Er  
de  
th  
wa  
hi  
to  
th

8. *Great Warlike Expedition against the Iroquois.*—At Cahiagué, there was great feasting and war-dances, and the invincible Champlain promised to join the Hurons in a projected incursion into the far off Iroquois territory. To make this stealthy blow fall with more unerring and fatal certainty upon the Iroquois, Etienne Brulé, Champlain's interpreter and intrepid companion, volunteered with twelve Hurons to penetrate as a scout to the hostile borders of the foe and visit the Eries, who had promised to send five hundred of their warriors on the Huron war path against their common enemy, the Iroquois. Champlain with his allies, having crossed the Narrows at Lake Cou-chi ching, coasted down Lake Simcoe, to a little river, now called Talbot, thence across the Portage to Lake Balsam, and down the devious windings of the chain of waters leading to the river Trent. From the mouth of this river the hostile fleet of canoes glided down the Bay of Quinté to the first opening leading into Lac St. Louis, (known to the Hurons as Lake On-tou-o-ro-nons, or Ontario). Boldly crossing this lake, they reached the opposite shore, and hiding their canoes in the woods, filed warily inland across the Onondaga river towards the castles of the Senecas. At length, about the 16th of October, they reached the foe, who, unaware of danger, were busily engaged in gathering their maize and autumn fruits. Without waiting for their Erie allies, the Hurons tumultuously rushed upon the unconscious Iroquois, who instinctively grasped their tomahawks and rallying to their defences, stood at bay. Ere Champlain could interfere, many of the Hurons lay dead, and even with his powerful aid a panic seized them: and though he rallied them, they again fled. Champlain himself was wounded, and was forced to follow his fugitive allies. But his prestige was gone; and the Hurons gloomily allowed him to accompany them in their retreat across the lake. They then refused to redeem their promise to send an escort with

---

QUESTIONS.—Where did Champlain's next contest with the Iroquois take place? How did it end? Give a sketch of the contest, and of Brulé's intrepidity. What was the effect of this warlike expedition?

him to Quebec, and virtually kept him a prisoner among them till the following spring. Durantal, a chief, however, remained friendly, and shared his lodge with him. His energetic nature brooked no restraint, however; and he induced the Hurons to allow him to renew his explorations for a time. He visited Le Caron again at Carhagouha; and though it was mid winter they both pushed on westwards to the lodges of the Tobacco Indians and those of the Cheveux Relevés,—an Algonquin tribe to the south-west of Nottawasaga bay. In one of his hunting expeditions with the Hurons, Champlain became separated from them and nearly lost his life in the woods. At length, by the aid of Durantal, and other friendly Indians, who accompanied him, he returned secretly to Sault St. Louis, (Lachine) in July, 1616, and thence to Quebec, whither Le Caron had preceded him, and where he found the little colony, which had mourned him as dead, torn by intestine feuds between the merchants, the resident families (who were forbidden to traffic with the Indians,) and the Rochelle [ro-shell] traders, who defied the authority of the chartered company of merchants.

9. *Champlain's Discouragements and Zeal.*—Owing to the continued contest between the friends and enemies of the Company's monopoly in Canada, Champlain returned to France, and sought to reconcile differences, and still to maintain the privileges of the company. The Prince de Condé, [con-day] being involved in political troubles, was imprisoned. He sold his vice-royalty in Canada to the Duke de Montmorency, [mont-moh-rah-n<sup>ts</sup>-see,] who was a friend of Champlain.\* The company of merchants suffered much embarrassment, and were involved in litigation in endeavouring to maintain their exclusive pri-

\* Henry, Duke de Montmorency, and Admiral of France, was born in 1595. He was successful against the Huguenots—1628; but being an enemy of Cardinal Richelieu, he raised the standard of rebellion in Languedoc. He was wounded, taken prisoner and executed in 1632.

QUESTIONS.—What further adventures befel Champlain? How did he escape? Mention the state of the little colony? What discouragements did he meet with? How did he overcome them? Who succeeded Condé?

vileges in  
plain for  
trade into  
Dupont  
extension  
the matt  
royal de  
plain.  
accompa  
respect b  
at Tadou  
from Ro  
bartered  
afterward  
plain lai  
which co  
it was ac  
laws for  
he was  
perity, o  
incursion

1622 to  
quois at  
by the  
however

10. 7  
plaints  
having  
induced  
Emery d  
as super  
assumed  
a survei

QUESTI  
indicat  
return to



vileges in the peltry-traffic. They strongly censured Champlain for his greater devotion to exploration than to their trade-interests, and therefore sought to supersede him by Dupont Gravé, whose thoughts were more engrossed in the extension of the fur-trade. Warm discussions ensued; and the matter was finally brought before the king's council. A royal decree was, however, passed in 1619, sustaining Champlain. In high hopes he again left for Canada in 1620, accompanied by his youthful wife, who was received with great respect by the Indians at Quebec. When Champlain arrived at Tadoussac, he found that some inexperienced rival traders from Rochelle had, contrary to regulations, imprudently bartered fire-arms with the Indians for furs. This indiscretion afterwards caused the colony much trouble. In 1620, Champlain laid the foundation of the Castle of St. Louis, Quebec, which continued to be a vice-royal residence until 1834, when it was accidentally burned. He also framed a brief code of laws for the internal government of the little colony; but he was greatly impeded in his efforts to promote its prosperity, owing to religious dissensions, trading disputes, and the incursions of the Iroquois. These incursions threatened in 1622 to lead to serious results. Three hostile bands of Iroquois attacked three of the settlements; but the French, aided by the Hurons, repulsed them. The unprotected Hurons, however, suffered severely from the Iroquois.

10. *Trading Disputes—Distracted state of the Colony.*—Complaints against the Trading Company of St. Malo and Rouen having become so frequent, Montmorency, the viceroy, was induced to confer the powers of the company upon William and Emery de Caen [kah-en], one of whom was sent out to Canada as superintendent. On his arrival at Tadoussac, de Caen assumed almost royal authority, and sought even to exercise a surveillance over Champlain. His arbitrary conduct was

---

QUESTIONS.—How were the trading disputes settled in France? What indiscretion occurred at Tadoussac? State what Champlain did on his return to Canada? What further trading disputes occurred?

nergetically resisted by Champlain, and by the colonists, who refused to acknowledge the new company's agent, and left for France in large numbers. Champlain sent a Recollet father to lay their grievances before the king. In 1622, he had the satisfaction of seeing a solemn treaty of peace entered into between the hostile tribes of the Huron and Iroquo Indians. In 1624 he and his wife returned to France, where he learned that, by a royal edict, the disputes between the rival trading-companies had been settled.

11. *The Company of One Hundred Associates—Seigniorial Tenure introduced.*—The Duke of Ventadour [vahn-ta-dure] (who had succeeded his uncle as viceroy in 1625), having entered one of the orders of monks, devoted most of his attention to the conversion of the Indians. To promote this object three Jesuit fathers, (Lalemant, Masse and De Brébeuf) were, at the request of the Recollets, sent to Canada in 1625. Thus the order obtained a footing in Canada—fourteen years after two of its members had reached Nova Scotia. De Caen would not receive them, but the Recollets admitted them into the St. Charles convent. De Brébeuf undertook a mission to the Hurons; but the fate of Viel, the Recollet, (who was drowned by the Indians at a place near Montreal, since called



Cardinal Richelieu.

*Sault au Recollet*) deterred him for a time. The Duke's well-meant but exclusive policy did not please Champlain, who returned to Canada in 1626. His objections were shared in by the Cardinal Richelieu [reesh-el-yue], who revoked the charter of the De Caen Company in 1627, and instituted a new one upon a broader basis. This association was clothed with extensive powers, and named

**QUESTIONS.**—How did Champlain regard de Caen? What change was made in the trading company? Sketch de Caen's career. What religious Order arrived in Canada in 1625? How were they received?

"The Company of One Hundred Partners." From it the Huguenots were excluded. It was invested by the King with the vice-royalty of New France and Florida, and with the "attributes of seigniory and justice-ship," "with power to assume for its infeoffed lands such titles, deeds, honours, rights, powers, and faculties as should be judged fitting." Thus, in Canada the seigniorial tenure, or feudal system, was extended and consolidated. The French monarch also raised twelve of the principal seigneurs to the rank of French noblesse. Shortly afterwards King Charles I established the order of Baronets of Nova Scotia in that country. ✓

12. *First Capture of Quebec.*—Scarcely had the new Company been organized, ere war was declared between France and England. The first ships which the Company sent to Canada were captured; and shortly afterwards Tadoussac fell into the hands of the English. The capture was made by Sir David Kertk, a French Huguenot refugee from Dieppe, (who had been commissioned, by Charles I, in 1628), and Captain Michel formerly in the service of the de Caens. Kertk sent some Basque prisoners as messengers to Quebec, which was not very strongly fortified, and summoned it to surrender; but Champlain, who sent back a haughty reply, treated them so well, that Kertk withdrew his ships to cruise in the gulf without attacking him. On his way down the river, however, he captured some French transports with food and stores, which Roquemont (one of the new company) was bringing to Quebec. Owing to this loss the colony suffered great privation. Next year Kertk again appeared before Quebec, and, after having offered honourable terms to Champlain, (who was reduced to great straits,) the heroic governor capitulated the city in July, 1629. Kertk, having installed his brother, Louis, as governor of Quebec, went to Tadoussac, where Thomas Kertk followed him with Champlain. Here Captain

---

QUESTIONS.—State what further changes were made. What is said of creation of the seigniorial tenure, of the noblesse of Canada, and of Nova Scotia Baronets? What troubles arose? Describe the first capture of Quebec.

Michel died. Shortly afterwards, Kertk took Champlain to England, where he was released and sent to France. Disasters did not long oppress the infant colony; for, by the treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, in 1632, Charles I of England, restored not only Canada, but also Cape Breton and Nova Scotia, to Louis XIII of France.

13. *Death and Career of Champlain.*—In 1632, Emery de Caen came to Quebec to hoist the French standard once more upon its walls. He was authorised to enjoy the profits of the fur traffic for one year, so as to indemnify him for losses sustained during the war. In 1633, Champlain again returned to Canada as governor. He at once sought to restore prosperity, and to promote civilization among the Indians, by means of the Jesuit missionaries. In 1634, a new settlement was formed at Three Rivers. In the midst of these signs of returning life and vigour, the young colony was called upon to suffer a signal loss,—the death of her beloved Champlain on Christmas day, 1635, after a checkered yet noble career of heroic endurance in the service of France in Canada, of nearly thirty years. He was a man of unusual energy and decision; but his early zeal against the Iroquois was ill-judged. He wrote three volumes, at intervals, containing an interesting account of his voyages to Canada. He also wrote a history of New France, and a summary of Christian doctrines, which latter was translated into both the Huron and Iroquois languages.

14. *New Viceroy—Montreal Founded.*—De Chateaufort was temporarily appointed to succeed Champlain; but in 1636, he became Governor of Three Rivers, on the arrival from France of De Montmagny, [mont-man-yee] the new viceroy,—who sought to emulate Champlain in his zeal for the colony.\* In 1636, the foundation of the Jesuit College

\* Le Chevalier Charles Huault de Montmagny. During his administration, Montreal was founded, and the long threatened war of extermination

QUESTIONS.—Under what circumstances was Canada, Cape Breton and Nova Scotia restored to the French? Sketch Champlain's further career and life. Who succeeded him? What is said of M. de Montmagny?

for the H  
de Sillery  
four mil  
named af  
saint of C  
severe sh  
and Eng  
cèdèd by  
to an as  
obtained  
M. de Ma  
settlement  
He first  
village of  
wooden p  
18th of M  
ceremoni  
ty the su

15. Co

against th  
to this go  
Nontio, th  
name. Th  
French go  
Indian nar

\* Paul C  
of Montre  
[may-see]  
governmen  
boo-d'-koo  
when M. d

† Montre  
stood upon  
was know  
near the s  
Mo-ni-ang

QUESTIO  
1636 to 164  
of Montre

for the Hurons was laid at Quebec. In 1637-42, Noel Brulart de Sillery, a benevolent knight of Malta, founded an institution four miles above Quebec, for the Indian converts. This he named after St. Joseph—who had been selected as the patron saint of Canada in 1624. The year 1638 was noted for several severe shocks of earthquake, which were felt all over the French and English colonies. In 1640, the island of Montreal was ceded by M. de Lauzon [law-zon\*] for the purposes of settlement, to an association of thirty-five persons. He had, in 1635, obtained it from the Company of One Hundred Partners. M. de Maisonneuve [may-son-nev] was selected to found the settlement, which he did under many discouragements in 1642. He first erected a few buildings, near the site of the Indian village of Hochelaga, and enclosed the whole of them within a wooden palisade, for protection against the Indians.\* On the 18th of May, 1642, the humble settlement was with religious ceremonies solemnly named Ville Marie, or Ma-ri-an-op-o-lis, by the superior of the Jesuits.†

15. *Concerted Indian Attacks.*—In 1642, the Iroquois were

against the Huron Indians was commenced by the Iroquois. It was to this governor that the Indians first applied the term *Onontio*, or *Nontio*, the *great mountain*,—a literal translation of M. de Montmagny's name. The term was afterwards applied indifferently to each of the French governors of Canada. *O-non-ti-o go-a* (or *On-ti-o-go-a*) was the Indian name of the king of France.

\* Paul Chomedey de Maisonneuve was in 1642, installed as first governor of Montreal, by M. de Montmagny. Through the intrigues of M. de Mézy, [may-see] he was, in 1645, at his own request, replaced for a time, in the government of Montreal by M. Louis d'Ailleboust de Coulonge [day-yee-bood'-koo-law'n'g]. He went to France in 1646, but returned in 1648, when M. d'Ailleboust left for France.

† Montreal was known to the Iroquois by the name of *Ti-o-ti-a-ki*, as it stood upon the site of an Indian village on the bank of the river which was known to Jacques Cartier as *Tu-ton-a-qui*. Hochelaga was situated near the side of Mount Royal. This mount was called by the Algonquins *Mo-ni-ang*, which is very similar to the French pronunciation of *Montreal*.

QUESTIONS.—What institutions were founded in L. C. during the years 1636 to 1642? Mention the circumstances connected with the foundation of Montreal. What is said of M. de Maisonneuve; and of the year 1644?



successful in their attacks upon the French; and in the next year, M. d'Ailleboust erected defences around Montreal. In 1644, the Iroquois concerted a bold scheme to destroy the whole line of French posts,—a scheme which, with singular exactness, was again repeated, by other Indian tribes, against the English posts, one hundred and twenty years afterwards.\* In that year (1644), the Iroquois, who were friendly to the Dutch and English, but who were bitterly hostile to the French, and to their allies (the Algonquins and Hurons), formed a plan by which they hoped to exterminate in a single day all the French colonists in Canada. They divided their warriors into two great bands, and these two bands into ten separate war-parties. In the ensuing spring these war-parties were, on a given day, simultaneously to attack the French settlements from several ambushed points, which were selected with more than the usual skill and sagacity of the keen-eyed Iroquois. The party of warriors designed to surprise Montreal was fortunately discovered by the garrison and defeated; while other parties, having acted prematurely, were foiled in their attempts. Thus, although the project failed for want of unity of action on the part of the Iroquois bands, yet many valuable lives were lost; and the very existence of the colony itself was for a time imperilled. In this crisis, Anne of Austria, the Queen Regent of France, and protectress of Canada, (on the death of Cardinal Richelieu and Louis XIII in 1642, 3,) at once sent out a company of soldiers to aid in the protection of the colony. Fort Richelieu, which had been erected with great difficulty in 1642 by Governor Montmagny, at the mouth of the Iroquois (Richelieu) river to keep these Indians in check, was a principal point of attack; but,

---

\* In 1763, Pon-ti-ac, a celebrated chief of the Ottawa Indians and an ally of the French, matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the destruction of the English by the simultaneous capture of all their forts from Lake Michigan to the Niagara. The plot failed. See No. 63, Chapter ix, page 118.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of the Iroquois scheme for destroying the French line of trading-posts in 1644. Had it any after parallel? Mention it. What is said of Anne of Austria and Pontiac, and of Fort Richelieu?

although  
defende  
prisone  
peace.  
Algonq  
Iroquoi  
repudia  
erous I  
a failur  
by the  
ratify t  
was ba  
upon o  
so that  
advant  
Compa  
terrible  
in their  
the inf  
right t  
the ye  
some I  
was co  
renoun  
concer

---

\* Isaac  
as a mis  
in 1642,  
Dutch  
soners.  
returne  
Iroquoi  
Lake G  
he fell

---

QUE  
it brok  
Mentic

although the force within the fort was small, it was successfully defended. At length, in 1645, through the agency of some prisoners, the Governor induced the Iroquois to consent to a peace. A truce followed, to which the Mohawks, Hurons, Algonquins, and French were parties; but the rest of the Iroquois cantons, would not concur in it. It was entirely repudiated by them in 1646, at the instigation of some treacherous Hurons. On the frivolous pretext that an epidemic and a failure in the crops (which had lately occurred) were caused by the machinations of Père Jogues,\*—who had been sent to ratify the treaty with the several cantons,—this Jesuit father was barbarously murdered. Ferocious attacks were also made upon other Jesuit missionaries, and several of the settlements; so that war and rapine again desolated the country. Taking advantage, however, of a partial cessation from strife, the Company of One Hundred Partners, which had suffered such terrible losses during the struggle, made an important change in their relations to the colony. The Company conceded to the inhabitants of Quebec, Three Rivers and Montreal the right to trade in peltries, under certain restrictions, and on the yearly payment to it of one thousand beaver-skins, besides some local expenses of the government. This arrangement was confirmed by royal edict; and the Company consequently renounced all further right to interfere in the internal trading concerns of New France.

\* Isaac Jogues, a native of France, came to Canada in 1636, and laboured as a missionary among the Hurons. He was taken prisoner by the Iroquois in 1642, and was shamefully mutilated. Arendt Van Corlear, the humane Dutch Governor of New Netherland rescued him and other French prisoners. Within a short time he went to France, but soon afterwards returned to Canada. In 1646, when on his way to ratify a treaty with the Iroquois, he gave the name of St. Sacrement to the Lake called afterwards Lake George by Sir Wm. Johnson. On his arrival among the Iroquois, he fell a victim to his zeal, as stated above.

---

QUESTIONS.—How was a truce brought about? Upon what pretexts was it broken? What followed the breaking of the truce? Sketch Jogues' life. Mention the steps taken by the Company to place trade on a firm basis.

16. *Destruction of the Hurons.*—M. de Maisonneuve having declined the office of governor, M. d'Ailleboust succeeded M. de Montmagny, as governor in chief, in 1647. The latter had remained in Canada for three years, and had proved himself to be an able man. During his brief administration the Jesuit missionaries so greatly extended their explorations and labours among the Indians in the interior, especially to the north-west, that the religious interest in the colony was greatly increased in France. Irritated at the continued alliance of the Hurons with the French, the Iroquois formed a scheme for their utter extinction. The 4th of July, 1648, was selected as the commencement of this terrible episode in Indian warfare. On that day they fell upon the Huron settlement of St. Joseph, and destroyed the whole population, numbering 700. Every wigwam was burned; and as if to give a more malignant vent to their hatred to the religion of the pale faces, they set fire to the church; and then threw the mangled and bleeding body of Père Daniel, the Jesuit missionary, its pastor, into the midst of the flames. They then suddenly withdrew, leaving the rest of the mission settlements in a state of terror during the remainder of the year. Early in the following March a band of Iroquois swooped down like an eagle upon St. Ignace and St. Louis, (two Huron settlements near the great lakes,) and put to death four hundred of their inhabitants. At St. Louis the veteran Brebeuf and the gentle Lalemand, (who for twenty years had subjected themselves to every kind of hardship as Jesuit missionaries,) were put to death with excruciating tortures. Each successive settlement was visited in like manner, and with a like result. Soon, in self-defence, the hunted Hurons stood at bay; and for a time alternate success and defeat followed each other with fatal rapidity, inflicting on them terrible losses. At length, in a final struggle for their very existence and for the possession of their homes and

QUESTIONS.—What is said of M. de Montmagny's government? Why were the Iroquois so hostile to the Hurons? Mention the successive attacks of the Iroquois which finally led to the destruction of the Huron Indians.

hunting  
Utterly  
of the  
found  
during  
their  
shores  
of the  
which  
or "I  
Huron  
Ottawa  
disper  
custo  
fled to  
Nipiss  
withi  
Frenc  
transf  
desce

17.  
Colon  
forme  
this u  
—En  
muni  
politi  
shoul  
18.  
carry  
Wint  
Neth  
respo

Que  
notab  
bring

hunting-grounds, they were defeated by the unsparing Iroquois. Utterly routed, the unhappy Hurons, accompanied by some of their missionaries, fled to the upper lakes, and at length found a resting-place on the island of St. Joseph. Here, during the winter, disease and want of food rapidly reduced their already thinned ranks. Some of them fled to the shores of Lake Superior, and sought the powerful protection of the Ojibwas. Here a decisive battle took place on a spot, which, from this circumstance, was named Point Iroquois, or "Place of the Iroquois bones;" and for a short time the Hurons were sheltered. Others also sought the protection of the Ottawa Indians, but were, even with them, again pursued and dispersed. Many of the survivors were, after the old Roman custom, incorporated into the Iroquois tribes, while others fled to Montreal and Quebec by the circuitous route of Lake Nipissing and the Ottawa, and for years remained encamped within the walls of Quebec, or were elsewhere placed under French protection. After the storm had passed over, they were transferred to Ste. Foye; and thence to Lorette, where their descendants now remain. ✓

17. *Proposed Union of the English, French and Dutch Colonies.*—The four New England colonies had, in 1643, formed a union or alliance. It was afterwards proposed that this union should include all the European colonies in America—English, French and Dutch—so as to form one great community, whose existence should not be imperilled by the politics or wars of Europe. Each colony, it was intended, should retain its own laws, customs, religion and language.

18. *Projected Alliance with New England.*—With a view to carry out this scheme of colonial union, Governor John Winthrop of Massachusetts wrote to the governors of New Netherlands and Canada in 1647. The Dutch governor responded favorably at once, but the French governor delayed

---

QUESTIONS.—Where was the remainder of the tribe placed? What notable events took place in the year 1643, 7 and 8? What was done to bring about a commercial alliance between New England and Canada?

doing anything until 1650, when he despatched Père Druillètes\* to Boston, to propose as an additional article of union to the effect that New England should join Canada in chastising the Iroquois. On his return with a somewhat favourable report, d'Ailleboust in 1651 despatched Père Druillètes and M. Godefroy as ambassadors to Boston, to negotiate a treaty. The French, however, having suffered so severely from the Iroquois in their peltry-traffic, pressed their point, and declined to enter into any treaty unless the English would consent to turn their arms against the Iroquois. This hostile stipulation on the part of the French, against the Indian allies of the English, although skilfully presented as a righteous league in defence of Christianity against scoffing Pagans, broke off the negotiations, and the scheme unhappily failed. When this stipulation became known to the Iroquois, it exasperated them still more; and they redoubled their efforts to destroy the French colonists; so that for several years the French, like the ancient rebuilders of Jerusalem, laboured with arms in their hands, and were virtually kept within their enclosures and behind their entrenchments. Trade entirely languished; and the beavers were allowed to build their dams in peace, none of the colonists being able or willing to molest them. †

19. *A Lull in the Indian Contest.*—M. de Lauzon, a chief member of the Company of One Hundred Associates, succeeded

\* Gabriel Druillètes was born in France in the year 1593. He became a Jesuit father, and was sent to Canada in 1643. He laboured chiefly among the Algonquin and Abnakis Indians at Sillery, Tadoussac, Anticosti, Chaudière and Kennebec. In 1650 he was sent alone by the governor as envoy to Boston. On his return, he paid a friendly visit to John Eliot, the famous English apostle to the Indians of New England, at Roxbury. In 1651 he accompanied Sieur Godefroy to the same place to negotiate a treaty with the English colonies. In 1666 he instructed Père Marquette in Montagnais, and accompanied him to the Western lakes. In 1669 he was at Sault Ste. Marie where he laboured for many years. At length he returned to Quebec, where he died in 1681, aged 88 years.

QUESTIONS.—What additional article did the French insist upon? Sketch Druillètes' life. What celebrated English missionary did he visit at Roxbury? To what state were the French settlements reduced?

d'Aille  
as an  
in ext  
attack  
that

In the  
Iroquo  
mies,  
accor  
or can  
for a t  
and th  
with s  
of Can  
Englis  
among  
also  
1656  
Canad  
don't  
Huda  
20.

with  
of the  
that  
atten  
miss  
cons  
amo  
amo  
The  
effor  
Diss

Qu  
Wh  
Wh



d'Ailleboust as governor in 1651; but he was not successful as an administrator. The Iroquois, having nearly succeeded in extirpating the Huron allies of the French, continued to attack the French settlements; and it was not until 1653 that they ceased their warlike inroads upon the colony. In that year reinforcements arrived from France; and the Iroquois, not wishing to encounter their now formidable enemies, intimated a strong desire for peace. A treaty was accordingly entered into in 1654, with the five Iroquois tribes, or cantons, through the intervention of Père le Moyne, and for a time war ceased to alarm the colonists. Trade revived; and the peltry-traffic was vigorously prosecuted by the French with such of the Iroquois cantons as were near the boundaries of Canada. The others, however, preferred to traffic with the English. During the intervals of war, explorations were made among the Sioux [see-cu] Indians, beyond Lake Superior, and also among the Esquimaux, near Hudson Bay. The year 1656 was noted for an overland expedition which was sent from Canada, by way of Labrador, under Sieur Jean Bourdon [boordons], attorney-general of New France, to take possession of the Hudson Bay territory on behalf of the French King. ✓

20. *French Settlements among the Iroquois.*—In accordance with the charter of the One Hundred Associates, the tributaries of the St. Lawrence were included within the trading territory of that company. Under its authority the French colonists made attempts in 1654–7, through the Jesuit missionaries, to form mission settlements among the Iroquois. With the quasi consent of these Indians, Père le Moyne planted a mission among the Mohawks, Dablon among the Onondagas, Mesnard among the Cayugas, and Chaumonot among the Senecas. The English colonists, however, steadily resisted all these efforts of the Jesuit missionaries to settle among the Iroquois. Dissensions, at length, arose among the Iroquois themselves

---

QUESTIONS.—After Lauzon's appointment, how did the Iroquois act? What led to peace? Give an account of the exploration to the Hudson Bay. What French missions settlements were attempted among the Iroquois?

in regard to these encroachments upon their territory; and they refused to admit the right of either the English or French to claim jurisdiction over it. A collision soon occurred; and three Frenchmen were scalped by the Oneidas. The French retaliated and seized some Iroquois braves. The consequence was that in 1656-7 a fierce and unrelenting Indian war once more desolated the country. D'Argenson [dar-zhon'-son'], the new governor, who arrived in 1658, implored the French Government to send immediate succor, else Canada would be for ever lost to France. His requests, however, were unheeded; but the Iroquois, having unexpectedly met with a determined resistance from a few French colonists, under Daulac, in a palisaded post at the foot of the Long Sault rapids of the St. Lawrence, soon afterwards desisted from their concerted attacks upon Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec. Thus relieved from their fears, religious services were held by the colonists in all the churches of Quebec; and a solemn *Te Deum* was chanted for their happy deliverance.

21. *Royal Government established.*—In 1659 a royal edict regulating the civil government of the colony was issued. In the same year, Mgr. de La-val arrived in Quebec as Vicar-Apostolic of the see of Rome.\* In 1660 he sent René Mesnard as

\* The Right Reverend François de Montmorency Laval was born at Laval, in France, in 1623. In his youth he was known as Abbé de Montigny; and, in 1659, he came to Canada as Vicar Apostolic, with the title of Bishop of Pétrée; in 1674, he was named first Roman Catholic Bishop of Quebec. He founded and endowed the Quebec Seminary, in 1663, (which, in 1852, became, by Royal charter, the Laval University). He also established an industrial school and model farm, at St. Joachim, below Quebec. He made great efforts to prevent drunkenness among the Indians; and, by his influence at Court, had the administration of government transferred from a viceroy to a superior council, under certain wise restrictions, which he had submitted to Louis XIV. He effected great good in the colony, and died amid many regrets at Quebec, 6th May, 1708, at the venerable age of 85 years.

QUESTIONS.—What led to war again? Why were the Iroquois induced to desist from their fierce attacks? What important event took place in 1659? What is said of Père Mesnard? Give a sketch of Bishop Laval.

a mission  
year th  
never s  
afterwa  
d'Avau  
of Père  
treaty v  
duration  
Bouche  
king of  
diately  
who wa  
the sta  
vo-goon  
M. de  
sent ou  
—d'Av  
dissolv  
as suc  
of the  
various  
[kol-ba  
[go-day  
colony  
import

22.

Paris.  
the oc  
report  
with a  
"Par

\*Jea  
marine

QUE  
change  
reconc

a missionary to the Hurons on Lake Superior. In the following year this aged priest missed his way in the woods, and was never seen again. His cassock and breviary, were, however, afterwards found. M. d'Argenson having solicited his recall, M. d'Avaugour arrived as governor in 1661. Through the efforts of Père le Moyne [leh-mwoyn], he effected, in 1662, another treaty with three cantons of the Iroquois. Fearing its short duration, (as two cantons had not concurred in it,) he sent M. Boucher [boo-shay], the commandant at Three Rivers, to the king of France with another appeal for aid. The king immediately sent out a regiment under command of Sieur Dumont, who was also, as royal commissioner, directed to report upon the state of the colony. In the meantime d'Avaugour [davo-goor] was recalled at the instance of Mgr. de Laval; and M. de Mézy, who had been nominated by that prelate, was sent out as the first royal governor under the new constitution, —d'Avaugour having, in 1663, induced king Louis XIV to dissolve the Company of One Hundred Associates, in whom, as successors of the Company of Merchants, the government of the colony had been vested since 1603–1628. Owing to various dissensions which had arisen in New France, Colbert\* [kol-bare], the minister of Marine, sent out M. Dupont-Gaudais [go-day] further to examine and report upon the state of the colony. His visit had a salutary effect, for it led to several important changes in the administration of public affairs. ✓

22. *Ameliorations in the System of Government—Custom of Paris.*—The resumption of royal authority in Canada was made the occasion of introducing various reforms, based upon the report of M. Dupont-Gaudais. A "Sovereign Council," invested with administrative and judicial functions, somewhat like the "Parlement de Paris," was instituted at Quebec; legal tri-

\*Jean Baptiste Colbert, born in 1619, was a celebrated minister of finance, marine and the colonies, under Louis XIV. He died in 1683, aged 64 years.

QUESTIONS.—What steps were taken to prevent war? Mention the changes made in the government in 1663? How did Colbert endeavour to reconcile difference? What was the result of Dupont Gaudais' mission?

bunals were established at various places, and municipal government in a modified form introduced. The right of taxation was, however, reserved to the king. The administration of government devolved upon a viceroy (who, as colonial minister, generally resided in France), a governor, and an intendant, or chief of justice, police and public works. With these modifications, the king, in 1664, transferred the trading interests of Canada to the West India Company, by whom an ordinance was passed introducing into the colony the "law and custom of Paris" (*la coutume* [koo-chume] *de Paris*). With a view to ensure harmony in this matter throughout Canada, all other French *coutumes* were declared illegal in it. In the meantime further disputes arose between the governor and the bishop, which ended in de Mézy being recalled from Canada to answer for the arbitrary suspension of his councillors. He died, however, before his sentence of recall and arrest could be executed.

23. *Vigorous Administration and Reform.*—The new rulers sent out from France in 1665, were men of ability, as subsequent events proved. M. de Tracy was selected by the king as lieutenant-general,\* M. de Courcelles [koo-sel] as governor,† and M. Talon [ta-lon] as intendant.‡ On their arrival, with

\* Alexandre de Bonville, Marquis de Tracy, before coming to Canada had already distinguished himself in the taking of Cayenne (French Guiana) from the Dutch, and in the capture of several islands in the West Indies. By his military prowess and promptitude in dealing with the Indians, he compelled the haughty Iroquois to make a satisfactory peace with New France, which lasted for eighteen years.

† Daniel de Rémi, Seigneur de Courcelles, was a veteran soldier; but he did not at all times display the same energy as a governor. He showed much sagacity and zeal in his efforts to prevent the peltry traffic of New France from being diverted into the hands of the English traders.

‡ M. Talon's career in Canada was distinguished by many of the highest qualities of a successful governor. He promoted, to the best of his ability, every enterprise which had for its object the advancement of Canada.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the steps taken to restore royal authority in Canada. Describe the Intendant's duties. What *coutume* was introduced? Who were the new rulers sent out? What is said of each one of them?

new e  
and v  
the C  
out wi  
the I  
especi  
king,  
of gov  
the fu  
and re  
furthe  
amon  
on th  
to rec  
as th  
taine  
as im

24  
sent  
Thre  
the f  
Agai  
de T  
into  
expe  
for p  
the  
into

Lou  
ville

\*  
the  
aux

Q  
pro  
Giv

new emigrants and farming materials, the colony revived, and vigour was at once infused into the government. With the Carignan royal regiment,\* (which de Tracy had brought out with him,) steps were taken to put a stop to the inroads of the Iroquois. The forts were increased and strengthened, especially on the Richelieu river. Talon, by authority of the king, carried into effect various useful reforms in the system of government, especially in regard to the administration of the finances, the punishment of speculators, and the supervision and reduction of the amount of tithes payable to the clergy. He further sought to encourage both agriculture and manufactures among the people. He also prepared a minute report for Colbert, on the state of affairs in the colony, with a view still further to redress grievances. The suggestions of M. Talon, endorsed as they were by the Sovereign Council, were favourably entertained by Louis XIV; and the restrictions on trade in Canada, as imposed by the West India Company, were greatly relaxed.

24. *Expeditions against the Iroquois.*—The reinforcements sent to Canada, and the preparations for war, awed the Iroquois. Three of the weaker cantons, or tribes, demanded peace; but the fierce and powerful Mohawks and Oneidas disdained it. Against these two a formidable expedition, under command of de Tracy, was, in 1666, led by the governor in person far into the interior of the Iroquois country. The effect of this expedition was most salutary. The whole of the cantons sued for peace; and in 1667, through the influence of the agents of the Duke of York and Albany, a satisfactory treaty was entered into with them, which lasted for eighteen years.

Louis XIV conferred upon him the successive titles of Baron d'Orsainville, Baron des Islets, and Baron d'Ormale.

\* So named from the Prince of Carignano [ka-ree-na-no], a Savoyard in the French service. This regiment gained much distinction as a French auxiliary to the Germans in their wars in Hungary against the Turks.

QUESTIONS.—What did these rulers bring? How did Talon seek to improve the system of government? How were the Iroquois dealt with? Give a sketch of Talon's career. What is said of the Carignan regiment?



25. *Rest, Prosperity, and Development.*—War having happily ceased, the whole attention of the government was turned to developing the resources and industry of the country. Expeditions were sent out by Talon in various directions; the mineral wealth of St. Paul's Bay, Three Rivers, and Gaspé was, under the patronage of Colbert, brought to light by geological explorers; fisheries and seal-hunting were prosecuted, and trade in timber and seal-oil commenced. Nor were the more domestic features of industry overlooked. Hemp cultivation, tanning, stave-making, and other branches of domestic manufacture were fostered. Horses were also introduced into the colony in 1665. Ill health, however, no less than differences of opinion with the governor and clergy, induced Talon to retire from the Intendancy in 1668. He was succeeded by de Bouteroue [boo-ter-oo], who sought to conciliate all parties; but having failed to realize the hopes and expectations of Colbert, he was replaced by Talon again, in 1670.

26. *Attempted Diversion of the Fur-Trade.*—The English, having, in 1663, superseded the Dutch in New Amsterdam (afterwards New York), pushed their trade northward through the agency of the Iroquois Indians. These allies, anxious to profit by the traffic, sought in 1670 to obtain furs and skins for the English from the various tribes up the Ottawa. This region was the chief hunting-ground from which the French obtained their supply of furs. The cutting off of this source of supply, therefore, caused much rivalry and ill-feeling. De Courcelles, the governor, went himself to the Indian country to put a stop to the traffic. His mission had a good effect upon the rival tribes, but ill health obliged him to return. The small-pox in the meantime attacked the Indians with great severity; and that disease, together with the use of "fire-water," carried off great numbers of them.

27. *Treaties with the Indians.*—While the rival fur-trade was

---

**QUESTIONS.**—What was the effect of the expedition undertaken against the Iroquois? How long did the peace last? How did the fur-traffic affect the relations of the French and English colonists with the Iroquois?

yet in it  
sought to  
west to ad  
anticipat  
to settle  
With th  
[per-ro],  
the head  
Michigam  
a French  
a cross



Arms

(Kingst  
afterwa  
quest.  
France,  
the gui

\* Nich  
of Cana  
the sove  
the Ott  
esting m

QUEST  
glance o  
extensio

yet in its infancy, Talon, the Intendant, with great sagacity, sought to induce the various Indian tribes at the north and west to acknowledge the sovereignty of Louis XIV, and thus, by anticipation, and with the sanction of the Indians themselves, to settle the question of priority of right to trade with them. With this view, Talon, in 1670, despatched Nicolas Perrot\* [per-ro], an enterprising merchant, to visit the Indians at the head of the great lakes. Perrot went as far as Lake Michigan, and obtained a promise from the tribes to meet a French envoy at the Sault Ste. Marie (where he erected a cross and *fleur de lis* in token of French sovereignty)



Arms of France.

in the spring of 1671. Talon, moreover, anxious to extend French influence over the whole north-western part of the continent, induced Louis XIV to offer a reward to any one who would reach the Pacific coast through New France. In order to secure the trade of the Hudson Bay Indians, Talon also sent an expedition northwards with that object. De Courcelles, too, with a view to establish a *dépôt* for French trade on the upper lakes, obtained permission, from the Iroquois in 1672, to erect a trading-fort at Cataraqui (Kingston). This was one of his last official acts; and he soon afterwards left for France,—having been recalled at his own request. In the meantime, the English, anxious to keep pace with France, obtained a footing in the Hudson Bay territories, under the guidance of des Grosellières [day-gro-sel-e-yare], a French

\* Nicholas Perrot, a French traveller, was sent by M. Talon (Intendant of Canada), in 1670, to induce the north-western Indians to acknowledge the sovereignty of France. An island situated at the western junction of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence, is called after him. He left a most interesting manuscript on the customs of the Indians.

QUESTIONS.—What steps did Talon take to secure the trade and allegiance of the north-western Indians? How did he seek to promote the extension of French influence over the continent? Give a sketch of Perrot.

pilot, aided by another Franco-Canadian, named Radisson [-son]. An English Company was soon formed to trade for furs in the territories, under the patronage of Prince Rupert. Charles II king of England, having claimed the Hudson Bay territories, by virtue of Hudson's discoveries in 1610, granted a charter to this Company in 1670, authorizing it to traffic for furs in that region. The French colonists were jealous of this intrusion, and in 1671 sent another expedition overland to reconnoitre, with a view to the subsequent expulsion of the English from the Bay.

## CHAPTER IX.

### SKETCH OF FRENCH RULE, SECOND PERIOD: FRONTENAC TO THE CONQUEST, 1672-1759.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Career of Frontenac—Discovery of the Mississippi and Rocky Mountains—Trade Contests—Indian Wars—Settlement of Louisiana and Detroit—Pepperell—Seven Years' War—Washington—Braddock—Dieskau—Wolfe—Montcalm—Conquest of Canada—Conspiracy of Pontiac—English and French Colonial Systems.*

1. *Arrival of the Count de Frontenac.*—In the year 1672, de Courcelles, who had proved a successful governor, retired, and Count de Fron-ten-ac, a man of great energy and ability, arrived.\* The count's after-career was still more distinguished

\* Louis de Buade, Count de Frontenac, a native of France, and governor of Canada in 1672, was recalled in 1682. In 1672, he built Fort Frontenac (Kingston). It was rebuilt of stone by La Salle, in 1678. Frontenac was re-appointed governor in 1689, and carried on a vigorous war against the English settlements in New York, and against their Indian allies, the

QUESTIONS.—What steps did the English take to counteract Talon's efforts? What assistance in the matter was given to the English by two of the French colonists? What are the principal subjects of Chapter ix?

than the  
cerned the

2. *Fr*  
arrival,  
of New  
office.  
summon  
him on p  
police, a  
meet tw  
colony.  
infringen

3. *Gu*  
the char  
any of t  
Frontena  
imperial  
the admin  
regarding  
that non  
imprison  
trary rule  
of the ci

4. *Sp*  
markabl  
of adven  
for the c  
Jesuit cl  
ploration

Iroquois.  
ful inroad  
and the  
aged 78 y

QUEST  
tion some  
place in 1

than that of any of his predecessors, in everything that concerned the progress and prosperity of Canada.

2. *Frontenac's first Administrative Acts.*—Soon after his arrival, Frontenac formed a high opinion of the capabilities of New France. He entered with spirit into the duties of his office. He assembled the Sovereign Council, and afterwards summoned the principal residents of Quebec, to confer with him on public affairs. He improved the system of municipal police, and directed that the chief citizens of Quebec should meet twice a year to promote the general interests of the colony. This local assembly of the citizens was deemed an infringement of the king's prerogative, and was not sanctioned.

3. *Guarantees for Civil Liberty.*—In 1674, the king revoked the charter of the West India Company, as it had not fulfilled any of the obligations which it had assumed, and invested Frontenac with full authority as royal governor. In 1677, an imperial ordinance of great importance was passed, regulating the administration of justice in Canada. It was followed by one regarding tithes, and another, still more valuable, declaring that none but the highest civil authority should hereafter imprison any of the inhabitants. Thus, at a time when arbitrary rule was in the ascendant, was laid the foundation of some of the civil rights of the people of Lower Canada.

4. *Spirit of Discovery and Adventure.*—Nothing was so remarkable, during the early settlement of Canada, as the spirit of adventure and discovery which was then developed. Zeal for the conversion of the Indians seems to have inspired the Jesuit clergy with an unconquerable devotion to the work of exploration and discovery. Nor were they alone in this respect;

Iroquois. The English retaliated, and the Iroquois made various successful inroads into Canada. In 1690, Frontenac defeated Sir William Phipps and the English fleet, before Quebec. He died greatly regretted in 1698, aged 78 years. Though haughty, he was an able and enterprising man.

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded De Courcelles? Give a sketch of him. Mention some of Count de Frontenac's first acts? Mention the events which took place in 1674 and 1677. What important ordinances were passed about 1677?

for laymen exhibited the same adventurous spirit in encountering peril and hardship; but they did so from different motives. Promotion of trade with the Indians, and the extension of French power over the whole continent were with them the impelling motives. From the first settlement of Quebec, in 1608, until its fall in 1759, this spirit of discovery and dominion was actively fostered by each succeeding governor, until there radiated from that city a series of French settlements which seemed to shadow forth a dim realization of Coligni's\* [kol-ee-n-ee] gigantic scheme of French colonization from the St. Lawrence to the far west, and from the sources of the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico, and even to the shores of South America.

5. *Summary of Discoveries.*—After Champlain, other explorers extended their researches westward during 1639. In 1640, the southern shores of Lake Erie were visited by Pères Chau-  
monot and de Brebœuf [breh-boohf]. In 1647, Père de Quesne [due-keh-n] went up the Saguenay and discovered Lake St. John. In 1651, 1661, and 1671, expeditions were sent northwards towards the Hudson Bay, with more or less success. In 1646, Père Druillètes ascended the Chaudière [shode-yare], and descended the Kennebec to the Atlantic. In 1659, the Sioux were visited by adventurous traders; and in 1660 Père Mesnard reached Lake Superior. In 1665 Père Allouëz coasted the same lake and formed a mission at the Bay of Che-goi-megon. In 1668, Pères Dablon and Marquette formed a settlement at the Sault Ste. Marie. In 1670 and 1672 Allouëz penetrated with Dablon to the Illinois region, where they first heard of the mysterious Mississippi—the “great father of waters.”

\* Gaspard de Coligni, admiral of France, was born in 1518. He projected a comprehensive scheme of French colonization, which, however, was never realized. He fell a victim to the fury of the populace of Paris against the Calvinists, or Huguenots, on St. Bartholomew's Day, 1572.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the spirit of discovery which was characteristic of the early settlement of Canada. What is said of Coligni, and of his scheme of colonization? Give a summary of the explorations and discoveries made

6. *Dis-*

Marquet  
Ignace,  
anxious  
discover  
[zhoh-ee-  
unknown  
many di  
afterwar  
of Mi-a-n  
thence th  
down thi  
.numer  
all their  
object o  
distance  
seeing tr  
they led

\* Père J  
France.  
a desiro to  
Joliette t  
remained  
his return  
of the disc  
† Louis  
at the Jes  
seminary,  
gave up t  
he was ch  
Mississipp  
and proce  
tributary  
chine rap  
he receive  
grapher t  
county in

QUEST  
circumst  
count of



6. *Discovery of the Mississippi.*—In 1671, the famous Père Marquette [mar-kett] formed a settlement of the Hurons at St. Ignace, near Michilimackinac.\* Two years later, Talon, ever anxious to promote comprehensive schemes of exploration and discovery, despatched, ere he left for France, M. Joliet [zhoh-ee-yet] with Marquette to obtain a further clue to the great unknown river, and if possible to explore its waters. After many discouragements, they reached Bay des Puans [pu-an], afterwards called Green Bay, on Lake Michigan. Here a party of Mi-a-mis Indians directed their steps to the Fox River; and thence they proceeded, in June, to the Wisconsin River. Sailing down this river in a frail canoe, they at length, after suffering innumerable discouragements and delays, were rewarded for all their toil by a sight of that great and silent river—the object of their search. They proceeded down it for a long distance before meeting with any of the Indians. At length, seeing traces of footsteps, Marquette sought to discover where they led to. Advancing a short distance inland, he came to

\* Père James Marquette, a Jesuit missionary, was born at Picardy, in France. While a missionary at Lapoint, on Lake Superior, he expressed a desire to preach the Gospel to the southern Indians, and was chosen by Joliet to accompany him on his expedition to the Mississippi. He remained in the north-west with the Illinois Indians, and died soon after his return from the exploration, at the early age of 88 years. His narrative of the discovery was afterwards published.

† Louis Joliet was born at Quebec in 1645; pursued his classical studies at the Jesuits' College there, and, while preparing for the priesthood in the seminary, he determined to explore the western parts of New France. He gave up the study of divinity for that of the Indian languages. In 1673, he was chosen by Talon, the intendant, and Frontenac to explore the Mississippi to its source. He chose Father Marquette to accompany him and proceeded down the great river as far as the mouth of the Arkansas tributary. When near Montreal, on his return, his canoe upset in the La-chine rapids, and his manuscripts were lost. As a reward for his services, he received a grant of the Island of Anticosti, and was named hydro-grapher to the king. He died about 1701, on the Island of Anticosti. A county in Lower Canada has been named after him.

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the career of Père Marquette and of Joliet. What circumstances led to the discovery of the Mississippi River? Give an account of this memorable discovery, and the places visited on the voyage.

a village on the banks of a river called Mou-in-gou-e-na or Mo-in-go-na, now known as Des Moines. The Indians proved to be Illionois or "men." Marquette and Joliette pursued their journey past the Ohio—called the Wabash—as far as the mouth of the Arkansas River; and then, fearing capture by the Spaniards, they slowly returned. Marquette remained at the north of Illinois as a missionary among the Miamis Indians. Returning to Michilimackinac, he died shortly afterwards on the shores of Lake Michigan, deeply regretted, and was buried near a river there which now bears his name. In the meantime, Joliette had hastened to Quebec, by way of what is now the city of Chicago, to announce their great discovery. As a reward for his share in it, and for other explorations, Joliette received a grant of the island of Anticosti in the St. Lawrence, and a seigniory near Montreal.

7. *La Salle's first Expedition to the Mississippi.*—Fired with the news of this notable discovery, Sieur de la Salle, a French knight, then at Quebec, determined to complete the discovery, in the hopes of finding a new route to China.\* After visiting France, he obtained a royal commission to proceed with his exploration. The seigniory of Cataraqui, including Fort Frontenac, was conferred upon him, on condition that he would rebuild the fort with stone. The Chevalier de Ton-ti, an Italian, and Père Hen-ne-pin\* accompanied him; and together

\* Robert Cavalier, Sieur de la Salle, was ennobled by Louis XIV. He sought to reach China by way of Canada, and set out on an expedition for that purpose. His design was frustrated by an accident at a place since called Lachine, or China. He explored the Mississippi from its source to its mouth, in 1678-80; spent two years between Frontenac (Kingston) and Lake Erie; and constructed the first vessel on Lake Erie (near Cayuga Creek). He sought to reach the Mississippi by sea, but having failed, he sought to reach it overland. In doing so, he was murdered by his jealous and turbulent followers, who afterwards justly suffered greatly.

\* Louis Hennepin, a Recollet, or Franciscan friar and a French missionary, was born in 1640, and emigrated to Canada in 1675. He accom-

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Marquette's death and burial? Mention the events which led to La Salle's first expedition to the Mississippi? What seigniory and fort were given to him? Give a sketch of his career.

they con-  
they re-  
Here th-  
wrote a  
construc-  
party tr-  
la Salle  
reached  
Griffon  
however  
having c-  
vain for  
Decemb-  
ceeding  
Creveco-  
of fort S-  
learn so-  
pin dow-  
directed  
great riv-  
the river  
Anthony  
allies we-  
their for-

8. La-  
in part  
issippi.  
deserted  
At leng-  
ceeded  
each gr-  
panied la-  
the Falls

QUEST-  
issippi.  
accompa-

they constructed three vessels. Proceeding up Lake Ontario, they reached Niagara, where la Salle erected a palisade. Here they visited the great Falls, of which Father Hennepin wrote an elaborate description. Above the Falls, la Salle constructed another vessel, named the *Griffon*. In her the party traversed Lake Erie; and on their way to Lake Huron, la Salle named the intermediate lake "Ste. Claire." Having reached the southern part of Lake Michigan, he sent the *Griffon* back to Niagara with a cargo of furs. The vessel, however, was lost on her way down the lake; and la Salle, having erected a fort for trading with the Miamis, waited in vain for her return. He then turned his steps inland. In December, he reached the head-waters of the Illinois. Proceeding down this river to Lake Pe-o-ri-a, he built fort Crevecoeur near it. Having directed de Tonti to take command of fort St. Louis on the Illinois, he determined to return and learn some news of his vessel. He dispatched Father Hennepin down the Illinois river to the Mississippi, up which he directed him to proceed and explore the head-waters of that great river. Hennepin only went as far as the great falls on the river, which, in honour of his patron Saint, he named St. Anthony. During la Salle's absence, de Tonti and his Illinois allies were attacked by the Iroquois and compelled to abandon their forts and retreat.

8. *La Salle's Second Expedition to the Mississippi.*—Having in part retrieved his losses, la Salle set out again for the Mississippi. He reached it in 1681; but as his posts there were deserted, he returned to Green Bay where he found de Tonti. At length, in February, 1682, he set out again and proceeded slowly down the river, stopping at the mouth of each great tributary, and making excursions here and there

panied la Salle in his exploration of the Mississippi, in 1678, and visited the Falls of Niagara,—of which he wrote an interesting account.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of la Salle's first expedition to the Mississippi. What did he do at Cataragui, and near Niagara Falls? Who accompanied him, and what did they do? What is said of each of them?

in the vicinity. At length, on the 5th of April, he reached one of the mouths of the great river; and in honour of the event he named the surrounding country Louisiana, after Louis XIV, and then took formal possession of it in the name of his sovereign. Thus, after many discouragements, this notable event was accomplished by a French colonist from Quebec.

9. *La Salle's Third Expedition to the Mississippi.*—La Salle soon afterwards retraced his steps; but having numerous envious enemies in France and Canada (among whom was de la Barre, the Governor of New France), he was compelled to return to Quebec, and thence to France to meet his detractors face to face. This he did most successfully; and as a proof of the king's confidence in him, he was intrusted with the command of a colonizing expedition which was sent to the Mississippi by sea. This expedition never reached its destination. Differences with Beaujeu, the commander, led to one disaster after another. The mouths of the Mississippi were passed, and the ships reached the coast of Texas. Beaujeu ran one of the ships on the rocks, and then deserted with another. La Salle and his companions were left to their fate. Having erected a Fort, he left some of his companions in charge, and set out in search of the Mississippi. On his way thither his companions mutinied, put him to death, and afterwards quarrelled among themselves. Most of the survivors, in their efforts to return home, perished miserably, as a just retribution for their cruelty and crimes. Thus perished, in 1685, the noble La Salle.

10. *Internal Dissensions in Canada.*—One of the chief difficulties which Frontenac encountered in his administration of the government of Canada arose from a divided authority. The sovereign council, the governor-in-chief, and the intendant, had each their separate functions, which were sometimes difficult to define, and which often clashed, or were contradictory. Add to this, the governor of Montreal claimed a certain

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of La Salle's second expedition to the Mississippi—of his third expedition. How did this last expedition end? What difficulties in his government had Frontenac to encounter?

jurisdiction  
the Royal  
Frontenac  
regard to  
protested  
declared  
opposed b  
the bishop  
recalled,  
The atten  
alleged ra  
things to a  
Perrot can  
Frontenac  
Fenelon, c  
Perrot and  
on conditi  
but the al  
however, i  
between bi  
(who had  
order to h  
obtain for  
colonists  
obtained  
in the ma  
other sub  
were both

11. De  
ceeded Fr  
neau as i  
seemed in  
quest for

QUESTIO  
governor a  
crisis? Ho

jurisdiction which conflicted with the supreme authority of the Royal Governor. Dissensions between Bishop Laval, Frontenac, and the sovereign council, had long existed in regard to the spirit traffic with the Indians. The bishop protested against its continuance, and sought to have it declared illegal. Interested parties, aided by Frontenac, opposed his benevolent purpose. Owing to the influence of the bishop and clergy, two local governors had already been recalled, and Frontenac was threatened with a similar fate. The attempted arrest of Perrot, governor of Montreal, for alleged rapacity and disobedience to the ordinances, brought things to a crisis. Fearful of the consequences of his opposition, Perrot came to Quebec to explain; but he was imprisoned by Frontenac, who for this act was in turn denounced by Abbé Fenelon, of the Seminary of Montreal. Frontenac sent both Perrot and the abbé to France for trial. Perrot was pardoned, on condition that he would make an apology to Frontenac; but the abbé was forbidden to return to Canada. Disputes, however, in regard to the liquor traffic were still maintained between bishop Laval, Frontenac, and Duchesneau [doo-shen-o] (who had succeeded Talon as intendant in 1675). Colbert, in order to have the matter finally settled, directed Frontenac to obtain for the king the opinion of twenty of the principal colonists on the subject in dispute. These opinions were obtained and sent to France; but nothing definite was done in the matter. At length the contentions on this and various other subjects went so far, that Frontenac and Duchesneau were both recalled in 1682.

11. *De la Barre's Arrival—His Failure.*—De la Barre succeeded Frontenac as governor, and des Meules replaced Duchesneau as intendant. On their arrival, a war with the Iroquois seemed imminent; and an intimation to that effect, with a request for troops, was sent to the king. In the meantime,

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the disputes which arose between the royal governor and various other persons? What brought these disputes to a crisis? How did they end? Who succeeded Frontenac and Duchesneau?



colonel Thomas Dongan\* summoned a council of the Five Nations, in 1784, to meet Lord Howard, governor of Virginia, at Albany, with a view to reconcile disputes. The indecision of de la Barre, however, hastened the very thing which he wished to avert. He set out on a dilatory expedition to Oswego; but after an inglorious treaty with the wily Iroquois at Cataraqui (in which he consented to leave the Miamis allies of the French to their fate), he returned to Quebec. Before things, however, came to a crisis, the treaty was disallowed by the French king, and de la Barre was replaced by M. de Denonville.†

12. *Early Commercial Contests.*—The new Governor arrived at a critical juncture. The unfettered trade enjoyed by the English colonists at New York had fostered individual enterprise so largely, that, aided by their Iroquois allies, they had in many places carried on the fur-trade far into the French territory. De Denonville took active steps to protect the trading monopoly of his people, and to check the proposed transference of trade from the St. Lawrence. He remonstrated with Sir Edmund Andros,‡ governor of New England, and

\* Thomas Dongan, afterwards Earl of Limerick, was a liberal-minded Roman Catholic. He was governor of New York from 1683 to 1688,—when New York was politically annexed to New England. During his administration, the right of electing members of the House of Assembly was first conferred upon the colonists.

† Jacques René de Brisay, Marquis de Denonville, although an excellent man, failed in his appreciation of the gravity of important events. His desultory and ineffective efforts to subdue the Iroquois only increased their hatred to the French, and ultimately led to the fatal massacre of Lachine.

‡ Sir Edmund Andros was successively governor of New York (1674), New England (1686), and Virginia (1692). He involved himself in various disputes in New England, but was more judicious and moderate in Virginia. Arendt Van Curler, or Corlear, a noted Dutch governor (who lost his life in Lake Champlain, while on his way to pay a friendly visit to the Marquis de Tracy, Viceroy of Canada, in 1667), was so loved by the Iroquois, that in memory of him they called all their subsequent English governors by that name. The name was first applied to Sir

QUESTIONS.—How did de la Barre deal with the Iroquois? Who succeeded him? What was the then state of trade in the French and English colonies? Give a sketch of de Denonville, of Andros, and of Dongan.

with Co  
maintai  
within  
French  
so by  
Albany  
and to  
Denonv  
and to  
Iroquoi  
despatch  
that ter  
three t  
in their

13. *St. Lau*  
by the  
within  
they w  
at one  
they n

Edmund  
of a ma  
us, (to  
name fo

\* Pier  
best na  
several  
In 1699  
and hav  
missed,  
sidered  
brother  
the city  
been na

QUEST  
govern  
ing diff

with Col. Thomas Dongan, governor of New York. Dongan maintained the inviolability of the Iroquois territory, as being within English colonial jurisdiction, and would not allow the French Jesuit fathers to settle in it, although directed to do so by his Roman Catholic viceroy, the Duke of York and Albany. In order, therefore, at once to overawe the Iroquois, and to resist the encroachments of the English traders, de Denonville determined to strengthen the line of French forts, and to make active reprisals both upon the English and the Iroquois. In the meantime, de Troyes and d'Iberville\* were despatched to Hudson Bay to drive the English traders out of that territory. The French succeeded in taking from them three trading-forts, leaving only Fort Bourbon (Nelson River) in their possession.

13. *Failure to restrict the Peltry Traffic to the Region of the St. Lawrence.*—Notwithstanding all the efforts which were made by the French, to restrict the traffic in beaver-skins and peltry within their own territories, and to the St. Lawrence route, they were, in the end, powerless to accomplish it. They at one time interdicted trade with the Anglo-Iroquois;—then they made them presents;—again they threatened them—

Edmund Andros, in 1687; "for yow was pleased to accept the name of a man that was of good dispositions, and esteemed deare amongst us, (to witte) the old Corlear."—*Address of 2,000 Maquaes* (the Dutch name for *Mohawk Sachems*) to Sir Edmund Andros.

\* Pierre le Moyne d'Iberville was born at Montreal, and was one of the best naval officers of France, under Louis XIV. He was successful in several encounters with the English in Hudson Bay and at Newfoundland. In 1699, he laid the foundation of a colony at Biloxi, near New Orleans; and having discovered the entrance to the Mississippi, which La Salle had missed, he sailed up that river to a considerable distance. He is considered as the founder of the colony of Louisiana. He died in 1706. His brother, Le Moyne de Bienville, was governor of Louisiana, and founded the city of New Orleans. The county of Iberville, in Lower Canada, has been named after him.

QUESTIONS.—What differences arose between the English and French governors? How did the French succeed in Hudson Bay? What trading difficulties did they experience? Give a sketch of Pierre d'Iberville.

made war upon them—invaded and desolated their villages;—they made treaties with them, and urged and entreated the Dutch and the English to restrain them, and even sought to make the latter responsible for their acts;—but all in vain. As the tide rolled slowly in upon them, and the English, who were always heralded by the Iroquois, advanced northwards and westwards towards the St. Lawrence and the great lakes, the French, still gallantly holding possession of their old trading-forts, also pressed forward before them and occupied new ground. With sagacious foresight, the French had, in addition to the fort at Quebec, erected from time to time palisaded enclosures round their trading posts at Tadoussac, at Sorel, and the Falls of Chambly (on the Iroquois, or Richelieu River), at Three Rivers, Montreal, and Cataraqui (Kingston). Subsequently, and as a counterpoise to the encroachments of the English, they erected palisaded posts at Niagara, Detroit, Sault Ste. Marie, Mich-il-i-mack-i-nac, and at Toronto. Nor were the English idle. Creeping gradually up the Hudson river, they erected armed trading-posts at Albany, and at various points along the Mohawk valley; until, at length, in 1727, they fearlessly threw up a fort at Oswego, on Lake Ontario, midway between the French trading posts of Frontenac and Niagara.

14. *The Campaign against the Iroquois opened by an act of Treachery.*—In order to please the king, and to give force to his aggressive policy against the Iroquois, the governor made Père Lamberville (missionary among the Onondagas), the unconscious instrument of decoying some of their warriors to Cataraqui, on pretence of conferring with them. On their arrival he seized them and ignominiously sent them to France to work at the galleys. De Champigny [sham-peen-ye], the intendant, who had succeeded des Meules, in 1684, also shipped off some victims to Marseilles. The Onondaga tribe was

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the successive steps which were taken by the French and English to protect and extend the peltry traffic. With what act of treachery was the war against the Iroquois Indians commenced?

greatly i  
him. T  
him out  
against  
of the G  
Iroquois  
instead  
of his f  
he sent  
governor  
They su  
the gro  
Chambl  
aggressi  
15. A  
peace w  
Dongan  
lated th  
Niagara  
terms w  
at Lake  
circums  
the dem  
felt for t  
A-da-ri-  
chief o  
offence  
propose  
French  
lities be  
at once  
1689, b

\* Louf

**QUEST**  
involved  
to do in

greatly incensed at Lamberville's conduct and at once sent for him. They acquitted him, however, of the treachery, but sent him out of their country. Meanwhile, the governor advanced against the Senecas by way of O-ron-de-quot (near the mouth of the Genesee river), with a superior force. Having met the Iroquois, he defeated them and burned their village; but instead of following up his victory, he withdrew with part of his force to Niagara which he garrisoned; the remainder he sent back to headquarters. No sooner had the French governor retired, than the Iroquois reappeared on every side. They suddenly attacked the fort at Niagara, and razed it to the ground. They then menaced the forts at Cataraqui, Chambly, and Montreal, and committed many lawless acts of aggression in their fierce and stealthy warfare.

15. *Negotiations and Renewed Wars.*—Negotiations for a peace were at length opened with the Iroquois through Colonel Dongan, the English governor of New York. Dongan stipulated that the captured chiefs should be restored, the new fort at Niagara abandoned, and the spoils of the Senecas restored. These terms were refused, until they were enforced by the presence, at Lake St. Francis, of twelve hundred Iroquois. Under these circumstances, de Denonville had no option but to comply with the demands. Owing, however, to the hatred which the Iroquois felt for the French, the dispute was prolonged. At this juncture, A-da-ri-o, or Kon-di-a-ronk (also known as *Le Rat*), a Huron chief of rare powers, and favourable to the French, took offence at their exclusion of his tribe from the negotiation of a proposed treaty, and, by means of a double treachery to the French and Iroquois, suddenly precipitated a renewal of hostilities between them. Anxious, therefore, to assume the offensive at once, a project was submitted to Louis XIV in January, 1689, by De Callières\* [kal-le-yare], the governor of Montreal,

---

\* Louis Hector de Callières-Bonnevue, a native of Normandy, was a

---

QUESTIONS.—What expedition was undertaken by the governor? Who involved the two colonies again in war? What did de Denonville propose to do in regard to New York? Did the king agree with him in his project?

boldly to attack the seat of English power at Manhattan (New York), and at Orange (Albany). As war had not yet been declared, the project was not entertained by the king.

16. *The Year of the Massacre.*—War having been declared the next year (1689) between France and England, the contest between the rival colonies, which had become imminent in Canada, at once assumed formidable dimensions. In the following June, the king directed Frontenac to carry de Callières' scheme into effect. While it was under consideration, the ever-vigilant Iroquois appeared passive, and were even friendly in their demeanour to the French. They had, however, secretly acquired information of all the hostile movements of the French. At length, however, and without the slightest premonition, these terrible Iroquois suddenly appeared near Montreal, and in one night of August, 1689, utterly desolated the village of Lachine, and massacred its entire population. They then attacked Montreal, captured the fort and retained possessions of the entire island until October. So panic-stricken was de Denonville, the governor, that he gave orders to evacuate and raze Fort Cataraqui. For ten weeks the fiery bands of Iroquois passed unrestrained through the land, leaving nothing but death and desolation behind them. At length, satiated with revenge, they suddenly forsook the war-path and retired to their lurking-places.

17. *Return of Frontenac—His energetic War-Measures.*—Scarcely had the war whoop of the retreating Iroquois died away in the French settlements, ere the shouts of welcome to the returning Frontenac sounded far and near along the banks of the lower St. Lawrence. De Denonville had been recalled, member of the Montreal Trading Company, and also governor of the city. He projected the conquest of New York, and was, in anticipation of the success of his scheme, named first French governor of that province. He succeeded Frontenac as governor of the colony in 1698, and emulated him in his zeal to promote the best interests of New France.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of De Callières. What calamity occurred to the French settlements in 1689? Describe the sudden attack of the Iroquois. What was the state of Canada on the return of Frontenac as governor?

and C  
He br  
voyag  
partia  
for, ad  
Louis  
war a  
James  
from Y  
with  
into t  
the c  
succe  
emiss  
to de  
mons  
from  
of wi  
sacre  
Rivie  
exces  
Casc  
and  
high  
mind  
Cata  
Denc  
was  
the  
tribe  
this  
cont  
a sp

Qu  
colo  
both



and Count de Frontenac again became governor of Canada. He brought out with him the captive Iroquois, and during the voyage sought in every way to conciliate them, in which he was partially successful. He, however, arrived at a critical period; for, added to the fierce inroads of the unsparing Iroquois, Louis XIV had increased the peril of Frontenac by declaring war against Great Britain and her colonies, in order to aid James II, then an exile in France, in recovering his throne from William III, Prince of Orange. Frontenac, in accordance with his instructions from the king, resolved to carry the war into the adjoining English colonies. The Hudson Bay and the outlying New England settlements were suddenly and successfully attacked. In the meantime Frontenac sent emissaries to meet the Iroquois at Onondaga, with instructions to detach them from the English,—whose weakness he demonstrated by secretly sending a party of French and Hurons from Montreal to Corlear (Sche-nec-ta-dy) [ske-], in the depth of winter of 1689-90. This party burned the town, and massacred nearly all the inhabitants. Another party left Trois Rivières for New England, where they committed great excesses. A third party was despatched from Quebec to Casco Bay. Being reinforced there by Baron de Castine and by the victorious party from Trois-Rivières, they were highly successful in their foray. Nor was the governor unmindful of the French posts on the lakes. Although Fort Cataraqui had been blown up and abandoned by order of de Denonville, Durantaye, the commander at Mich-il-i-mack-i-nac, was reinforced; and Perrot being furnished with presents for the Ottawa and other Indians, was directed to detach these tribes from the Iroquois, who were allies of the English. In this he was successful; and the Iroquois had to carry on the contest alone. This they did with vigour; but, so determined a spirit of resistance had Frontenac infused into the people,

---

QUESTIONS.—What act of the king further increased the peril of the colony? What was his object? Mention the active steps which he took both against the English and Iroquois, and with what result in both cases?

that little harm was done by the Iroquois to the French settlements. In the midst of so much peril, the inhabitants, under the guidance of a master spirit, acquitted themselves nobly, and many were the heroic deeds which they performed.

18. *Second Expedition against Quebec, 1690.*—Frontenac's successes aroused the English colonists to great activity. Massachusetts, being the leading colony, summoned a meeting, or congress, of representatives from the other provinces to meet at New York in May, 1690. At that congress it was agreed that no time should be lost in equipping two expeditions, —one to attack the French settlements by sea, and the other by land. Sir William Phipps\* took command of the fleet destined to act by sea against Quebec, and the son of Governor Winthrop of Connecticut that of the army destined to co-operate by land against Montreal. Winthrop proceeded as far as Lake George, there to await the success of Phipps' fleet against Quebec. Sickness, however, broke out among his troops, and compelled him to return without accomplishing anything. In the meantime, the fleet, having previously captured Port Royal and other places in Acadie (Nova Scotia), appeared before Quebec, and demanded the surrender of the place. Frontenac returned a defiant reply, and soon after opened fire upon the fleet. The shot from the ships fell short; while the superior position of Frontenac enabled him to bear upon them with ease. Phipps soon retired with his disabled ships; but the force which he had sent on shore obstinately maintained the contest. Overwhelmed, however, they too

\* Sir William Phipps was born of humble parents at Pem-a-quid (Bristol), in the present State of Maine, in 1651. Being a sailor, he was so fortunate as to find large treasure in a Spanish wreck off the coast of Hispaniola. This gave him wealth and influence. He was knighted by James I, and in 1669 was sent to take Quebec. In 1692, he was appointed governor of Massachusetts, and greatly exerted himself to promote its prosperity. He died in 1695, aged forty-four years.

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the expeditions which were sent from New England against Canada. Who commanded them? How did they succeed? Describe the second attack on Quebec. Give a sketch of Sir Wm. Phipps.

withdrew  
resound  
*Te Deu*  
his sov  
bearing  
VICTRI  
in the  
memor  
lower t  
*Dame o*

19. A  
tory ha  
They v  
now, as  
The fi  
to far  
of neu  
and E  
Montre  
withdre  
time, C  
with th  
succeed  
with th  
frustrat  
Major  
New Y  
Champ  
the Iro  
chief, B

\* Major  
called "  
of "Pete

QUEST  
brated?  
countera

withdrew, and the walls of the beleaguered town at length resounded with the shouts of victory. Frontenac ordered a *Te Deum* to be sung, and at once penned a glowing dispatch to his sovereign, who in return caused a medal to be struck, bearing this proud inscription:—"FRANCIA, IN NOVO ORBE, VICTRIX; KEBECCA LIBERATA, A.D. MDCXC."—"France, victress in the new world; Quebec free, A.D. 1690." Further to commemorate the event, a church (which is still standing in the lower town,) was erected in Quebec and dedicated to "*Notre Dame de la Victoire!*"

19. *Expedition against Montreal, 1691.*—Frontenac's victory had the effect of checking the inroads of the Iroquois. They were not, however, disposed to renew the contest just now, as a coolness had arisen between them and the English. The fickle Mohawks carried their jealousy to the English so far as to send warriors to Montreal to enter into a treaty of neutrality in any future contests between the French and English colonies. M. de Callières, the governor of Montreal, affected indifference to their offer, and the Indians withdrew, soon to return and avenge the slight. In the meantime, Colonel Sloughter, the English governor, held a council with the remaining four cantons of the Iroquois. He so far succeeded in renewing and "brightening the covenant chain" with them, that the design of the Mohawks would have been frustrated had they persisted in it. In the same year, Major Schuyler,\* who was sent by the English colonists of New York, made a bold irruption into Canada through Lake Champlain, and with his Indians defeated de Callières; while the Iroquois, by their stealthy warfare under their Onondaga chief, Black Kettle, continued to keep the French settlements

---

\* Major Peter Schuyler was a great favourite with the Iroquois. He was called "Quider" by them, that being the nearest approach to the name of "Peter" which their language would allow.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the contest end? and how was the victory celebrated? What was the effect of this victory? How did the English counteract it? What other attacks were made? Who was Major Schuyler?

in constant alarm. Port Royal was, however, recaptured by the French in November, 1691; and in the following January, a New England settlement was surprised and put to the sword.

20. *Defences—Partial Cessation of War.*—The ever-vigilant Frontenac, fearing another attack on Quebec and Montreal, strengthened the defences of both towns in 1693. He also attacked the Iroquois "castles," but was compelled by "Quider" to retreat. He again renewed the attempt in 1694. Taking advantage of these successive inroads upon the Iroquois, and their recurring jealousy of the English, he soon afterwards rebuilt Fort Cataraqui against their wishes, and named it Frontenac (now Kingston). By his skill and courage he compelled the Iroquois to desist from their attacks, and soon had the satisfaction of seeing comparative peace restored to the French settlements. The inhabitants were thus enabled once more to resume the cultivation of their lands. In the Hudson Bay the French were also successful. In 1694, d'Iberville took from the English the fourth and only remaining trading-post (Bourbon, on the Nelson River) in their possession.

21. *Successful Invasion of the Iroquois Cantons.*—Frontenac, anxious to put a final stop to the harassing and destructive warfare which had been so constantly waged against him by the unrelenting Iroquois, determined to humble these haughty Indians by invading their own territory. He therefore collected a force of 2,300 colonists and friendly Indians at Fort Frontenac, in 1696. With this force he marched into the Iroquois territory by way of Oswego. The expedition was partially successful; but the villages in two cantons were desolated by the Onondaga Indians themselves rather than allow them to fall into his hands. Only one very old chief remained, and he was tortured to death at Salina. Before Frontenac's object was fully accomplished, he returned to Canada; but his raid so excited the fierce enmity of the Iroquois that they again

---

QUESTIONS.—How did Frontenac provide for the successful defence of Canada? What occurred at Hudson Bay? What further steps did Frontenac take against the Iroquois Indians? What success did he meet with?

ravished  
a fami  
harasse

22.

the mu  
to secu  
with th  
of long  
year.

themse  
own ad  
more fa  
extensi  
the Fre  
feeling

It is a  
France  
of the  
with th  
efforts

traffic  
channe  
only co  
they w  
among  
but all

23.

Indian

[koo-re

As to

they v

natura

of the

QUES  
tion th  
colony

ravished his territory with fire and tomahawk, and caused a famine in Canada. In return, Frontenac's Indian allies harassed the English settlements even far into the interior.

22. *The Cause of these Incessant Wars* must be looked for in the mutual determination of the French and English colonists to secure an exclusive right to carry on a traffic for furs with the various Indian tribes. These trading contests were of long standing, and seemed to increase in bitterness every year. Each party invoked the aid of the savages, who were themselves not indisposed to enter into the contest on their own account, in order that they might thereby obtain the more favour in trade from the successful rival. Territorial extension, no less than imbibed national resentment between the French and English colonists, also gave an intensity of feeling to the contest, and no doubt contributed to its duration. It is a striking fact, moreover, which the government of New France either ignored, or never fully realised, that the chief part of the misunderstandings, difficulties, and contests connected with the peltry traffic, had mainly their origin in the persistent efforts on the part of that government to impose upon that traffic unreasonable restraints, and to force it into unnatural channels. In their efforts to do this, their plans were not only counteracted by the energy of the English traders; but they were even thwarted in them by three separate classes among themselves,—each having different interests to serve, but all united in their secret opposition to the government.

23. *The Three Classes of French Fur Traders* were: 1, the Indians; 2, the trading officials; and 3, the *coureurs de bois* [koo-reur-du-bwa], ("runners of the wood," or white trappers). As to the first class (the Indians of these vast territories), they were ever proud of their unfettered forest life, and naturally disdained to be bound by the artificial trammels of the white man in the exchange of skins for blankets,

---

QUESTIONS.—How did his expedition against the Iroquois end? Mention the causes of these incessant wars. What was the policy of each colony? What three classes of traders are mentioned? Describe them.



and for the weapons of the chase. The second class (the officials of New France) were secretly in league with the *coureurs de bois* against the king's revenue agents—their exaction and their exclusive privileges. The third or intermediary class of traders, or factors (the *coureurs de bois*), sought in every way in their power to evade the jurisdiction of the farmers of the revenue at Quebec. Their own reckless and daring mode of life among the Indians in the woods, far from the seat of official influence and power, gave them peculiar facilities for doing so. Of these facilities they were not slow to avail themselves,—especially as they were secretly under the protection, and even patronage, of one or other of the French colonial governors or judges. These *coureurs de bois*, through whom the traders obtained furs, were a numerous class; there was not (says the intendant Duchesneau, in his memoir to the king, in 1681,) a family in Canada of any condition and quality which had not children, brothers, uncles, or nephews among them. ✓

24. *The Treaty of Ryswick*, in 1697, at length brought King William's war to a close, and restored peace to the rival colonies. France agreed to give up whatever places she had taken during the war; and commissioners were appointed to fix the boundaries of the French and English possessions in the New World. No mention of the Iroquois was made in the treaty. The French governor, however, still sought through the Jesuit fathers to detach the Iroquois from the English, but the English prompted the Indians to prevent the settlement of priests among them. In 1700, a law was passed by the Colonial Assembly, punishing by death every priest who might come to settle in the colony.

25. *Death and Character of Frontenac*.—The return of peace was signalled by a sad loss to the French colonists, in the death of the great and good Count de Frontenac. He died at Quebec, in November, 1698, aged seventy-seven years. Like

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe the *coureurs de bois*. What was agreed to by France and England in the Treaty of Ryswick? How was the case of the Iroquois Indians dealt with? Give a sketch of the career of Frontenac.

Cham  
perity  
defend  
intrus  
quick-  
was m  
heartf  
was th

26.  
death  
were t  
that y  
officer  
ritory,  
Touch  
ing pa  
—abo  
follow  
and in  
remov

27.  
prom  
the w  
Callie  
Michi  
to fou  
Erie a  
ment

28.  
Franc  
treaty  
the c

QUE  
attlen  
sketch

Champlain, he had devoted all his energies to promote the prosperity of Canada. By his bravery and sagacity he successfully defended her alike from the inroads of the Iroquois and the intrusive designs of his Anglo-American neighbours. Though quick-tempered and haughty, he was brave and fearless. He was much beloved by his fellow-colonists, and died amid their heartfelt regrets. He was succeeded by M. de Callières, who was then governor of Montreal.

26. *Settlement of Louisiana by D' Iberville, 1699.*—After the death of la Salle, and the dispersion of his followers, no steps were taken to colonize the Mississippi valley until 1698. In that year, d'Iberville, a native of Montreal, and a successful officer in the contests with the British in the Hudson Bay territory, left France and arrived in Florida early in 1699. Touching at Pensacola, he entered the Mississippi; and having partly explored it, he returned and erected a fort at Biloxi, —about ninety miles north-east from New Orleans. In the following year he brought with him a number of Canadians; and in 1701 he erected another fort at Mobile, whither he removed his colony. During his lifetime the colony prospered.

27. *Settlement of Detroit by De la Motte Cadillac, 1701.*—To promote the extension of French power and influence among the western Indians, and to secure the trade with them, de Callières sent, in 1701, de la Motte Cadillac, governor of Michilimacinac, with an hundred men and a Jesuit missionary to found a colony at Detroit, or the “strait” between Lakes Erie and Huron. The site was well chosen; and the settlement has more than realized the expectations of its founder.

28. *War Renewed—Unsuccessful Expeditions.*—In 1702, France and England were again at war; but the Iroquois, by a treaty with the French governor, agreed to remain neutral in the contest. In 1703, de Callières died. He was succeeded

---

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded Frontenac? Give an account of the first settlement of Louisiana, and of Detroit. Who settled these places? Sketch the career of d'Iberville. What events occurred in 1702 and 1703?

by the Marquis de Vaudreuil [voh-drah-yee] as governor.\* Successive contests with the Miamis and other western Indians, and against the colonists of New England, took place soon after his appointment. The surprise and massacre of the settlers at Deerfield, Massachusetts, in 1704, and at Haverhill in 1708, must ever reflect disgrace upon Hertel de Rouville, the leader of the enterprise. These attacks upon New England, by the French, led to unsuccessful reprisals against Acadie and the French settlements in Newfoundland. Defeat, however, roused the British colonists to renewed exertions. They formed a plan to take Quebec and Montreal, and collected a large force under Col. Nicholson at lake Champlain, as a rendezvous. Col. Schuyler, induced the Five Nations to engage heartily in this contest. To bear the expenses of this expedition, the colonies issued the first paper-money ever used in America. Having waited in vain for promised reinforcements from England, the colonists abandoned the expedition for a time.

29. *Further Failures.*—The failure of the expedition greatly disappointed the Iroquois. Col. Schuyler however, to revive their confidence projected an Indian embassy to England to solicit further aid. He accompanied the embassy, and was highly successful in his mission, beside gratifying the Iroquois chiefs and interesting the English public with a novel sight.

30. *The Treaty of Utrecht—The Six Nations—Louisbourg.*—Although discouraged, the colonists, still intent upon their scheme of conquest, changed the theatre of war to

\* Philip de Rigaud, Marquis de Vaudreuil, one of the most successful governors of Canada, first achieved distinction in the army. He was sent to Canada as commander-in-chief, and aided in the relief of Montreal, after the massacre of Lachine. He aided Frontenac in the defence of Quebec against Sir William Phipps, and in his wars with the Iroquois. He was appointed governor of Montreal, and afterwards succeeded de Callières as governor of New France. During his administration he accomplished many useful reforms. He died at Quebec in 1725

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded De Callières? What is said of Marquis de Vaudreuil? Mention the wars which followed De Vaudreuil's appointment. What plan of retaliation was adopted by the New England colonists?

Acad  
1711,  
the D  
expec  
A for  
Queb  
land  
and s  
wreck  
prese  
wards  
the t  
Anne  
found  
conce  
the I  
reliev  
turne  
affinit  
into t  
know  
defens  
seawa  
Breto  
1720,  
31.  
to Ca  
Vaud  
and t  
three  
eight  
exten  
treal

Qu  
exped  
Iroga

Acadie. That part of New France they took in 1710. In 1711, 5,000 troops, detached from the victorious army of the Duke of Marlborough, having arrived from England, the expedition against Canada was revived with great vigour. A formidable naval force was despatched from Boston to Quebec, under Admiral Sir Hovenden Walker; while a large land force rendezvoused at Lake George. Owing to fogs and storms, the fleet failed to reach Quebec: half of it being wrecked; and the land force remained inactive. For the present the scheme failed; and the army was shortly afterwards distributed along the frontier, for its defence. At length the treaty of Utrecht [u-trek], in 1713, put an end to Queen Anne's war, and confirmed to Great Britain, Acadie, Newfoundland, and the Hudson Bay territory; besides finally conceding to the English their claims to a protectorate over the Iroquois and their territory. The Five Nations, thus relieved from the necessity of further contests with the French, turned their attention to their enemies at the south. Claiming affinity with the Tuscaroras in Carolina, they incorporated them into their confederacy, and it thus became what was afterwards known as the SIX NATIONS. To provide for the maritime defence of Canada (which, as yet, had no protection to the seaward), France lost no time in colonising the island of Cape Breton. Louisbourg, its capital, was founded in 1713, and, in 1720, was strongly fortified at great expense.

31. *Peace and Prosperity in Canada.*—The return of peace to Canada brought with it also a return of prosperity. M. de Vaudreuil set himself to develop the resources of the country, and to foster education among the people. He subdivided the three governments of Quebec, Three Rivers, and Montreal into eighty-two parishes, and took a census of the people. He also extended the fortifications of Quebec, and directed that Montreal should be put in a state of defence. Thus he employed

---

QUESTIONS.—How were the colonists aided from England? Mention the expedition which they undertook. What treaty was made? How did the Iroquois act? Give a sketch of De Vaudreuil's administration and career.

himself until his death, which took place in 1725. In 1720-1, Charlevoix, a distinguished traveller, visited Canada, and afterwards wrote an account of his travels in New France.

32. *Further Trading Disputes.*—Baron de Longueuil [lohngay-ee] administered the government for a year, when the Marquis de Beauharnois [bo-har-nwah] succeeded de Vaudreuil as governor, in 1726.\* By order of the king, and with a view still further to counteract the efforts of the British traders, de Beauharnois strengthened the forts at Frontenac and Niagara. Governor Burnet of New York (son of Bishop Burnet of England) resolved, in 1727, to neutralize the designs of the Marquis by erecting another fort, midway between Frontenac and Niagara, at Oswego. He also had an act passed by the Assembly of New York, subjecting any French trader to heavy loss who would supply the Iroquois with goods. As an act of retaliation the few English residents at Montreal were peremptorily exiled; and contrary to existing treaties, the new French fort of St. Frederic was erected at Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, and a settlement formed there. With a view to punish the predatory acts of the western Indians, M. de Beauharnois, in 1728, dispatched a large force to Chicago, by way of the river Ottawa, Lake Nipissing, and the French River. The expedition was highly successful, and penetrated within a comparatively short distance of the upper Mississippi. Efforts were also more or less successfully made by French agents to detach the Iroquois from the English. As their territory lay between the English and French colonies, and formed a barrier between them, the Iroquois could act

\* Charles, Marquis de Beauharnois, succeeded de Champigny as Intendant in 1702. In 1705 he returned to France, and in 1726 was appointed Viceroy of Canada. In the twenty-one years during which he administered the government of New France, he displayed much enterprise and ability. He made the most of the means at his command to protect the colony from the intrusion of the English.

QUESTIONS.—What did Charlevoix do? Mention the further trading contests which arose, and how each party sought to meet them. What expeditions were on foot? What is said of the Marquis de Beauharnois?



against either. It was, therefore, important for either colony to secure their co-operation, or their neutrality.

33. *The Champlain Valley.*—This beautiful valley, which had acquired unusual prominence in the intercolonial contests which begun in 1730, and ended in 1760, was first discovered by Champlain in 1609. It lies between the States of New York and Vermont, and stretches about 150 miles southwards (from the River Richelieu in Canada), and includes the waters of Lakes Champlain and George. In the early French and Indian wars, its long line of water communication from New France far into the interior of the Iroquois territory made it a favourite route for armed predatory bands with their fleets of swift and light canoes. From this circumstance they called Lake Champlain Cani-a-de-re Gu-a-ran-te, or the "lake-gate of the country." The Indian name for Lake George was An-di-a-to-roc-te—"there the lake [i.e. the whole lake valley] shuts [or ends] itself. It received its present name (George) in 1755 from Sir William Johnson, "not only in honour of his majesty king George," but to assert "his undoubted dominion here." The French missionary, Père Jogues, while on his way to ratify a treaty with the Iroquois, in 1646, had named it St. Sacrement—having arrived there on the anniversary of that festival. Mr. J. Fennimore Cooper, the American writer, gave it the poetical name of Lake Hor-i-con.

34. *Discovery of the Rocky Mountains.*—In 1731, Sieur de la Vérendrye [vay-ron'-dree], a native of Canada, and a son of M. de Varennes,\* sought to give effect to a scheme for reaching the Pacific ocean overland. He set out by way of Lake Superior, and with his brother and sons occupied twelve years in exploring the country lying between that lake and the Saskatchewan, the upper Missouri and the Yellowstone rivers. His son and brother reached the Rocky Mountains in 1743.

\* He took the name of De la Vérendrye from his maternal grandfather.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the Champlain valley. Mention its length and the names of the lakes in it. By what Indian, French and English names were they known? For what were the lakes chiefly noted?

35. *Pepperrell's Expedition from New England.*—The notes of war between England and France, which had ceased at the peace of Utrecht, were again sounded in 1745. From Crown Point the French and their Indian allies successfully attacked the English settlements; and from Louisbourg, the fortified capital of Cape Breton, a host of French privateers sallied forth to prey upon the fishing boats of Nova Scotia and the commerce of New England. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, aided by the other colonies, at once organized an expedition under William Pepperrell for the reduction of this stronghold.\* The expedition was highly successful, and Pepperrell was rewarded with a baronetcy. Nothing daunted, a fleet, under the Duke d'Anville, was dispatched from France to recapture Louisbourg. But having been dispersed by successive tempests, it never reached its destination, much to the joy of the English colonists, who duly acknowledged this providential interposition on their behalf by public thanksgiving in their churches.

36. *Border Conflicts with the Indians.*—As a set off to this disaster, however, the French colonists (being unopposed by the Iroquois, who were lukewarm towards the English), made several successful inroads along the frontier line of Canada from Boston to Albany, and greatly harassed the English settlements. The heroic defence by Sergeant Hawks, of one of the English posts against an attack from Crown Point by de Vaudreuil, called forth the admiration of both sides; while the barbarous treatment of the Keith family by the St. Francis Indians, at Hoosic, near Albany, caused a feeling of the deepest resentment. The colonists were roused; and each one vied with the other in setting on foot an expedition for the conquest

---

\* Sir William Pepperrell was a native of New England, and a brave, energetic officer in the later contests between the French and English colonists. For his success and gallantry King George made him a Baronet.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the discovery of the Rocky Mountains. What led to Sir William Pepperrell's expedition? How did it succeed? What did the French do? What is said of Sir William Pepperrell?

of C  
neve  
the  
desu  
terri  
37  
—T  
offer  
repa  
bour  
dario  
clair  
the S  
no f  
separ  
nière  
noug  
by in  
south  
partic  
the I  
Ohio  
claim  
la Sa  
the c  
had f  
the E

\* R  
1693.  
schola  
He sh  
the g  
was a  
Admi

QUE  
It uns  
other

of Canada. Troops were promised from England, but as they never came, the expedition had to be abandoned. At length the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748, put an end to these desultory contests; and both countries restored the respective territories which had been taken by them during the war.

37. *Disputes about Acadie and Ohio arising out of the Treaty.*—The restoration of Cape Breton to the French, gave great offence to New England; but, in 1749, the British parliament repaid the colonies the cost of their expedition against Louisbourg. Disputes, however, soon arose as to the exact boundaries of New France and New England. The British colonists claimed that the Acadian territory extended to the banks of the St. Lawrence, while the French maintained that it reached no further than the Bay of Fundy and the Isthmus which separates that bay from the Gulf of St. Lawrence. M. Galissonnière\* [gal-ese-sonn-e-yare], the acting governor of New France, sought to interpose a living barrier to these encroachments, by inducing the Acadians to emigrate, *en masse*, from the south to the north side of the Bay of Fundy. In this he was partially successful. Galissonnière also took steps to prevent the British fur traders from intruding up the valley of the Ohio River, between Canada and Louisiana, which the French claimed on the ground of occupancy, and of the discoveries of la Salle and Marquette. The British rested their claim upon the ownership of the valley by the Six Nation Indians, who had formally placed all their territory under the protection of the English in 1684. This claim the Indians acknowledged in

---

\* Roland Michel Barrin, Count de la Galissonnière, born in France in 1693. Though small and deformed, he was noted as a statesman and a scholar, as well as a distinguished officer in the French naval service. He showed great energy and ability during the two years he administered the government of New France, while M. de la Jonquière, the governor, was a prisoner in England. His name was associated with the unfortunate Admiral Byng of England. He died in 1766, aged 63 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—What concessions were made by the treaty? Why was it unsatisfactory? What aggressive steps were taken in Acadie, and in other places, to settle the dispute? Give a sketch of de la Galissonnière.

1744. In 1748 the Ohio trading company was formed. The French governor protested against the formation of this company; and in the same year he sent M. Céloron de Bienville to expel the British traders from the Ohio Valley, and to take formal possession of it. This latter he did by depositing at the mouth of every large stream a plate of lead, on which was engraved the French arms and an inscription. The governor further erected or strengthened a chain of forts extending from the Ohio to Montreal, including Detroit, Des Puans (Green Bay), Niagara, Fort Rouillé [roo-eel-lay] (Toronto), (after the French colonial minister) and la Présentation (Ogdensburgh).

38. *Efforts to detach the Iroquois from the English.*—At la Présentation, (the fort of which was destroyed by General Gage in 1757) Abbé Picquet\* had established a mission school, so as to conciliate the Iroquois, and to detach them from the English. This was often a successful and favourite policy with the French governors. In 1751 they even prevailed upon the Onondagas to permit them to establish a similar school at Onondaga lake, in the heart of the Iroquois confederacy. Sir Wm. Johnson hearing of it, promptly repaired to the place, and, before the project could be carried out, purchased the lake and a margin of two miles round it for \$1,750! M. de la Jonquière,† [zhon-ke-yare] the new French governor followed up the schemes of la Galissonnière with spirit. In obtaining permission to erect a fort at Niagara he ingeniously availed himself of an

\* Francis Picquet was not only a zealous missionary, but a brave soldier. He sometimes accompanied the French Indians in their raids upon the English settlements. By the French he was known as the "Apostle of the Iroquois," and by the English as the "Jesuit of the West."

† Jacques Pierre de Taffanel, Marquis de la Jonquière, a native of Languedoc, was a distinguished naval officer. He was appointed to the government of New France in 1747, but, being a prisoner in England, did not arrive in Canada until 1749. Though an able governor, his avarice in the peltry trade involved him in a succession of disputes with the colonists.

QUESTIONS.—On what did the two nations base their claims to the disputed territory? What forts were erected or strengthened. What of la Présentation and Onondaga lake? Sketch Picquet and de la Jonquière.

Iroquois  
a pris  
virtue  
their  
having  
banne  
Seneca  
countr  
in Eur  
colonis  
which

39.

While  
years  
to the  
claims  
selves  
and by  
dispute  
previou  
of Pen  
territor  
were n  
sent to  
a new  
govern  
his As  
the Fr  
three  
Allegh  
traders  
a war  
mately

QUEST  
Niagara  
sove

Iroquois custom. When a youth, the Senecas had made him a prisoner, and afterwards adopted him into their tribe. By virtue of this adoption, he claimed the right to erect within their territory "a cabanne for his retirement." This right having been conceded, he chose Niagara, and erected a "cabanne" there, which he fortified—ignoring, in his status as a Seneca brave, the jurisdiction of the English over the Niagara country. In the meantime a joint commission was appointed in Europe to settle the boundaries of New France, and the colonists were requested to remain neutral in any disputes which might arise until this question was settled.

39. *Commencement of the Seven Years' War—Washington.*—

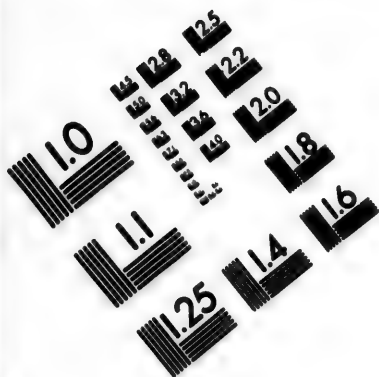
While the boundary commissioners in Europe were for five years examining old maps and records, and languidly listening to the arguments of contending parties for and against the claims for the disputed territory, the rival colonists were themselves actually settling the question by the strong hand of force, and by unceasing encroachments on each another. In these disputes exception was taken by the French Governor, as previously intimated, to the passes granted by the authorities of Pennsylvania and Maryland to fur-traders in the disputed territory of the Ohio valley. In 1752, three British traders were made prisoners there by de la Jonquière's authority and sent to Presqu'isle (Erie), on Lake Erie, where the French had a new fort. Appeal was at once made to Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia, for protection. Dinwiddie, by advice of his Assembly, sent George Washington to remonstrate with the French commandant, but without effect. In retaliation, three French traders were seized and sent south of the Alleghany mountains. These acts of personal hostility to the traders of either nation by the colonial authorities precipitated a war which had long been threatened, and which was ultimately destined to be a decisive one.

---

QUESTIONS.—By what means did de la Jonquière erect the fort at Niagara? Mention the first hostile acts in the Ohio valley, which led to the seven years' war. How were they met by the governor of Virginia?







EE 23  
EE 22  
EE 20  
EE 18

11  
10  
EE  
EE  
EE

40. *The First Memorable Blow Struck.*—De la Jonquière, who was about to retire, died at Quebec in 1752, and was succeeded, *ad interim*, by the Baron de Longueuil. Marquis du Quesne\* [due-kehn], the new governor, immediately reorganized the militia; but he was opposed by M. Bigot,† the royal intendant, who intrigued against him. Meanwhile, the French troops were sent forward to the Ohio. Their arrival was anticipated by Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia,‡ who dispatched some militia to erect a fort at the junction of the Ohio and Mo-non-ga-he-la rivers. They had, however, scarcely traced the outline of the fort when the French, under M. de Contrecoeur [kon-tre-keur], suddenly attacked and dispersed them. He at once proceeded to complete the fort which the English had just begun, and named it du Quesne, after the French governor. Washington, who had charge of a detachment of the Virginia militia, halted at a place called Great Meadows, and, guided by the Indians, suddenly attacked a portion of French troops which



Fort du Quesne.

\* Marquis du Quesne de Menneville held office for only three years; but during that time he effected many military reforms in the colony. Not relying on the prospect of the coming colonial contests, he sought active duty in the French marine service.

† François Bigot was a native of the province of Guienne, in France. He formerly held the appointment of intendant of Louisiana, before being removed to fill that office for the last time in Canada. He was remarkable for the rapacity, malversation, and fraud which characterized his whole official career in Canada, as well as for the gambling, riot, and luxury of his private life. On his return to France he was sent to the Bastille, and afterwards exiled to Bourdeaux. His property (and that of his abettors in robbery and crime in Canada) was confiscated.

‡ Robert Dinwiddie was born in Scotland in 1690. For his zeal in discovering a fraud while in the office of a collector of customs in the West Indies, he was appointed governor of Virginia, which office he held from 1752 to 1758. He died in 1770, aged 80 years.

QUESTIONS.—What changes took place? How did the belligerents act? What is said of the Marquis du Quesne, Intendant Bigot, and Governor Dinwiddie? Where did the first contest take place? How did it end?

were near him, under de Jumonville, and defeated them. In the meantime the remainder of the Virginia militia came up, but Colonel Fry, their leader, having in the meantime died suddenly, the command of the united forces devolved upon the afterwards famous George Washington,\* who was the next senior officer.

41. *Defeat of Washington's Force by the French.*—Washington's first act, after this skirmish, was the erection of a Fort at Great Meadows, on the Monongahela River, which he appropriately named Fort Necessity. Here he was attacked, and, after ten hours' fighting, was obliged to capitulate. Thus, on the 4th of July, ended in defeat Washington's first military campaign.

42. *Project for a Federal Union of the Colonies, 1753-4.*—It having been deemed advisable that the several British colonies in America should act in concert against the French, the lords of trade suggested to them to form a conciliatory league with the Indians, which in its structure should be somewhat like the Iroquois confederacy. The indefatigable governor, Shirley of Massachusetts, conceived the bolder project of an alliance among the colonies themselves for the purposes of mutual defence. This proposed alliance did not then take place; but it subsequently developed itself into the memorable union of the colonies against British authority itself, and was afterwards known as the Federation of the United States of America.

\* George Washington was born in Virginia, in 1732. When but sixteen years of age, he was employed in surveying land which had been assigned to Lord Fairfax, a connexion of his. He was a surveyor for many years, and thus gained a knowledge of the topography of the country, which he afterwards turned to military account. Before he was twenty, he was appointed adjutant-general of the militia in a Virginian district, and afterwards rose to a higher rank as a British officer in the seven years' war with the French. His after-career as a successful general in the service of the American insurgents during the revolutionary war of 1775-83, is well known. He died in 1799, aged 67 years.

QUESTIONS.—Who became leader of the militia? What is said of Washington, and of the failure of his first military effort? Sketch his career. Mention the project of a federal union of the thirteen colonies in 1753-4.



43. *General Braddock's Career.*—In this crisis England liberally aided her colonies with men and money. She also sent out General Braddock\* to prosecute the campaign. Active measures were at once taken to capture the entire line of French forts from the Ohio river to the St. Lawrence; while equally energetic efforts were made by the French to resist this combined attack. In the meantime, Governor du Quesne was succeeded by the Marquis de Vaudreuil-Cavagnal [vo-dray-ye-cav-à-nal],—who was destined to be the last Governor of New France. Braddock arrived in Virginia in February, 1755, and, in April, assembled the Provincial Governors at Alexandria† to plan the campaign. At this conference, four expeditions were planned. The first under General Lawrence was designed to reduce Nova Scotia; the second under Braddock to recover the Ohio valley; the third under Governor Shirley to capture Fort Niagara; and the fourth under Johnson to take Fort St. Frederic (Crown Point). Braddock set out in June with 1,200 men, and a reserve of 1,000 more, to take Fort du Quesne, in Ohio. He was accompanied by Washington, as colonel of his staff. It was a month before he reached the Ohio. When



General Braddock.

\* Gen. Edward Braddock was an Irish officer of distinction. He was too regardless of the advice of the provincial officers in his ill-fated expedition, and lost his life by the hand of one of the militiamen, whose brother he had struck down with his sword for fighting behind a tree, like an Indian or backwoodsman, which Braddock regarded as cowardly.

† Alexandria (since famous in the civil war between the Northern and Southern States), is nearly opposite Washington, on the Potomac. The Governors present at his conference were: Shirley, of *Massachusetts*; Dinwiddie, of *Virginia*; Delancey, of *New York*; Sharpe, of *Maryland*; and Morris, of *Pennsylvania*. Admiral Keppel, commander of the British fleet, was also present at the conference.

QUESTIONS.—Who was sent out from England? What did the French and English do? Who succeeded Du Quesne? Give a sketch of Braddock. What is said of Alexandria? Give an account of the battle in Ohio.

within a few miles of the fort, he was attacked by M. de Beaujeu, the commandant, with 250 Canadians and 600 Indians in ambuscade. A panic ensued, and Braddock was defeated with a loss of 800 out of his 1,200 troops, and all his artillery and stores. His officers behaved nobly. He himself had five horses shot under him, when he received a mortal wound, and died in a few days. This victory ended that campaign, and assured to the French the possession of the valley of the Ohio for the time. This loss of prestige to the British troops had a disastrous effect upon the Indians, who joined the French, and inflicted great misery upon the English settlements. General Shirley felt it necessary, under the circumstances, to abandon his projected attack on Niagara. The other expeditions were, however, prosecuted with vigour.



Forts on Lakes George and Champlain.

44. *General Dieskau's Career.*—In the meantime, General Baron Dieskau\* [dee-esk-o] had arrived in Canada with a large French force. Hoping to rival the success which had attended the French arms in Ohio, he lost no time in marching from fort St. Frederic (Crown Point) to attack the advancing columns of the British provincial militia, which had been collected under Gen. Johnson, in the vicinity of Lake George. Leaving half of his force at Carillon (Ticonderoga), (where a very strong new French Fort had been erected this year), Dieskau came up with a detachment of Gen. Johnson's men under Col. Williams. Forming

\*John Harmand, Baron Dieskau, a lieutenant-general and commander of the French forces sent against Fort Edward. He was found severely

QUESTIONS.—How did the battle end? How many troops were engaged in the battle? Who was sent out from France? What did he do, and what is said of him? Mention the names of the forts on the map.

an ambuscade, he attacked and scattered the British force, —killing its leader, Col. Williams. He then pushed on to attack Johnson's chief post at Fort Edward (Hudson River), which had just been constructed by Gen. Lyman. In this he entirely failed,—Johnson being too well posted at Fort William Henry (at the head of Lake George), and his own force being too small. Dieskau, in attacking William Henry, was wounded and taken prisoner, and his men forced to retreat. For Colonel Johnson's prowess in this battle, he was knighted by the king.

45. *Cause of the Double Defeat of Braddock and Dieskau.*—By a singular coincidence the two brave generals, (Braddock and Dieskau, who had been specially sent out from Europe to conduct the opposing campaign in America,) failed at the outset of their career. Both failed from a similar cause. They were over-confident in regard to the effect of the discipline of their troops, and vain-glorious of their own European military skill. They looked with indifference, if not with contempt, on the colonial troops, and scorned to be guided by the superior knowledge of the colonial officers, whose experience in desultory forest warfare would have been of the utmost service to them, had they had the good sense to avail themselves of it. As a natural result, defeat and disaster befel them both, together with a loss of prestige to European generalship, when tested in the tangled woods, morasses and swamps of America.\*

wounded by the British soldiers, but was kindly treated by them and sent to New York, and thence to France, where he died in 1767. In token of the warm friendship which had sprung between him and Sir William Johnson, Dieskau sent him, before leaving New York, a handsome sword.

\* The sad fate of these two noted Generals, and of the brave men under their command, was but too frequently repeated, with more or less disaster, throughout the American Revolutionary War. This was owing to the obstinacy of many of the newly arrived royalist officers, who scorned to adopt the more practical strategy and knowledge of Indian forest warfare which was so familiar to their loyalist companions in arms.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the battle at Fort William Henry. How was Col. Johnson rewarded by the king? What led to the defeat of Braddock and Dieskau? What is said of their military mistakes in the note?

succ  
to no  
the d  
to de  
Point  
ened  
Valle  
march  
Fort S  
with a  
and l  
Capt.  
garris  
sion h  
been r  
Scotia  
posts  
colonis

\* Sir V  
in 1738  
He was  
Nation  
friend  
beloved  
of Gene  
on the d  
was mad  
The chu  
been bu  
† Hon  
in the B  
the seco  
Londou  
Scotia a  
nique, th

QUEST  
of Colon  
of Capt.

46. *Results of the First Campaign, 1755.*—Sir Wm. Johnson's success at the battle of Lake George led to no practical results; for in reply to the demand of the British government to demolish Fort St. Frederic (Crown Point), the French still further strengthened their position in the Champlain Valley. Sir William\* was unable to march against the French stronghold at Fort St. Frederic but contented himself with strengthening Fort William Henry and Fort Edward. He entrusted to



Sir William Johnson.

Capt. Rodgers, a famous ranger, the duty of harassing the garrison at Fort St. Frederic, and having resigned his commission he returned home. Forts Frontenac and Niagara having been reinforced, the British hesitated to attack them. In Nova Scotia, however, Colonel Monckton's attack upon the French posts was completely successful.† Meanwhile the English colonists of New Hampshire suffered great hardships from the

\* Sir William Johnson was born in Ireland in 1715, and came to America in 1738 to manage the lands of his uncle (Sir P. Warren) on the Mohawk. He was agent of the British Government in its transactions with the Six Nation Indians, during the whole of the Seven Years' war. He was the friend of Brant, and acquired great influence over, and was greatly beloved by the Iroquois, who made him one of their chiefs. For his defeat of General Dieskau, at Lake George, in 1755, he was knighted. In 1759, on the death of General Prideaux [preo-do], he took Fort Niagara, and was made a baronet. He died in the Mohawk valley, in 1774, aged 60 years. The church which was built by him, and in which he was buried, having been burned in 1836, his remains were reinterred by Bishop Potter in 1862.

† Hon. Robert Monckton, who afterwards became a Lieutenant-General in the British Army, and Governor of New York and of Nova Scotia, was the second son of the first Vicount Galway. He served under Lord Loudoun and General Wolfe, and took part in the reduction of Nova Scotia and of Canada. In 1764 he was sent to take the Island of Martinique, the capture of which he successfully accomplished. He died in 1782.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the results of the first campaign. What is said of Colonel Monckton? Give a sketch of Sir Wm. Johnson. What is said of Capt. Rodgers. Mention the privations endured by the colonists?



Fort Edward.

inroads of the St. Francis Indians through Lake Memphremagog; while later in the year the French colonists had, in their own country, to endure all the privations of a famine, owing to a scant crop. In December, Gen. Shirley, the commander-in-chief, summoned the governors of the English colonies to a council of war at New York. The scheme which he laid before them was concurred in, and sent to England for approval. But the French king, Louis XV, not to be forestalled, determined to despatch M. Montcalm [mont-kalm], one of his ablest generals, to Canada early in 1756.\* Montcalm was accompanied by General de Lévis, M. de Bourgainville, and 14,000 men, provisions, war materials, and money. George II was equally prompt. With Gen. Abercromby and a large reinforcement, he sent out the Earl of Loudoun as governor of Virginia and generalissimo.† The House of Commons also voted £115,000 sterling to raise and equip the colonial militia. With a view to conciliate the Iroquois and secure their co-op-

\* Louis Joseph de Montcalm (Marquis of St. Veran), a distinguished French general, was born at Condiac, in France, in 1712. He distinguished himself at the battle of Placenza; and, in 1756, was made a Field Marshal. Having succeeded General Dieskau in Canada, he took Oswego from the English in that year, and Fort William Henry (Lake George), in 1757; but was defeated by General Wolfe, on the Plains of Abraham, 13th September, 1759. In the battle he received a mortal wound, and died on the morning of the 14th, greatly regretted, aged 47.

† John Campbell, Earl of Loudoun, was born in 1705. He raised a Highland regiment to oppose the Pretender in 1745; but retired to Skye without striking a blow. He seems to have had very little either of military skill or courage. In 1756 he was sent to America as commander-in-chief, but having failed to accomplish anything satisfactorily, was recalled in 1758. He died in 1782, aged 77 years.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the inroads of the St. Francis Indians? Mention the steps taken by Gen. Shirley. Who were sent out from Europe to prosecute the campaign? Sketch Montcalm and the Earl of Loudoun.

ation  
"sold  
Indi  
all bu  
47.  
this t  
Capt  
Georg  
he ste  
and th  
to La  
night,  
(often  
boats  
Ticon  
he can  
ers of  
the fo  
Rodge  
tured  
prison  
at the  
heart  
prived  
directi  
(which  
Ontari

\* Jam  
Scotlan  
was de  
Lord L  
George  
having  
died in

QUEST  
the acts  
formed



ation, Sir William Johnson was, at their request, appointed "sole superintendent of the Six Nations and other northern Indians," and the various provinces were required to transact all business relating to the Indians through him.

47. *Heroism of Capt. Rodgers and Col. Bradstreet.*—About this time a daring feat was performed on Lake Champlain, by Captain Rodgers, the ranger. Leaving the head of Lake George with fifty men in five boats, he stealthily glided down the lake, and then carried the boats overland to Lake Champlain. Rowing by night, and lying concealed by day, (often within hearing of the passing boats of the French,) he passed Forts Ticonderoga and St. Frederic until he came to where the supply schooners of the enemy, on their way to the forts, were lying at anchor. Rodgers suddenly attacked and captured them. Then abandoning his boats and taking his prisoners, he marched them overland to Fort William Henry, at the head of Lake George. By this heroic exploit in the heart of the enemy's country the French garrisons were deprived of a large supply of provisions, stores and money. By direction of Governor Vaudreuil, de Villiers threatened Oswego (which was considered the key to the British position on Lake Ontario), with a view to its being invested by Montcalm. In



General Abercromby.\*

\*James Abercromby, a General in the British Army, was born in Scotland in 1708. He served in Flanders and in Brittany. In 1756-7 he was despatched by William Pitt (Earl of Chatham) as Brigadier under Lord Loudoun to reduce Louisbourg and take Fort William Henry (Lake George). He was appointed to succeed General Lord Loudoun in 1758; but having failed, he was in turn superseded by Sir Jeffrey Amherst. He died in 1781, aged 75 years.

QUESTIONS.—How were the Iroquois conciliated? Give an account of the acts of bravery which Colonel Bradstreet and Captain Rodgers performed? Give a sketch of Col. Bradstreet and of General Abercromby.

the meantime, Col. Bradstreet\* showed great intrepidity in bringing reinforcements and provisions to the Oswego garrison from Schenectady. On his return he was attacked by a large force in ambuscade; but so skilfully did he defend himself that he compelled the enemies to fly in disorder.

48. *Capture of Oswego.*—The reinforcements brought to Oswego, by Col. Bradstreet, were not sufficient; for Montcalm had secretly advanced upon the fort with a large force from Frontenac. After a brief attack, although gallantly resisted, he compelled the besieged to abandon Fort Ontario on the 12th of August and retreat to the Fort Oswego on the opposite side of the river. At this fort Col. Mercer, the commandant, having been killed, the garrison surrendered. So exasperated were the Indian allies of the French at the loss of so many of their warriors, that Montcalm had to shoot down six of them before they would desist from scalping the prisoners. To conciliate the Iroquois, who looked with jealousy upon the British fort in their territory, he destroyed the fort, and returned to Frontenac in triumph, with 1,400 prisoners (which were sent to Montreal), 134 cannon, and a large amount of military stores. The victory was a most important one for the French, and added so much to their prestige among the Iroquois, that at their solicitation, a deputation from each of the cantons (except the Mohawk) went to Montreal to conclude a treaty of peace with de Vaudreuil, the governor. Sir Wm. Johnson set vigorously at work to counteract this fatal influence. By

---

\*John Bradstreet, afterwards Major General in the British Army, was born in 1711. He was a Colonel and Adjutant-General in the Provincial militia, and did essential service in the expedition against Louisbourg in 1745, and in the campaigns of 1756-9. He was appointed Governor of St. Johns, Newfoundland in 1746. He, with great heroism, relieved Oswego, and afterwards gallantly captured Fort Frontenac. He was unsuccessful in his expedition against the Western Indians in 1764. He died at New York in 1774, aged 63 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Did Oswego hold out? What did Montcalm do there? Give a sketch of the siege. How did it end? How had Montcalm to interpose to protect the English prisoners. What effect had this victory?

the aid of his faithful friends, the Mohawks, he was partially successful, and despatched several war parties to harass the enemy. The capture of Oswego had the further effect of preventing any hostile movements on the part of the British commander during the remainder of the year.

49. *Progress of the Second Campaign, 1756.*—In the second campaign the French were first in the field. In March, Gen. de Levis with a force of three hundred men suddenly penetrated by way of la Présentation (Ogdensburgh), to Fort Bull, one of the chain of posts between Schenectady and Oswego, and destroyed the magazine there. These successes of the French, and other causes, cooled the ardour of the Iroquois; and it required the greatest skill on the part of Sir Wm. Johnson to restore harmony and to "brighten the covenant chain" between them and the English.

50. *The Third Campaign, of 1757—Capture of Fort William Henry.*—The success of the French in 1757 was very marked. On the 18th March, they advanced against Fort William Henry, but were gallantly repulsed by Major Eyre, and compelled to retreat down Lake George. In June, Lord Loudoun (having had a conference with the colonial governors) left New York with a large fleet and 6,000 men to take the strong fortress of Louisbourg,—the key to the French possessions on the seaboard. At Halifax he was joined by more ships and men; but, having heard that Louisbourg was largely reinforced, he feared to attack it, and returned to New York with some of his troops, which he sent to Albany. Part of the fleet sailed to Louisbourg on a cruise; but the ships were disabled in a storm, and the commander gave up the enterprise. In July, Lieutenants Marin and Combière made successful attacks upon the English Fort Edward, and upon a fleet of supply boats on Lake George. In the following month, Montcalm himself invested Fort William Henry. Col. Munro, who

---

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the progress of the second campaign, of 1756. What was attempted to be done by Lord Loudoun at Louisbourg? Sketch the third campaign, of 1757. Give an account of the attacks by Marin.

had only a small force, was called upon to surrender; but as he expected reinforcements from Gen. Webb (who was in Fort Edward near him), he refused to do so. Montcalm vigorously pressed the siege, while Webb, who feared to go outside of his fort, left his gallant companion to bear the brunt alone, and even advised him to surrender. This, Munro indignantly refused to do; and it was not until ten of his cannon had burst, and his ammunition had failed, that he lowered his flag. Montcalm permitted Munro's little band to march out with all the honours of war. The Indian allies of the French, however, (having got some rum from the English, contrary to Montcalm's advice,) treacherously fell upon them; and before the French general could interpose, thirty of the English were scalped, and two hundred of them carried off as prisoners to Montreal. The remainder were rescued and sent under escort to Webb. In Vaudreuil ransomed the two hundred from the Indians at Montreal, and sent them to Halifax. The fort itself was destroyed, and Montcalm retired to Fort St. Frederic (Crown Point), and Ticonderoga. Scarcely had this reverse been experienced, than another equally disastrous one fell upon the quiet settlements in the rich German flats on the Hudson, and on those in the Mohawk valley. A large force of French and Indians, under Bellêtre, taking advantage of Montcalm's attack upon Fort William Henry, had suddenly advanced upon these settlements and swept through them with fire and sword.

51. *The Fourth Campaign, of 1758.*—Gen. Lord Loudoun, the commander-in-chief, having failed to act either with judgment or energy, was superseded by General Abercromby; and in other respects, the British Cabinet, under the guidance of the elder Pitt, evinced its determination to prosecute the war with unusual vigour. Circular letters were addressed to each of the colonies in March, offering royal troops and warlike material in abundance, provided they would select officers and

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Gen. Webb? Give an account of the siege and massacre at Fort William Henry. How did Lord Loudoun succeed? Who superseded him? Give a sketch of the fourth campaign, of 1758,

raise such additional men among themselves as might be required. Further, as a mark of favour, provincial colonels were raised to the rank of brigadier generals, and lieutenant colonels to that of colonels. So heartily were these circulars responded to, that in two months twenty thousand colonial troops were sent to Albany, equipped and officered ready to take the field. On the part of the royal forces sent out from England, the campaign in 1758 was signalized by the gallant and memorable capture of Louisbourg, the fortified capital of Cape Breton; but on the part of the colonial forces and the regular troops, under Gen. Abercromby, it proved a disgraceful failure. In July, Abercromby decided to proceed down Lake George and attack Montcalm at Ticonderoga. The youthful



Lord Howe.

and gallant Lord Howe\* was, however, the real soul of the expedition. His untimely death in a slight skirmish after landing, cast such a damper upon the whole army that Abercromby felt paralysed, and withdrew his army to the landing. Nevertheless the provincial rangers under Col. Bradstreet and Capt. Rodgers, pushed forward and gained a good position near the fort. Abercromby now advanced, and sent

Clerk, an engineer officer, with Capt. Stark (afterwards noted as an American General in the Revolution), and a few of his rangers to reconnoitre. Clerk recommended an assault; but Stark advised against it, as the outer defences of logs and branches would only entangle the men, and enable Montcalm to

---

\* So beloved was Lord Howe (brother to the Admiral, who succeeded to his title), that the Legislature of Massachusetts erected a monument to his memory in Westminster Abbey.

---

QUESTIONS.—What course did Pitt pursue towards the colony? Give an account of the proposals made to the colonies. What is said of Colonel Bradstreet, Captain Rodgers and Lord Howe?

repel any assault made upon him. Abercromby refused to take Stark's advice, and ordered the troops to advance. This they did most gallantly, preceded by the provincial rangers as sharpshooters under Rodgers. As Stark had predicted, however, the troops got entangled, and, under a fearful storm of bullets from Montcalm's men, were thrown into confusion. Abercromby at once sounded a retreat, which, had not Bradstreet interposed, would have degenerated into a disgraceful rout. Great was the consternation at this disastrous termination of Abercromby's ill-starred expedition. Colonel Bradstreet and the provincial militia burned to wipe out this disgrace. He renewed his entreaty to Abercromby to be allowed a sufficient force to raze Fort Frontenac to the ground. A council of war was therefore held; and by a small majority the required permission was given. Bradstreet lost no time in joining General Stanwix at the new fort which he was then erecting at the Oneida portage (now Rome), on the Mohawk River. With 2,700 provincials, which General Stanwix had given him, and about fifty Iroquois under Red Head and Capt. J. Butler, he crossed the lake in open boats, and in two days after reaching the fort, compelled the commandant to capitulate. Thus was Col. Bradstreet's heroic enterprise crowned with complete success; and all the stores and shipping of the enemy fell into his hands. Great rejoicings followed this important victory; for it was felt that, with the fall of Fort Frontenac, was destroyed Montcalm's power against the English on the great lakes. The noble Montcalm was chastened, but not discouraged; for, said he:—"We are still resolved to find our graves under the ruins of the colony." On hearing of Abercromby's disaster, Gen. Amherst brought five regiments from Louisbourg, by way of Boston, to reinforce him. He then returned to his army. The remainder of the campaign was chiefly favourable to the British. To Gen. Forbes was entrusted

---

QUESTIONS.—What part did Abercromby, Stark and Rodgers take in the attack of Fort Ticonderoga? How did it end? Give a sketch of Bradstreet's heroic enterprise against Fort Frontenac, and the result



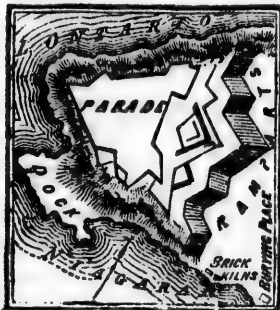
the reduction of Fort du Quesne in the Ohio valley. Contrary to the advice of some provincial officers, Forbes sent forward an advance party under Colonel Bouquet [boo-kay],—part of which fell into an ambuscade, and were completely routed. Forbes himself supposed that the enemy were too strong to be successfully attacked, and had loitered so long on the way, that, had it not been for Colonel Washington, no attack on the fort would have been attempted that season. The garrison, however, was found to be so weak, that on the approach of the Virginians, the French commandant destroyed the fort, and retired in great haste and confusion down the Ohio to the Mississippi. In honour of the British premier, the fort abandoned by the French was repaired and named Fort Pitt (now Pittsburg).

52. *The Final Campaign, of 1759*, did not open till near mid-summer. In consequence of the failure of Gen. Abercromby, he was in turn succeeded by Gen. Sir Jeffrey Amherst as commander-in-chief.\* The French were busy in the early part of the year in strengthening their forts, and in arranging their plans of defence. They received few reinforcements, but they made the very best disposition of those they had. The British plan

\* Sir Jeffrey (subsequently Lord) Amherst, was born in England in 1717. In 1758, he was appointed commander of the expedition against Louisbourg, Cape Breton. He took part with Wolfe in the capture of Quebec, 1759, and was in consequence raised to the rank of Major General, and appointed Governor of Virginia. He compelled the capitulation of Montreal in 1760, and was appointed Governor General of Canada. In 1761, he was made a Lieut.-General and a K.C.B. In 1768, he opposed the Stamp Act, and was in consequence dismissed from the Governorship of Virginia; but in 1770 he was appointed Governor of Guernsey, and in 1776 received a patent as Baron Amherst of Honesdale in England, and in 1787 as Baron Amherst of Montreal. He became General in 1778, and Commander-in-chief in 1782. A grant, in consideration of his services, was made to him from the Jesuits' estates in Lower Canada, but it was not confirmed. He was a man of sound judgment and great energy. He died in 1797, aged 81 years. After his death, a compromise was made with his heirs in lieu of the grant from the Jesuits' estates.

QUESTIONS.—How did the Ohio campaign succeed? What is said of the early part of the final campaign, of 1759. Give a sketch of Lord Amherst. In whose honour was the new name given to Fort du Quesne?

of the campaign was threefold :—(1) General Prideaux was to attack Niagara, (2) General Amherst, Ticonderoga\* and (3) General Wolfe,† Quebec. General Prideaux, having in May been joined by Sir Wm. Johnson with nearly 1,000 Iroquois, left Oswego in July to attack Niagara. After Prideaux had left Oswego, part of a French force, under Lacorne, crossed over from la Galette (now Chimney Island), near Frontenac, and



Fort Niagara.

sought to surprise Colonel Haldimand‡ at Oswego, but they were compelled to retire. When the English reached Niagara, they found it in a weak state of defence. It was, however, nobly defended. During the attack, the British General lost his life. He was succeeded by Sir Wm. Johnson, who defeated a relief party under d'Aubrey, and captured the fort. Thus fell the last strong hold in that chain of French trading

posts which linked Canada with Louisiana. Communication

\* "Cheonderoga," or the "Noisy," was the Indian name of the falls at the outlet of Lake George into Lake Champlain—hence Ticonderoga.

† James Wolfe, an English general, was born at Westerham, Kent, in 1726. He had distinguished himself in the campaigns on the continent of Europe, when, in 1757, he was, at the age of thirty-one years, created a Major-General, and despatched by Pitt to aid in the conquest of New France. In conjunction with Boscawen and Amherst, he took the strongly fortified post of Louisbourg, Cape Breton, in 1758; and in 1759 he was entrusted with an expedition against Canada, as above.

‡ Sir Frederic Haldimand, though a native of Switzerland, rose to be a lieutenant general in the British army. He took part in the American campaigns which led to the cession of Canada to England, and distinguished himself at Ticonderoga, Oswego, Montreal, and elsewhere. He was lieutenant-governor of Canada in 1777, and succeeded Lord Dorchester as Governor-in-chief in 1778. In 1784 he returned to England, and in 1785 was reappointed Governor of Canada; but being very unpopular, he did not come out. He, however, retired to Switzerland where he died in 1791.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Fort Ticonderoga and its name? Give an account of the capture of Niagara. What was attempted at Oswego? Give a sketch of General Wolfe. Give a sketch also of Col. Haldimand

with C  
and re  
Pres-q  
Creek,  
posses  
The K  
53.

Gen. A  
the hea  
he read  
spot to  
the Fr  
to Fort  
Noix. I  
himself  
howeve  
proved  
to adva  
Amher  
the win  
Englan  
St. Fre  
of Fort

54. L  
The In  
acted f  
Englan  
rangers  
a small  
Halting

\* This  
rebuilt i  
Crown P

QUEST  
Mention  
of the ca

with Canada having been thus cut off, the French blew up and retired from their posts, at Venango (in Pennsylvania), Pres-qu'Isle (Erie, on Lake Erie), and LeBœuf (on Oak Orchard Creek, New York). General Stanwix soon afterwards took possession of them. Johnson himself was highly commended. The King made him a baronet for his distinguished bravery.

53. *Amherst's Expedition against Ticonderoga.*—In July, Gen. Amherst left Albany with a large force, and advanced to the head of Lake George. Proceeding cautiously down the lake, he reached Carillon (Ticonderoga), which had proved so fatal a spot to Abercromby. To the surprise of Amherst, Bourlemaque, the French commander, abandoned the fort and retreated, first to Fort St. Frederic,\* which he destroyed, and then to Isle-aux-Noix. Here he remained, without molestation, and strengthened himself within entrenchments which he threw up. Amherst, however, followed him for some distance; but as the weather proved bad, the small fleet under Capt. Loring was alone able to advance. That officer captured two of the enemy's vessels. Amherst himself soon afterwards returned to Crown Point for the winter. He employed his army in cutting a road to New England, rebuilding the fort at Ticonderoga, and enlarging Fort St. Frederic, which he named Crown Point. Near the ruins of Fort William Henry, he erected Fort George.

54. *Rodgers' Expedition against the Indians of St. Francis.*—The Indians of St. Francis, on the St. Lawrence, had long been noted for their stealthy and destructive attacks upon the New England settlements. Major Rodgers, with his provincial rangers, determined at length to destroy their stronghold. With a small force he penetrated to St. Francis from Crown Point. Halting his men near by, he visited the village in disguise,

\* This fort stood on *Point à la Chevalier*. Lord Amherst partially rebuilt it on a much larger scale than that of the old fort, and named it *Crown Point*. (See map on page 95, and also note \* on page 29.)

QUESTIONS.—What other forts fell into the hands of the British? Mention the expedition against the St. Francis Indians. Give an account of the campaign of General Amherst. What is said of Fort St. Frederic?

and the next morning before day-break two hundred of the sleeping Indians were put to death, and their village burned, as an atonement for the six hundred English scalps which the rangers found dangling in the wigwams there. The squaws and children were, however, by Amherst's orders, allowed to escape. The rangers were pursued, and suffered great hardships. Many of them, after this deed of blood, lost their lives while on their way back to the settlements.

55. *The Capture of Quebec—Wolfe and Montcalm.*—Meantime the most memorable contest in the whole war was taking place at Quebec. Wolfe, who was ably supported by Generals Monckton, Townshend, and Murray, left Louisbourg, and reached the Isle of Orleans, with 30,000 men, on the 25th of June. Here he remained to reconnoitre until the 30th, when part of his force under Gen. Monckton was transferred to Point Lévis. Every effort was made speedily to commence the attack; and from this point, on the 13th



Montcalm.

of July, the batteries first opened on the French citadel. Montcalm sought to dislodge Monckton, but failed. Wolfe's own camp was pitched on the left bank of the Montmorency River, while the French camp lay between the St. Charles and Beauport. On the 31st July, Wolfe attacked Montcalm's camp near Beauport with a strong naval and military force, but was defeated and compelled to retire. Detachments were sent out in various directions to destroy the French posts,

---

QUESTIONS.—What was transpiring at Quebec? Who were Wolfe's generals, and how many soldiers had he? When did he arrive at Quebec? How did he open the memorable campaign, and with what success?

city.  
Septem-  
length  
the m  
Cove.  
Wolfe  
abled  
the s  
tinals,  
way  
river.  
Cove,  
was  
ored;  
lently  
night  
ed up  
the s  
that t  
stro

QUE  
8-st fa  
Give t



Wolfe.

but with little effect. At length, on 20th August, Wolfe called together his generals to consult on some new mode of attack. They unanimously opposed the making of another assault on the camp at Beauport, and strongly recommended that Quebec should be attacked from above rather than from below the

city. Wolfe approved of the advice, and, on the 3rd of September, transferred his camp to Point Lévis. Having at length completed all his plans, Wolfe, on the night of the 12th of the month, silently landed his men at a place since called Wolfe's Cove. Having learned the countersign from two deserters, Wolfe was enabled to pass the shore sentinels, on his way up the river. At the Cove, the guard was overpowered; and silently all that night there toiled up that steep ascent 8,000 British troops. At daybreak, the startling news reached the camp of the French General that the heights had been scaled, and that the enemy was in a strong position on the Plains of Abraham! Having arranged



Military Operations at Quebec, 1759.

**QUESTIONS.**—Point out on the map the two hostile camps. After his first failure, what did Wolfe do? How was the new plan carried out? Give the particulars of the memorable ascent to the Plains of Abraham.

his forces, consisting of 4,500 men, he hastily moved forward to the attack. De Vaudreuil, the governor, advised, and even ordered, delay, until a larger force could be collected, and de Bourgainville recalled from Cape Rouge, just above Quebec, (whither he had been sent to watch the movements of a part of the British attacking force); but all in vain. Montcalm was impetuous; and after rapidly crossing the St. Charles, he at once gave orders to advance, without even waiting to rest, or taking time to form in proper order of battle. Wolfe quietly waited the fierce onslaught, and gave his men orders not to fire until the French soldiers were within forty or fifty yards. On the brave Frenchmen came; and as they neared Wolfe's troops, the rattle of musketry, at a given signal, extended, as if by magic, along the whole of his lines. As the French wavered at the deadly discharge, Wolfe gave the order to charge. Although already wounded, he led on the grenadiers. He had scarcely gone more than a few paces before he was again struck, but this time he was mortally wounded.\* Nevertheless, with a wild shout his men still pressed on, while he was silently carried to the rear, near a well. The charge upon the advancing



Wolfe's Ravine.

(Half way up the Heights.)

gone more than a few paces before he was again struck, but this time he was mortally wounded.\* Nevertheless, with a wild shout his men still pressed on, while he was silently carried to the rear, near a well. The charge upon the advancing

\* A sergeant whom Wolfe had reduced to the ranks for his cruelty to a soldier, and who had deserted to the French, is said to have aimed one of the fatal bullets at the hero. Braddock shared a similar fate; see page 94.

**QUESTIONS.**—How did Montcalm act when he received the news? In what way did de Vaudreuil seek to moderate Montcalm's impetuosity? Give the particulars of this memorable battle. How was Wolfe wounded?

line of  
and e  
Montc  
the lo  
heroic  
dying  
they g  
gaspin  
side a  
instan  
noble  
third  
carried  
the ch  
the tro  
the vic  
was al  
enemy  
with a  
memor



QUES  
did Mon  
After M



forward  
and even  
and de  
Quebec,  
part of  
lm was  
s, he at  
rest, or  
quietly  
t to fire



ck, but  
n a wild  
carried  
vancing  
sely to a  
ed one of  
page 94.

ews? In  
etuosity?  
ounded?

line of French troops was decisive, though they were cheered and encouraged to stand firm by the voice and example of Montcalm, who had already been twice wounded. At length, the loud shouts "They run! they run!" fell on the ear of the heroic Wolfe, and roused for a moment to consciousness the dying hero. "Who,—who run?" said he. "The enemy, sir; they give way everywhere," was the eager response. Then gasping a hurried message for Col. Burton, he turned on his side and said, "Now God be praised; I die in peace!" and instantly the brave Wolfe expired. Montcalm himself with noble courage restrained the retreating soldiers; but, struck a third time, he fell from his horse mortally wounded, and was carried into the city. De Vaudreuil, on whom now devolved the chief command of Montcalm's army, rallied a portion of the troops, and successfully resisted for a time the advance of the victorious army into the city, but all in vain; for the battle was already decided in favour of the advancing columns of the enemy.—Thus was this memorable battle fought and won, with a loss of 1,500 French and 700 British; and thus, in the memorable fall of Quebec, fell also, in Canada, (although the



Wolfe's old Monument, Quebec.

after-struggle was protracted for a year,) that imperial power which, for more than one hundred and fifty years, had ruled the colonial destinies of New France. The history of French rule in America is full of heroic achievements—of touching and memorable incident; and its termination, though decisive,

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the particulars of Wolfe's last moments. How did Montcalm bear his reverse? What happened to him during the battle? After Montcalm's death, how was the contest maintained? How many fell?



Wolfe's new Monument, erected in 1849.

on the very spot where "Wolfe died, victorious." Montcalm

was still worthy of that great nation, whose history is parallel to our own in noble deeds and chivalrous renown.

56. *Death of Wolfe and Montcalm.*—The death of Wolfe and Montcalm, within so short a time of each other, created a profound feeling of regret. Wolfe's body was conveyed to England, and buried at Greenwich. A monument was erected to his memory in Westminster Abbey, and another on the Plains of Abraham (which, in 1849, was replaced, by the British troops serving in Canada, by a handsomer one).

● **QUESTIONS.**—What is said of French rule in Canada? How were the deaths of the two heroes regarded? Mention the honours paid to Wolfe's memory in England. What monuments were erected, and where?

Wo  
real  
de V  
Ram  
this  
by th  
this  
garr  
of S  
Cart  
to M  
de L  
After  
gove  
Saur  
58  
of Q

Qu  
monu  
of the



Wolfe and Montcalm's Monument.

died on the morning after the battle, aged 47. He was buried at the Ursuline Convent, Quebec. A noble and chivalrous soldier, he was regretted by friend and foe. A monument to the memory of himself and Wolfe was erected by subscription at Quebec, in 1827,—chiefly through the exertions of the Earl of Dalhousie, then Governor-General of Canada.

57. *Events leading to the Close of the Campaign.*—On the death of Montcalm, General de Lévis, then at Mont-

real, took command of the French army. Before his arrival, de Vaudreuil, the Governor, endeavoured to induce M. de Ramzay, who still held the citadel, to defend Quebec. In this, however, de Ramzay permitted himself to be overruled by the inhabitants. De Lévis on his arrival sought to remedy this mistake; but before he could complete his plans, the garrison had surrendered to General Townshend, on the 18th of September. De Lévis retired with his army to Jacques Cartier river, 27 miles from Quebec, and de Vaudreuil went to Montreal. After reinforcing various posts with his soldiers, de Lévis rejoined the Governor, and awaited aid from France. After the capitulation of Quebec, General Murray, the British governor, strengthened the defences of the city, and Admiral Saunders was sent to England with a thousand prisoners.

58. *Final Efforts to Take and Retake Canada.*—The fall of Quebec greatly stimulated the zeal of the colonists to possess

QUESTIONS.—Mention the particulars of Montcalm's death. What monument was erected to Wolfe and Montcalm? Who took command of the French army in Canada? What did the Marquis de Vaudreuil do?

themselves of Canada. They freely voted men and money for the enterprise; and Pitt further stimulated them by a patriotic appeal, backed by large reinforcements and an abundant supply of arms and ammunition for the provincial volunteers. Although the scanty succours sent from France failed to reach it, Governor de Vaudreuil determined to make a final effort to retake Quebec. He sent General de Lévis, therefore, from Montreal with all his available forces. After great difficulty, Bourlamarque with an advanced guard, gained a footing in the rear of the city in April, 1760. Gen. Murray, anxious to attack the French before they could concentrate their strength, at once marched out to give them battle. About 3,500 men were engaged on each side. After a desperate encounter at Ste. Foye, the British were forced to retire within the city walls, leaving their artillery in the hands of the French. De Lévis having arrived, now commenced the siege, and both parties anxiously waited for reinforcements from home. Those for General Murray having arrived first, de Lévis was compelled to raise the siege and retreat, leaving all his stores and some of his artillery behind him. Leaving a corps of observation near Quebec, want of stores and provisions compelled him to distribute the rest of his army among the remaining French garrisons. He then visited the military posts at Isle-aux-Noix and Montreal and sought to revive their drooping spirits.

59. *Campaign of 1760.*—Amherst's plan of the campaign for 1760, was to attack the outlying French posts of Isle-aux-Noix, Os-we-gat-chie (La Presentation, now Ogdensburgh), and Fort Lewis at La Galette (an inland in the St. Lawrence); then to concentrate all the troops and rangers for a combined attack on Montreal. Murray was to move up from Quebec; Colonel Haviland was to attack Isle-aux-Noix; and Amherst himself was to advance against La Galette and Oswegatchie, on his way down the river. In June, Amherst left Schenectady

**QUESTIONS.**—How did the surrender of Quebec affect the movements of de Lévis? What followed the capitulation? Mention the efforts made by France to regain Canada. What was the result of Murray's encounter?

with 6,000 provincials and 4,000 regulars. In July, he was joined at Oswego by Sir Wm. Johnson and 600 Iroquois, afterwards increased to 1,330. From this place Sir Wm. Johnson sent friendly overtures to the Indians near Montreal, which were accepted. Having sent Col. Haidimand with 1,000 men as an advance guard, Amherst proceeded down the St. Lawrence in August. Oswegatchie was soon taken, but Fort Levis, at La Galette, held out for some days, but at length surrendered. In August, Col. Haviland appeared before Isle-aux-Noix and opened fire upon it. M. de Bourgainville, the French commandant, did not long resist the attack; but, having withdrawn with his main force, the rest of the garrison surrendered to the British forces. Thus the whole of the St. Lawrence and Lake Champlain region passed from the French into the hands of the English.

60. *Close of French Rule in Canada.*—At length the British forces from Quebec, Lake Champlain, and Oswego, converged slowly yet simultaneously upon Montreal; and early in September, Montreal was invested by a force of 17,000 men under Gen. Amherst. Resistance was useless; and, after some discussion, de Vaudreuil proposed to capitulate. To this, Gen. Amherst agreed; and on the 8th of September, 1760, was signed that memorable document, by which the whole of Canada was solemnly transferred from the French to the British crown. Thus, after one hundred and fifty years of heroic struggle, with scant means of defence, against powerful rival colonists and a relentless Indian enemy, the first promoters of European civilization and enterprise in Canada were compelled to give place to a more aggressive race.



Lord Amherst.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of Amherst's proceeding. How did the Lake Champlain country pass out of the hands of the French in the campaign of 1760? Give the particulars of the close of French rule in Canada.

But they did so with honour. Little, however, did those thins who were then the victors over a brave enemy in Canada, that, within twenty years after the French standard had ceased to float at Quebec, their own proud flag would be ignominiously lowered at New York, as well as at every other fort and military post within the thirteen American colonies. And little, too, did they think that soon they would be compelled to maintain at Quebec a military and commercial supremacy, which the vanquished French Colonists had so valiantly done during the preceding one hundred years. As a parting tribute to their unflinching valour and fidelity, the last defenders of Canada, ere returning to France, obtained from their conquerors, and left as a legacy to their countrymen, a guarantee for the free exercise of their religion, and for other privileges which were dear to a people about to be transferred from their own to the protection of a foreign flag.\*

61. *Transference of the French Posts at the West.*—After the capitulation at Montreal was signed, Major Rodgers, with two hundred of his trusty rangers, was directed, according to previous arrangement to that effect, to proceed westward, and to receive the final submission of the outlying French posts at Detroit, St. Joseph, Michilimackinac, Ste. Marie, and des Puans (Green Bay), and to escort their commanders to Quebec. Rodgers proceeded on his mission, and having delivered despatches to General Monckton at Fort Pitt, soon reached Presqu'Isle (Erie, on Lake Erie). There his own party had been joined by some Indians and provincials. Dividing the combined force into two parties, Rodgers and his detachment proceeded to Detroit in boats, while the remainder went by land. After landing one evening, for the night, and before

---

\* The brief military details which are given of the several campaigns in this *Seven Years' War* are taken chiefly from *Précis of Wars in Canada from 1755 to 1814*, by Sir James Carmichael Smyth, Bart. London, 1862.

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the victors' after fate? What privileges were granted to the vanquished? Mention the authority given for the military details. Give particulars of the transference of the western French posts.



reaching Detroit he was confronted by Pontiac,\* an Ottawa chief, who demanded by what right he had advanced through his territory with a hostile band. After mutual explanations, Pontiac suffered him to proceed on his mission; but the chief evidently felt that in the fall of French authority at Quebec fell also that Indian balance of power between the two great nations who were then contending for supremacy on this continent.

62. *The First Massacre at Wyoming.*—Soon after the incorporation of the Delawares with the Iroquois, the valley of the Wyoming was given to them as their hunting grounds. A Connecticut company set up a claim to the valley on the strength of the king's indefinite charter to Plymouth in 1620 (on which that of Connecticut was based), and of an unauthorised grant from some of the Iroquois. The company formed a settlement there in 1761. This greatly irritated the Iroquois, and they determined to destroy it. Jealous too of the Delawares, who had in 1662 taken a prominent part in making a treaty with the English, a party of Iroquois visited the valley, and having treacherously set fire to the house of a noted Delaware chief (who perished in the flames), they charged the outrage upon the inhabitants. In revenge, the Delawares suddenly attacked the settlement, scalped most of the innocent inhabitants and burnt their houses. This was, however, only

\* Pontiac was a celebrated chief of the Ottawa tribe of Indians, who, removing from the valley of the great river of that name, settled near Michilimackinac. An ally of the French, he resisted the efforts of the English to gain possession of the French forts, after the fall of Quebec, in 1759-60. In June, 1763, he matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the extinction of English power, by the simultaneous capture of the extensive chain of forts reaching from Lake Michigan to the Niagara. The plot failed, and Pontiac afterwards professed friendship for the English; but an Indian spy having discovered, in a speech, symptoms of treachery, stabbed him to the heart, and fled. Pontiac's loss was greatly deplored; for he was a man of singular sagacity, daring courage, and statesman-like views. The county of Pontiac, in Lower Canada, is called after this renowned chief.

QUESTIONS.—What occurrence took place in June, 1763? Give a sketch of Pontiac's career. What did Pontiac think of the fall of the French power at Quebec? Give particulars of the first Wyoming massacre.

the prelude to a more terrible destruction of the same beautiful valley some years later by some lawless Indians, under Col. John Butter, the famous ranger, who defied his authority and violated the pledges which he had given.

63. *The Conspiracy of Pontiac.*—Pontiac, who was at the head of the Ottawa confederacy of the Indians (which included the remnants of the Western Hurons, the Pottawatamies, Ojibways and Ottawas), saw in the fall of French power the destruction of the red man's influence in the contests between the rival white traders. As the power of one of the rivals had been annihilated, he was determined that the other should fall also, and that the Indians should again be supreme in their native wilds at the West. He, therefore, matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the extinction of English power on the upper lakes, by the simultaneous capture of the extensive chain of forts reaching from Lake Michigan to the Niagara river. Immediately on the first outburst of the storm, Sir William Johnson summoned a grand council of the Iroquois to meet at the German Flats. All the cantons, except that of the powerful Senecas (whose castles were near Niagara), attended it and gave assurances of their fidelity. Sir William also sent Capt. Claus, his son-in-law, to hold a general council of the Canadian Indians at Sault St. Louis (Lachine). The St. Francis, Oswegatchie, Caughnawagas and other tribes which attended, proved their friendship by sending messengers up the Ottawa to Michilimackinac, and up the St. Lawrence and the lakes to Detroit, to notify their western allies that if they persisted in their hostility to the English, they would be compelled to take up the hatchet against them. In the meantime, nine forts were attacked about the same time, and their garrisons on surrendering, were either massacred or dispersed. The capture of Michilimackinac was entrusted to the Ojibway and Sac, or Sauk, Indians. At this post, on the 4th June, 1763 (King

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of Pontiac's conspiracy. How did the Indians regard the supplanters of the French? Mention the steps which were taken by Sir William Johnson, and with what success?

George's birthday), Minavavana, an Ojibway chief, invited the English to witness an Indian game of ball. Having played up to the gate of the fort, the Indians rushed in, seized and massacred the garrison, except a few who escaped.

64. *Pontiac's Siege of Detroit.*—Detroit, under Major Gladwin, was attacked by Pontiac himself in May; but the scheme failed,—an Ojibway girl having revealed the plot. The siege was nevertheless maintained by the Indians, with more than their usual constancy, for upwards of fifteen months. At length the garrison, which at first had been aided by some friendly French Canadians, and succoured by Lieut. Cuyler and Capt. Dalzell, was finally relieved by Col. Bradstreet.

65. *The Relief of Detroit.*—Lieut. Cuyler had been sent with 76 men from Niagara to the beleaguered garrison in May. Near the mouth of the Detroit river he was suddenly attacked by the Hurons. He escaped; but 40 of his men were captured and put to death. In June, Cuyler again brought 60 men with ample supplies. In July, Gen. Amherst despatched his favourite aid-de-camp, Capt. Dalzell, with 260 men and twenty rangers, under Major Rodgers. Dalzell was a daring man, and on his arrival insisted upon making a night sortie; but Pontiac, who had been apprised of his design, was prepared, and Dalzell fell into an ambuscade at a little stream two miles from the fort (since called Bloody Run). He and his party were routed. Rodgers and his rangers, however, covered their retreat; but not until Dalzell and 70 of his men had fallen victims to their temerity.

66. *Bouquet's Relief of Fort Pitt.*—On hearing that Fort Pitt (now Pittsburg, and formerly Fort du Quesne) was besieged by the Delawares, Hurons and Shawanese, General Amherst despatched Colonel Bouquet from Philadelphia with 500 Highlanders to its relief. His march through the forest was a most memorable one; and on his way he gladdened the hearts of the

---

QUESTIONS.—How was Michilimackinac taken? What led to Pontiac's failure at Detroit? Give particulars of Cuyler, Dalzell and Rodger's efforts to relieve that garrison. What did General Amherst do then?

How did  
the steps  
at success?

beleagured posts at Forts Bedford and Ligonier. As Bouquet advanced, the Indians fled, determined, however, to annihilate him in passing through the defile at Bushy Run (a small stream ten miles from Fort Pitt), where they had laid an ambuscade for him. Bouquet's precautions were, however, equal to the stealthy stratagem of his dusky foes. As his advance guard emerged from the pass, the terrible war-whoop of the savage resounded through the forest. Bouquet's men instantly formed, and nobly resisted the sudden assault of the hidden foe. For seven hours the battle waged, until night fell upon the combatants. At grey dawn the infuriated Indians renewed the attack; but Bouquet, having posted some of his men in ambuscade, feigned a retreat. The Indians, not suspecting his stratagem, rushed forward, only to be attacked with deadly effect on every side. They fled in consternation; and Bouquet's heroic band, gathering up their dead and wounded, marched in triumph to the relief of the besieged garrison.

67. *Effect of Bouquet's Victory—Johnson's Treaty.*—By this victory, the disgrace of Braddock's defeat in the same neighbourhood was wiped out, and the spell of Indian invincibility in their own peculiar mode of forest warfare was broken. Pontiac himself, up at Detroit, felt the force of the blow; and his hosts gradually melted away into the forests or sued for peace. The Senecas remained implacable for a time, and did much harm; but Sir William Johnson had, at length, the satisfaction to obtain a satisfactory treaty at Niagara, in 1764, from the representatives of all the principal tribes which occupied the territory lying between the St. Lawrence and the upper Mississippi. By this treaty the Huron Indians ceded to the king the country lying on both sides of the Detroit strait, from Lake Erie to Lake Ste. Claire, and the Senecas ceded a strip of land, four miles in width on either side of the Niagara river from Lake Ontario to Lake Erie, on condition that it should

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Colonel Bouquet's memorable march from Philadelphia to the relief of Fort Pitt. Where did he obtain a victory? What was the effect of his victory? What treaty followed?

he for  
priva  
the i  
Willi  
influe  
Moha  
come  
land,  
ackno  
Mont  
their  
his in

68.

chast  
with  
entru  
direct  
Bouq  
men  
track  
hunti  
The  
memo  
sveng  
unles  
days,  
their  
with  
So s  
few d  
by th  
sylva  
happ  
Pitt.

Qu  
Sir V  
sketc

be for the king's garrison alone, and that it should never become private property. As a token of their regard, they gave all the islands on the river to Sir William Johnson, but Sir William ceded them to the king. So great was Sir William's influence among them, that the Onondaga Indians,—a Mohawk tribe from Sault St. Louis (Lachine),—had previously come to Sir William to complain of an alleged purchase of their land, under a patent from Louis XIV, which they had never acknowledged, and which Gen. Gage, the English governor of Montreal, had declared to be invalid. Sir William espoused their cause, and sent them home contented with assurances of his interposition on their behalf.

68. *Expedition against the Western Indians.*—In order to chastise the Delawares and the far off tribes who had conspired with Pontiac, two expeditions were sent against them. One was entrusted to Col. Bradstreet, but he mismanaged it and was directed to return to Niagara. The other was entrusted to Col. Bouquet, and nobly did he do his duty. With fifteen hundred men he cautiously treaded his way from Fort Pitt through the trackless wilderness into the very heart of Ohio (then the hunting grounds of the faithless Delawares and Shawanese). The remembrance of Bushey Run was still fresh in their memories; and they hastened to send friendly messages to the revenging conquerer. Bouquet declined to treat with them, unless, as a preliminary condition, they would, within twelve days, deliver up to him every French and English prisoner in their hands—men, women and children—and furnish them with food, clothing and horses to convey them to Fort Pitt. So sternly did Bouquet insist upon these conditions, that in a few days he received no less than two hundred captives, taken by the Indians from English and French settlements in Pennsylvania, Ohio, New York and elsewhere. With these now happy fugitives and fourteen hostages Bouquet set out for Fort Pitt, where he arrived in November, 1764.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the particulars of the Indian treaty. How did Sir William Johnson exert his influence among the Indians? Give a sketch of Col. Bouquet's famous expedition against the western Indians.



69. *The Treaty of Paris, 1763.*—In the meantime, a treaty of peace between England, France, Spain and Portugal, was signed at Paris in February, 1763. By this treaty, France ceded to England the whole of her possessions in North America, with the exception of Louisiana and the small fishing islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon (off the coast of Newfoundland), and received back Martinique and Guadeloupe in the West Indies—England retaining Grenada and the Grenadines—while Spain received back Cuba in exchange for Florida.

70. *The French and English Colonial Systems contrasted.*—Most of the French military officers and troops as well as many of the chief inhabitants returned to France after the capitulation. Their return was encouraged by the English, who were anxious thus quietly to rid themselves of a powerful antagonistic element in the population of their newly acquired possession. They well knew, from the character of the political and social structure of the French and English Colonies, that the process of assimilation between the two races, so long arrayed in hostility to each other, would be very slow.

71. *The System of Government in the French Colony.*—Independently of the dissimilarity in national tastes and habits, the relations of the French colony with the Imperial government were essentially different from those which connected a British colony with the mother country. The French colony was a child of the state. Everything in it of a civil nature was under official patronage or political *surveillance*, while religious matters were subject to vigorous ecclesiastical control. Two principal objects engrossed the attention of the French colonists,—the extension of the peltry traffic, and the conversion of the Indian tribes. As a means of carrying out these two great projects, exploration and discovery formed a chief feature of French colonial life.

72. *System of Government in the English Colony.*—In the Eng

---

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of the treaty of Paris. How did it affect French military officers? How did the English view their departure? Mention the contrast between the French and English colonial systems.



lish colony, the government, on the contrary, was rather a civil and social bond, than an expression of the embodied will of the Imperial authorities. It interfered as little as possible in matters of trade, leaving that to develop itself as fast and as freely as the enterprise of the trader and the circumstances of the colony would admit. Hence, exploration and discovery within the colony formed but a subordinate part of the objects and pursuits of the English colonist. When, therefore, the rival colonists came into contact, it was rather in a struggle for enlarged boundaries for trade, or for influence over the Indian tribes. The momentous struggle, which led to the separation of Canada from France, forever put an end to these struggles between the French and English colonies for dominion over rival Indian tribes, and for the monopoly of the fur-trade. It also brought to a close a protracted contest for commercial and national supremacy, waged for nearly a century and a half between two of the foremost nations of Christendom. That contest, although it was too often utterly selfish in its aims and purposes, nevertheless unconsciously developed in a wonderful degree, even in both colonies, a spirit of enterprise and discovery which has scarcely had a parallel in later times, when steam and electricity have added, as it were, wings to man's locomotive and physical power.

## CHAPTER X.

### The Principal Indian Tribes of British America.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Indian Groups—Their Habits—Area occupied by each Tribe.*

[NOTE.—The Teacher can omit this chapter at his discretion.]

1. *Area occupied by the Indian Tribes of Canada and Hudson Bay.*—Although the Indian tribes which have been scattered over the entire continent were very numerous, they have been all found to belong to eight or ten distinct groups or families.

QUESTIONS.—How did these systems affect the French and English colonists? Mention the principal subjects of chapter ten. How have the Indian tribes of B. N. America been grouped? Name those occupying Canada.

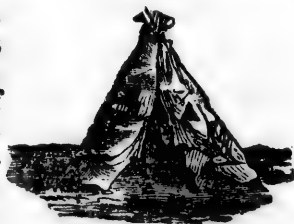
Five of these occupied the present area of Canada and the Hudson Bay territory, viz.: I. The Esquimaux, or Eskimo, of the Arctic regions and Labrador, who, in their *physique*, but still more in their manners, belief, and superstitious customs, resembled the natives of Lapland and Greenland. II. The Kilistinons, or Kiristinons, of the Hudson Bay. The name of these Indians was afterwards transformed to Cristinaux, and finally to Cris (Crees). III. The Chippewayans of the



Indian Warrior.

Rocky Mountains (who should not be confounded with the Chippewas, or Ojibways), including the following tribes: (1) The Dog-ribs (les Plats-côtés de Chiens); (2) The Hares (les Peaux de Lièvres); (3) The Yellow-knives (les Couteaux Jaunes); (4) The Slaves (les Esclaves); (5) The Deer-eaters (les Mangeurs de Caribou); and (6) The Beavers (les Castors). The Indians of Canada were, IV. The Algonquins (originally Algomekins); and, V. The Huron-Iroquois (which see, p. 106). Each of these five groups or families spoke a distinct language, having no affinity to the other. The five groups were subdivided into various tribes, each speaking a separate dialect of their original tribal tongue, yet among all the tribes a remarkable similarity in customs and institutions prevailed. In colour, form, temperament, religious belief, and pursuits, all were alike. The men engaged in war, hunting, and fishing; while the women performed all other kinds of labour.

2. *Domestic Habits.*—The wigwams of the Indians were of the simplest construction; being poles covered with matting made from the bark of trees. Their implements were made of bones, shells, and stones. Meat they roasted on the points of sticks, or boiled in stone or earthen vessels. They dressed themselves in skins,



Indian Wigwam.

**QUESTIONS.**—Give the subdivisions of the Chippewayan group. What other Indian groups or families are there? Mention the peculiarities of the five groups. Give an account of the domestic habits of the Indians.

with or without the fur. Some Indian tribes derived their names from the mode of wearing these skins. Thus the Rocky Mountain Indians were called Chippewayan, from the manner in which they wore the skins gathered round their necks. The chief ornaments of the Indians were feathers, porcupine quills, bones, or shells; and afterwards, when the Europeans came among them, glass beads and trinkets. They tattooed, as well as painted, their faces and bodies.

3. *Hieroglyphics*.—Indian treaties were generally hieroglyphical, as were also all their recorded deeds. The accompanying hieroglyphics give an account of a war-like foray. The nine paddles in the canoe indicate nine warriors; the figures represent prisoners, with a tomahawk, bow, arrow, war-club, &c. One prisoner is beheaded; another, with the shading below, is a woman. The fire and animals indicate a council held by chiefs of the bear and turtle tribes.



Hieroglyphical Record of a War Party.

3. *The Totem*, or outline of some animal, from *do-daim*, a family mark, was always the chief's signature to a treaty. The totem, and not the personal name, was generally inscribed on the tomb. The following were totems of the chief tribes:



Turtle:  
Mohawk Totem.

Tribe or Nation.	Locality.	Totem.
Algonquin (Proper)....	Quebec .....	A green oak, &c.
Nipissing.....	Two Mountains.....	A heron.
Hurons.....	Montreal, Lake Huron.	Cord, rock, &c.
Ojibways.....	Lake Superior.....	Loon and bear.
Ottawas.....	Ottawa River.....	A grey squirrel.
Missisaukas, (River } Indians)..... }	St. Clair, Quinté, To- ronto, &c..... }	A crane.
Metuns.....	Huron and Georgian Peninsula..... }	Wolf and stag.
Abittiks.....	Lake Temiscaming.....	An eagle.
Iroquois (Six Nations)..	United States and Ca- nada..... }	Wolf, bear, deer, &c.

QUESTIONS.—Explain the hieroglyphical picture of a war party given on this page. Explain also the meaning of the word totem. Give the name, locality, and totem of the various tribes mentioned in the table.

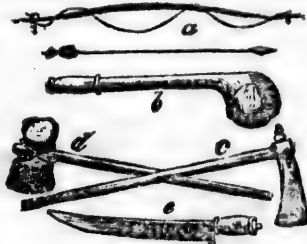


Wampum.

4. *Wampum*.—Indian money consisted of white or purple tubes, made of the inside of the conch or clam shells, either fastened on belts or strung like beads, and called wampum. Each bead had a determined value. Wampum was used either in trade or politics. Wampum belts were the official records of alliance, and, in the hands of a chief, were the ratification of treaties of friendship, &c.

5. *The Calumet*, or peace-pipe, was made of clay or stone, and ornamented; and when smoked by the sachems with an enemy or a stranger, it indicated peace and fidelity.

6. *The Weapons* of war or of the chase consisted of (a) bow and arrow; (b) war-club;

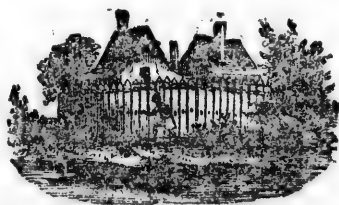


Indian Weapons.



Calumets.

(c) tomahawk; (d) stone hatchet; and (e) scalping-knife; and spear. War was the chief occupation of the Indians, either among themselves, or, in later times, upon the white settlements. Forty braves, or warriors, constituted an ordinary war-party, under a chief; but sometimes six or more ventured out as scouts or marauders, upon the "war-path" alone. For protection, the colonists had to erect timber-palisades about their dwellings, and around which the Indian would stealthily watch for his victim.



Palisaded Enclosure, and Indian.

**QUESTIONS.**—How is wampum used? What is a calumet, and what was its use? Give the names of the Indian weapons of war shown in the engraving. What is said of Indian war, its usages, and dangers?



Sca

8. *The*  
of a good  
Although  
they pre  
Life. Th  
and of th

9. *The*  
quin, sak  
an hered  
to his su  
He could  
In coun  
and to hi  
A chief w  
a war-par

10. *Th*  
of Indian  
its discov  
Huron-Ir  
remained  
Lawrence  
(See Wy  
volution,  
Indians,  
and the  
granted  
No. 16,

11. *Th*  
Iroquois  
Ottawa  
and to h  
the Iro

**QUEST**  
gion of t  
him? Ne



Scaffold Burial.

7. *Burial*.—The dead were usually placed on a high scaffold, either sitting or lying. Sometimes they were wrapped in skins, and laid on poles, or branches of trees, and placed in a pit. Weapons, food, paints, &c., were placed beside them for their use in the “happy hunting grounds beyond the setting sun.”

8. *The Religion* of the Indians consisted chiefly in the belief of a good and an evil spirit. There were no infidels among them. Although they deified the heavenly bodies and the elements, they pre-eminently adored the Great Manitou, or Master of Life. They had dim traditions of the creation, the deluge, and of the great atonement.

9. *The Sachem*, also called *Sagomo*, and *Agohanna* (Algonquin, *sakema*), was the head of a tribe, and was frequently an hereditary monarch, who sometimes owed his elevation to his superior prowess in war, or to his oratorical powers. He could be deposed; but while in power he was supreme. In council, composed of the elders, he presided as umpire, and to his decision all were required to bow with submission. A chief was subordinate to the sachem, and was the leader of a war-party. *Squa* was the Algonquin for woman.

10. *The Principal Tribes of Canada*.—The principal groups of Indians which occupied the area of Canada at the time of its discovery, were the Algomekins, or Algonquins, and the Huron-Iroquois. The Hurons, or Wyandots, on their arrival, remained in the country lying on the north side of the St. Lawrence, while the Iroquois removed to the south side. (See *Wyandots*, No. 14.) After the war of the American Revolution, some of the Iroquois, or five (afterwards six) Nation Indians, who had previously subdued their brethren the Eries and the Hurons, removed to Canada, and settled on lands granted to them by King George III. (See *Huron-Iroquois*, No. 16, page 130.)

11. *The Al-gon-quins*, originally Algomekins, with the Huron-Iroquois, are said to have descended from the north, by the Ottawa (or Utawas) river, at the close of the 15th century, and to have occupied the left bank of the St. Lawrence. By the Iroquois they were called, in derision, Adirondacks (or

**QUESTIONS.**—Give an account of Indian burial. In what did the religion of the Indians consist? Who was the Sachem, and what is said of him? Name the early tribes in Canada. Who were the Algonquins?

bark-eaters). They received the generic name of Algonquins from the French. In Indian they were called *Odis qua gume*,—"People at the end of the water." In arts and other attainments they excelled the Iroquois. They are supposed to have been at the head of a northern confederacy similar to that of the Six Nation Indians. In later times they were allies of the French and Wyandots, in their wars against the No-do-was, or Iroquois. The principal tribes of the Algonquin group settled in British North America, were: (1) The Montagnais du Saguenay (Saguenay Mountaineers); (2) The Têtes de Boule (the Bull-heads of the St. Maurice); (3) The Ottawas; (4) The Ojibways, or Chippewas of Lake Superior and River Winnipeg (Sauteux of the French); (5) The Mashkégons of the River Nelson. The Kilistinons, afterwards the Crees (*les Cris*), of the Hudson Bay west and River Saskatchewan, were said to have been of Algonquin origin. No tribe of this group has been found west of the Rocky Mountains; nor have any tribe of the Chippewayan group been found east of Hudson Bay.

12. *The Otta-was*, or *Ut-a-was*. A tradition of this tribe asserts that they were members of a northern confederacy—(see *Algonquins*, No. 11)—that they migrated and separated; the Algonquins fixing their hunting-grounds near Quebec, the Hurons about Montreal and along the Upper Lakes, and the Ottawas near Michilimackinac and Detroit. They exacted tribute from the tribes passing through their territory. They are chiefly noted for their famous union, under their chief Pontiac, with the Ojibways, Sacs, Senecas, Pottawottamies, and others, for the capture of nine British posts, in 1763. (See "Conspiracy of Pontiac," Chapter IX, No. 63, page 118.) Remnants of the Ottawas are now settled on the Manitoulin Island, in Lake Huron.

13. *The O-jib-way*, or *Od-jib-way* [plural *Odjibwäig*], occupied the shores of Lake Superior, and included the *Mes-sas-sag-nas* (or *Mis-si-sau-gas*), who occupied the area at the mouth of a river called by their name, lying between Point Tessalon and La Cloche, on the north shore of Lake Huron. The Ojibways sheltered the flying Hurons, and defeated their pursuers at Point Iroquois, Lake Superior. The Ojibways and Missisaukas are both called by different writers *Chip-pe-ways*. (The *Chep-pe-way-ans* are a Rocky Mountain race.) Remnants

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal tribes of the Algonquin group. Mention the tradition of the Ottawas. For what were these Indians noted? Where was the territory of the Ojibways? What is said of them?



Algonquins  
a gume,—  
er attained  
ed to have  
to that of  
lies of the  
No-do-was,  
ain group  
ontagnais  
Têtes de  
Ottawas;  
and River  
kégons of  
Crees (les  
ewan, were  
this group  
have any  
of Hudson

this tribe  
federacy—  
separated;  
uebec, the  
s, and the  
ey exacted  
ry. They  
their chief  
wottamies,  
in 1763.  
(page 118.)  
Manitoulin

ig], occu-  
es-sas-sag-  
the mouth  
t Tessalon  
The Ojib-  
r pursuers  
and Missi-  
ys. (The  
Remnants

quin group.  
ese Indians  
da of them?

of the Ojibways are now settled at Alnwick, Rice Lake, New Credit, Sarnia, and Lakes Simcoe and Couchiching. The Chippewa, like the Algonquin of old, is now the common business language of the Indians, and is as necessary among them as French is among Europeans.

14. *The Wyandots*, or Hurons, claim to have been originally at the head of the Iroquois group of tribes. They at first occupied the northern shores of the St. Lawrence (westward from the present site of Montreal), and afterwards the country lying between Matchedash Bay and Lake Simcoe, &c. After their alliance with the Adirondacks, the Iroquois waged a war of extermination against them, and pursued them up the Ottawa to the Manitoulin Islands (in the lake since called Huron), to Michilimackinac, and to the northern shores of Lake Superior. Here the Ojibways sheltered them, and defeated the Iroquois. This occurred in 1648-50. The French missionaries afterwards collected scattered remnants of the tribe, and settled them at the village of Lorette, near Quebec.

15. *The Minor Tribes* of, or bordering on, Canada, were: (1) The Petun (or Tobacco) Indians (Tionnontatechronon or Etionnon-to-tes), and the Cheveux Relevés who occupied the peninsula to the north-west of Owen's Sound and the country near the Saugeen river. Routed by the Iroquois, they fled, in 1650, to Missouri. (2) The Atti-wen-da-rong, or "Nation Neutre," (speaking a Huron dialect,) so called from their original neutrality in the wars between the Iroquois confederacy and the Hurons. This peaceful tribe occupied the southern part of the peninsula lying between Lakes Erie, Huron, and Ontario, and the northern side of the Niagara river. Having at length aided the weakened Hurons, they were attacked and reduced to servitude by the Iroquois, in 1646-50. (3) The Eriehroron, also called Riquehroron, or Eries (the Nation du Chat of the French), are supposed to have been identical with the Ca-taw-bas, who fled before the Iroquois to South Carolina, in 1656-8. They occupied the southern shore of Lake Erie, and have left evidences of their former power in the inscriptions on the rocks of Cunningham Island. Some writers think that the Eries were the neutral nation spoken of, or were at the head of a neutral alliance of tribes occupying the area between Lakes Erie and Ontario. (4) The An-das-tes, were spread over Pennsylvania, New

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Wyandots, or Huron Indians, and of their extermination by the Iroquois in 1648-50. Mention the number and names of the minor tribes of Canada. What is said of each of them?

Jersey, Maryland, and Virginia. As allies of the Hurons, part of them came westerly to Buffalo, and, after sixteen years' war with the Iroquois, were subdued in 1672, and fled down the Alleghany river. (5) The Poutewatami, or Pot-to-wat-to-mies, an Algonquin tribe, originally from the Baie des Puants (Green Bay), Michigan, now reside in Kansas, and a few at Owen Sound. (6) The Nip-is-sings, called As-ki-con-a-neh-ro-ron by the Hurons, and Sorciers by the French, resided near the lake of that name. (7) A few Mun-seys (De-la-warees); and (8) Nan-ti-cokes, branches of the Len-ni Le-na-pes (or original people), (both Algonquin,) are settled in the western part of the Province, near London. (9) The Att-i-kam-i-ques, or Poissons Blancs (White Fish) of the French, in the north of Canada, were destroyed by the pestilence of 1670.

16. *The Huron-Iroquois group or family* included: (1) The Five (afterwards the Six) Nations of celebrated Iroquois Indians; and (2) The Hurons (Wyandots, or Quatogies), as well as the following tribes: (3) The Sioux (Dakotas); (4) The Assineboines (Sioux of the rocks), from *Assini* (Ojibway), rocks or stones, and *buoin*, or *pwan*, a Sioux (or little Iroquois); and (5) The Blackfeet (*les pieds noirs*). Of these five we refer now only to the celebrated Six Nation Indians. The history of these Indians, although chiefly identified with that of the State of New York, is also intimately connected with that of Canada. As a confederacy, they were the faithful allies of the English Crown from the earliest colonial times until the close of the American Revolution. The Six Nations embraced the following cantons, or tribes: (1) The Mohawks; (2) Oneidas; (3) Onondagas; (4) Cayugas; (5) Senecas; and (6) Tuscaroras. At the close of the revolutionary war, the Mohawks, Cayugas, Onondagas, and others removed to Canada, and settled; 1st, at Brantford, on the Grand River (so called after Brant, the celebrated Mohawk chief), where they received a grant from the Crown of six miles on each side of the river from its head to its mouth, now worth \$1,000,000; 2nd, at Tyendinaga (so called after Brant's Indian name), on the Bay of Quinté; and, 3rd, on the River Thames. In 1671, a portion of the Mohawks settled at Sault St. Louis (Lachine), near Montreal.

17. *Origin and Settlement of the Iroquois.*—The origin of the Iroquois is very obscure. Their own tradition is that they originally descended the River Ottawa, and resided, as a

**QUESTIONS.**—Give an account of the Huron-Iroquois group of tribes. Which were the most celebrated tribes of this group? When were they placed in Upper Canada? What is said of their origin and settlement?

small t  
came f  
nay riv  
which  
to the  
bandry  
their i  
pelled  
the sou  
river, a  
various

18.  
tion, a  
league,  
the La  
Hudson  
the ear  
ture of  
nies in  
wards  
United  
formed  
of 200  
Origins  
themsel  
in 1711  
became  
Huron  
ated t  
sevent  
Mohaw  
known  
Nation  
Rnem  
confed  
by the  
Tusca  
term  
"I ha  
which  
from

QUE  
-its o  
Iroquo

small tribe, at Hochelaga (Montreal). Others say that they came from the vicinity of Hudson Bay by way of the Saguenay river, and settled in the country around Three Rivers, which they considered as having been theirs. They were subject to the Algonquins, and from them learned the arts of husbandry and war. Becoming numerous, they sought to secure their independence; but being vanquished, they were compelled to fly. Having ascended the St. Lawrence, and coasted the southern shore of Lake Ontario, they entered the Oswego river, and scattered themselves in separate bands throughout various parts of the State of New York.

18. *Iroquois Confederacy*.—Afterwards, for mutual protection, and at the desire of the Onondagas, they formed a league, under the title of Ho-de-no-sau-nce, or "people of the Long House." This house extended from the River Hudson to the great lakes of Canada. The Mohawks guarded the eastern end, and the Senecas the western. The structure of this league suggested the union of the thirteen colonies in the revolutionary war—an union which was afterwards developed into the political compact of the present United States. The confederacy is supposed to have been formed in 1540. It was successfully maintained for upwards of 200 years; indeed it has never been formally dissolved. Originally it included only five cantons or nations, who named themselves "A-qu-a-nu Schi-o-ni," or "the United People; but, in 1712, the Tuscaroras, a southern tribe, were admitted, and became the sixth nation. The Ne-ca-ri-a-ges, a remnant of the Hurons at Mich-il-i-mack-i-nao (the "Great Turtle," abbreviated to Mack-i-naw), was nominally admitted, in 1723, as a seventh nation. By the Algonquins, or Adirondacks, the Mohawks, or principal tribe of this celebrated league, was known as the Min-goes, or Min-gans; Ma-quas by the Dutch; Nation des Loups, by the French; and Nod-o-was, or "Adder Enemy," by the Ojibways and Hurons. The Iroquois, as a confederacy, were known as the Cinq Nations (Five Nations) by the French; and subsequently, after the admission of the Tuscaroras, as the Six Nations by the English. The French term "Iroquois" is founded on the Indian word "*hiro*," "I have said" (*j'ai dit*), an approbatory exclamation with which they always finished their speeches. Others derive it from "*Yoe hauh!*" another approbatory exclamation.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the celebrated Iroquois confederacy—its origin, objects, history and duration. By what names were the Iroquois Indians known? Give a sketch of the wars of the confederacy.

19. *Wars of the Iroquois.*—In their protracted wars the Iroquois extirpated the Eries; destroyed the power of the Hurons; defeated the Adirondacks and Utawas, and thus placed Canada under their sway. In 1640–1670, they drove the An-das-tes and At-ti-ou-an-di-rons, or “Neutral Nation,” and Petuns, from the Niagara Peninsula and the Lakes; and after their conquest of Canada, established colonies along the northern shores of Lake Ontario. Before 1670, they formed villages in the neighbourhood of what is now Kingston. L’Abbé de Fénélon, elder brother of the distinguished Archbishop of Cambrai, was once a missionary among them. In 1760 they reached their zenith; but after the conquest of Canada, their power began gradually to decline.

### Sketch of the History of Canada.

(Continued from page 123.)

#### CHAPTER XI.

BRITISH RULE, FIRST PERIOD: FROM THE CONQUEST UNTIL THE DIVISION OF THE PROVINCE OF QUEBEC, 1760–1792.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Establishment of English Colonial Government—American Designs upon Canada—Changes in the Constitution.*

1. *British Rule inaugurated.*—It was after the treaty of peace, in 1763, that General Murray was appointed first Governor-General of the new British Province of Quebec, in place of Lord Amherst, who had hitherto acted as governor-in-chief. The boundaries of the new province were contracted by the separation from it of New Brunswick, Labrador, &c. The old district-divisions of Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers were retained. General Murray, with an executive council, governed the Quebec; General Gage, the Montreal; and Col. Burton, the Three Rivers District. Two other districts, the St. Maurice and the St. Francis, were shortly afterwards set apart.

QUESTIONS.—Name the principal subjects of chapter eleven. When did British rule in Canada commence? Who was its first governor? Give the names of its divisions. What system of government was then adopted?

Justice was administered in each district chiefly by military or militia officers, subject to an appeal to the Governor. This system was not popular, and only continued in operation for a short time, until a court of King's Bench and a Court of Common Pleas were instituted. The laws and customs of France were, however, followed in matters affecting land.

2. *State of Canada at this Time.*—The population of Canada at this time was about 80,000, including nearly 8,000 Indians. The country, however, had been exhausted by desolating wars; and agriculture and other peaceful arts languished. The failure of the French Government to pay its Canadian creditors the sums due to them, chiefly through the fraud, rapacity and extravagance of the Intendant Bigot and his accomplices, involved many of these creditors in misery and ruin.

3. *Ameliorations in the System of Government discussed.*—In 1766, Governor Murray was recalled, and Gen. (afterwards Sir Guy) Carleton appointed Governor-General.\* In August of

\* Sir Guy Carleton (Lord Dorchester) was among the most eminent men who have governed Canada. He was born in England in 1725, entered the army and took a prominent part in the siege and capture of Quebec, under Wolfe, in 1759. He was, for his services, promoted to the rank of Brigadier-General, and during the Governor-General (Murray's) absence from Canada in 1767, he administered the government. Being in England in 1770, he aided in the passage of the Quebec Act of 1771. In 1774 he returned as Governor-General, and successfully resisted the attack of the Americans upon Quebec in 1776. In 1778 he returned to England, and was knighted by the King. In 1782 he succeeded Sir Henry Clinton as Commander-in-Chief of the royal forces in America. In 1786 he was created Lord Dorchester for his distinguished services; and from that time until 1796 (with the exception of two years) he remained in Canada as Governor-General. He was thus connected with Canada for the long period of thirty-six years. During that time he acquired great distinction as a colonial governor by his prudence, firmness, and sagacity. His conciliatory manner towards the French Canadians and towards other parties, won for him their love and respect; and when he retired from the government of Canada, it was amid the heartfelt regret of all classes of the people. He died in 1806, aged 83.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the population and state of Canada at this time. Who succeeded Governor Murray? What ameliorations in the system of government were proposed? Give a sketch of Lord Dorchester's career.



that year, Governor Carleton, and Gov. Sir Henry Moore of New York, met at Lake Champlain, each with a surveyor, to fix the boundary line between their respective provinces. The boundary stone set up in that year was replaced by an iron monument at the time of the Ashburton Treaty, in 1842. During the interval, Major Irving was appointed President of the Province *pro tem*. Much dissatisfaction was, however, felt because of the continued administration of justice and civil affairs solely by military men, and many more of the inhabitants left the province. Memorials and complaints on the subject were transmitted to England, and there referred to the law officers of the crown. Nothing was done, however, except to direct the Governor-General to issue a commission to inquire into the truth of these complaints. Sir Guy went to England in 1770 to give testimony on Canadian affairs, and did not return until 1774. In the meantime, M. Cramahé was appointed Governor *ad interim*. The evidence taken before the commission was referred to three crown lawyers, who did not report upon it until 1772-73. Two were in favour of the views entertained by the colonists; while the third was opposed to them.

4. *The Quebec Act of 1774.*—As the result of all these discussions, the British ministry resolved to submit to Parliament a conciliatory measure, which was finally passed, entitled a "Bill for reconstructing the government of the Province of Quebec." This bill provided, among other things, for the "free exercise" of the Roman Catholic religion; for the establishment of a Legislative Council; and for the introduction of the criminal law of England into the province; but it declared "that in all matters of controversy, relative to property and civil rights, resort should be had to the laws of Canada as the rule for the decision of the same." Thus, the enjoyment of the religion, and protection under the civil laws, of French

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the steps which were taken to remove any causes of complaint. What inquiries were set on foot? What was the result of these inquiries? Mention the principal provisions of the Quebec Act of 1774.



Canada were confirmed to the inhabitants by Imperial statute; and a system of local self-government was introduced. The act was distasteful to the British residents, but it gave unmixed satisfaction to the French Canadians; and, at a time when the old English colonies were wavering in their attachment to the British crown, it confirmed them in their allegiance to the king.

5. *Efforts of the Disaffected Colonists to Detach the Canadians from England*—Most of the old English Colonies in America had long possessed liberal royal charters, under which they enjoyed the right of almost unlimited self-government. The long continuance of this right, almost unquestioned by the home Government, had, in many cases, fostered a spirit of ambitious resistance to the legitimate exercise of the power of the Sovereign and of the Imperial Parliament over the Colonies, even when it was employed to modify or counteract the hasty or oppressive acts of the local governments. This spirit of opposition had much to do with, and even gave an undue vehemence to, the resistance of the New England colonists to the ill-advised stamp and customs duties acts which were imposed upon the American Colonies by the Imperial Parliament. This state of feeling ripened into open revolt against the Sovereign a few years afterwards. The stamp act was passed in 1765, but, owing to the violent agitation which it caused, was repealed in 1766. The custom duties act was passed in 1767, but repealed in 1770, except so far as the duty on tea was concerned. In order to raise a revenue, the East India Company was allowed, in 1773, to export tea to Boston. On its arrival there, a party, disguised as Indians (some of whom were interested rivals of the East India Company), boarded the ships, seized the tea and threw it into the harbour. The government therefore shut up the harbour, until the Company should be indemnified for its losses,\* revoked the charter

---

\* "The object of the mother country [in imposing a duty of three pence

---

QUESTIONS.—Was the Quebec Act satisfactory? What is said of the English colonies in America? Give an account of the state of ill feeling in New England at this time, and of its evil effects upon the colony.

of Massachusetts, and sent troops under General Gage to enforce obedience. In 1774, the Assembly of Massachusetts, by circular, requested a meeting in Philadelphia of representatives from all of the Colonies to concert measures of resistance. Each of the thirteen old Colonies, except Georgia, sent delegates. Canada declined to take any part in the revolt; and although one of the three addresses issued by the insurgent Congress was specially addressed to the Canadians,\* they declined to repudiate their formal allegiance to the British crown, especially as that same Congress had denounced the liberality to these very French Canadians of the Quebec Act of 1774, which they regarded as so great a boon.

6. *American Hostile Attacks upon Canada.*—The appeal from the insurgents having failed to secure the co-operating sympathy of the Canadians, Congress dispatched a two-fold expedition in 1775 to secure the British posts in Canada, and to develop the friendly feeling of the inhabitants. One army from Boston under Gen. Arnold † was despatched by way of the Kennebec

per pound on tea imported by the East India Company into America, while it was *twelve pence per pound* in England] was mainly to break up the contraband trade of the Colonial merchants with Holland and her possessions." \* \* \* "Some of the merchants of [Boston] had become rich in the traffic, and a considerable part of the large fortune which Hancock [president of the insurgent Congress] inherited from his uncle, was thus acquired. \* \* \* "It was fit, then, that Hancock, who \* \* \* was respondent in the Admiralty Courts, in suits of the Crown, to recover nearly half a million of dollars, \* \* \* should be the first to affix his name to the [declaration of independence], which, if made good would save him from ruin." \* \* \* —*Sabine's American Loyalists*, Vol. I., (Boston, 1865,) pages 8, 9, 13.

\* The first of these documents was addressed to King George III, the second to the British people, and the third to the Canadian colonists.

† Benedict Arnold after these events returned to his allegiance, and, as a royalist General, fought with great bravery in the subsequent campaigns of Virginia and Connecticut. The brave and noble Major John André, who was employed to carry out the arrangements with Arnold for the surrender of West Point to the British general, was taken, while return-

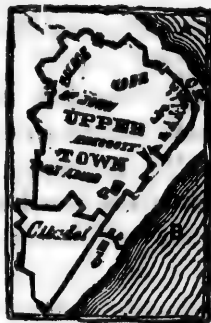
QUESTIONS.—What is said of the famous tea-riot in Boston? What efforts were made by the insurgents to undermine the loyalty of the Canadians? These disloyal overtures having failed, what course was next adopted?

River  
ery\* a  
surpri  
Crow  
war;  
St. Jo  
was t  
Canac  
heart  
(Sir  
symp  
he co  
of the  
and E  
real,  
to th  
even  
he fo  
to s  
pelle  
to or  
7.  
—W  
was  
ing t  
Poin  
Thou  
Eng  
after  
\* C  
and  
Que  
the  
Que  
but  
†  
Q  
slon  
do

River against Quebec. The other, under Generals Montgomery\* and Schuyler, marched against Montreal. On its way it surprised and captured the important forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, with all their munitions of war; and, in succession, it also took the posts at Isle aux Noix, St. Johns, Chambly, and Sorel. A still more flattering address was then issued by Congress and extensively circulated in Canada. Many people of both British and French origin heartily sympathized with its objects. The Governor-General (Sir Guy Carleton) was much embarrassed by such disloyal sympathy; and, although aided by the clergy and seigneurs, he could scarcely collect a sufficient force to stop the progress of the Americans, to whose victorious standard many British and French Canadians had flocked. Montreal, after a slight resistance, surrendered to the invaders. General Carleton had even to fly in disguise to Quebec. Here he found many of the inhabitants disposed to surrender the city. These he compelled to leave it, and proceeded at once to organize the loyal militia for its defence.

#### 7. *The Siege of Quebec by the Americans.*

—With the exception of Quebec, Canada was now virtually in the hands of the



Walls of Quebec.†

ing to New York, and executed as a spy. The Americans thus saved West Point. Arnold, who fled, was branded as a traitor by the revolutionists. Though a brave man, he was unprincipled and rapacious. He went to England after the revolution, but was in New Brunswick in 1786. He afterwards returned to England, where he died in 1801.

\* Gen. Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland in 1737. He served under Wolfe (by whom he was made a lieutenant), at Louisbourg and Quebec; but he afterwards left the service of his sovereign and joined the American revolutionists. From his knowledge of the defences of Quebec, he was sent to take it, and also Montreal. Montreal was captured; but he failed to take Quebec, and lost his life in the attempt.

† Explanation of the Engraving:—A, the St. Charles River; B, the St.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Arnold? of Montgomery? Was the invasion of Canada by the Americans successful? What did Gen. Carleton do in the emergency? Point out the various places in the engraving.

Americans. The capture of this place, therefore, would decide the present fate of the country. Carleton had but 1,600 men, including about 600 militia. Colonel Benedict Arnold, the American commander, had already reached Quebec, and, having made an unsuccessful attack on it, retired to await

General R. Mont-

gomery.

On Gen.

Montgo-

mercy's

arrival,

he invested

the city, but

forebore to

attack it un-

til a favourable op-

portunity presented

itself. This occur-

red on the 31st De-

cember. The as-

sault was however

repulsed. General

Montgomery was killed and

Col. Arnold wounded. The

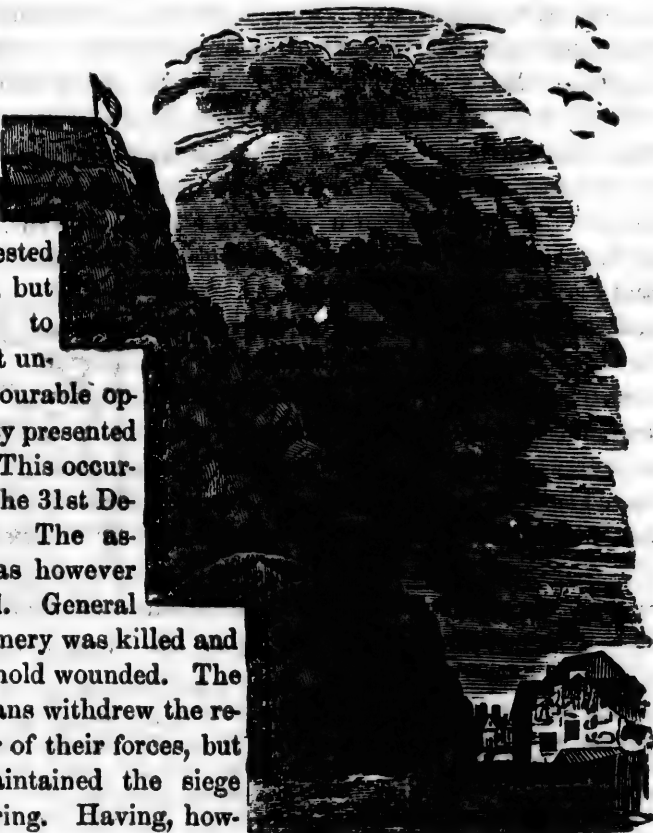
Americans withdrew the re-

mainder of their forces, but

still maintained the siege

until spring. Having, how-

ever, lost many men by



Face of the Citadel, Quebec.

Lawrence; a, the Wolfe and Montcalm Monument; b, the spot where General Montgomery was killed; c, the place where Colonel Arnold was wounded; f, Durham Terrace. The gates are indicated by name.

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of the siege of Quebec by the Americans. Mention the number of men under Sir Guy Carleton? What did Arnold do? Who lost his life? After the siege of Quebec, what did the Americans do?

disease, therefore, vigorous mente artillery. The rem time tha was also to its r despatch under C animate Three Carroll John, a Chase, embasse learned rather Americ out wi Joseph Indian

\* Jose born on Connee English several During of New and Co from t obtain territo mouth after l

Qu the m appea

disease, they were not long able to maintain themselves. They therefore fell back in May, 1776, to Three Rivers, but were vigorously followed by Carleton, who had received reinforcements. He pressed them so closely that he captured their artillery and stores, and changed their retreat into a rout. The remnant of them took refuge at Sorel. About the same time that post, held by the Americans under Major Butterfield, was also obliged to surrender, together with a detachment sent to its relief. In the mean time, Congress was not idle. It despatched further reinforcements to Canada in June, 1776, under Gen. Sullivan, but without effect, and again issued an animated and characteristic address to the Canadian people. Three special commissioners: Benjamin Franklin, Charles Carroll of Carrollton (who was accompanied by his brother John, afterwards Archbishop Carroll of Baltimore), and Samuel Chase, were despatched to treat with the Canadians. Their embassy signally failed; for the inhabitants had by this time learned by experience to regard the Americans as enemies rather than as friends. Strong efforts were also made by the Americans to detach the Iroquois from the British standard, but without effect. Under the able chieftanship of the brave Joseph Brant, or Thayendanege,\* the Iroquois or Six Nation Indians remained fast and loyal allies of king George III.

\* Joseph Brant (Thayendanege), a Mohawk Indian, of pure blood, was born on the banks of the Ohio, in 1742. He received a good education in Connecticut. In the revolutionary war of 1776 he became the ally of the English; and, as a prominent chief among the Iroquois, he influenced several cantons of that celebrated league to join the British standard. During that war, he was chiefly engaged in raids upon the border settlements of New York and Pennsylvania, with John, the son of Sir Wm. Johnson, and Col. Butler. During the revolution, he held a colonel's commission from the King. At the close of the war, he removed to Canada, and obtained from Governor Haldimand, for the Six Nations, the grant of a territory on the Grand River, six miles in width, from its source to its mouth. The town of Brantford, or Brant's ford, on the river, was named after him; as was also the county of Brant, in the same locality, and the

QUESTIONS.—How did General Carleton follow up his success? In the meantime what did the American Congress do? Was the disloyal appeal to the Canadians successful? What is said of the Iroquois?

**8. Determination of the Americans to Retain Canada.—**

In order to dislodge the Americans from Canada, about 8,000 British and German troops, which had been promptly sent out from England to reinforce Gen. Carleton's army, arrived in Canada. The campaign was at once vigorously resumed; and the American invading force was soon driven out of Canada, and even



Thayendanege (Joseph Brant).

from the forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point on Lake Champlain; but owing to Gen. Burgoyne's\* bad generalship in follow-

township of Thayendanege, on the Bay of Quinté, where a number of the Mohawks had settled. He translated the whole of the Gospel of St. Mark into the Mohawk language; and in many ways exerted himself to promote the temporal and spiritual welfare of his people. He was greatly respected and beloved by them and by the English. He visited England in 1788; and died near Wellington Square, Upper Canada, on November 24, 1807, aged 65 years. His remains were removed to the Mohawk village, Grand River, and interred near the church which he had erected there. His son John subsequently led the Mohawks at the victorious battle of Queenston, in October, 1812. Joseph Brant was a noble specimen of a Christian Indian, and did much to alleviate the horrors of Indian warfare during the period of the American revolutionary war.

\* John Burgoyne, a general in the British army, was sent out to America to aid in suppressing the revolt of the thirteen colonies. He was successful at Ticonderoga, but disastrously failed in the rest of his campaign, as

**QUESTIONS.**—How many troops were sent out from England? What did Gen. Carleton do with them? How did the campaign against the invaders end? Give a sketch of the chief Thayendanege, or Joseph Brant.





General Burgoyne.

ing up the enemy, without proper support or guarded lines of retreat, the campaign ended disastrously for the British arms. Burgoyne was compelled to surrender to General Gates at Saratoga, in the State of New York, October, 1777.

9. *Progress of Events in Canada.*—At length quiet having been restored to the province, Carleton sought to effect various reforms. The council resumed its sittings, and passed several useful measures. In 1778, Sir Guy Carleton returned to England, and was replaced by General Haldimand as Lieutenant-Governor. His *régime* was repressive rather than popular. This course he considered to be necessary, as the times were critical; for the Americans, who were generally successful in the revolutionary contest with England, had both sympathizers and emissaries throughout Canada. Gen. Haldimand remained five years, and was then succeeded by Henry Hamilton, Esq., as *locum tenens*, who in turn was followed by Colonel Hope.

10. *The Independence of the United States.*—The surrender of seven thousand British troops, under General Cornwallis,\* to an allied French and American force of twelve thousand men, at Yorktown in the State of Virginia, on the 19th

General Braddock had done before him, and from similar causes. He afterwards became an M.P., and died in 1792. See Note \* on page 96.

\* Charles Marquis Cornwallis was born in 1738. He successfully served under the British Generals Howe and Clinton in the first years of the American revolutionary war. He held a separate command in 1780; and after gaining several victories over the Americans, he was at length besieged by them at Yorktown, and, after a gallant defence, was compelled to capitulate. He was twice afterwards Governor-General of India, and once Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. In India, he defeated Tippoo Saib, and in Ireland suppressed the rebellion of 1798. He was a humane, brave, and honourable man. He died in 1805, aged 67 years.

QUESTIONS.—How did Gen. Burgoyne's campaign end? Why did he fail? Give a sketch of his career and of Gen. Cornwallis. What events occurred during the years 1777 to 1782. What governors succeeded Gen. Carleton?

of October, 1782, virtually decided the war; and in September, 1783, Great Britain, by treaty, recognized the independence of her thirteen revolted colonies. Not less than 25,000 loyalists, who had adhered to the royal cause in these colonies, had their property confiscated, and were forced to quit their homes. They themselves were proscribed, and were compelled to seek protection under the British flag in England, the West Indies, Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick.\* The Iroquois Indians had also to leave their old encampments and hunting grounds, and to accept from the British government a home which was freely given to them in Upper Canada.



General Lord Cornwallis.

11. *Constitutional Changes—Clergy Reserves.*—In 1786, Sir Guy Carleton, then Lord Dorchester, returned as Governor-General. The political discussions, which had for the previous few years been going on with a view to popularize the public administration, and to introduce representative government, were now revived. Petitions for and against the proposed changes were sent to England; and various schemes for the settlement of the question were, under strong influences, submitted to the British ministry. At length, Lord Grenville, the Colonial minister, sent to Lord Dorchester, in 1789, the draft of a new constitution for Canada, which proposed to divide the Province of Quebec into Upper and Lower Canada, and

\* At the peace of 1783, "Massachusetts, Virginia and New York adopted measures of unexcusable severity [towards the Loyalists]. In the latter State such was the violence manifested, that in August, 1783, Sir Guy Carleton wrote to the president of Congress that the Loyalists conceive the *safety* of their *lives* depends on my removing them."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, 1864; vol. I, pp. 89, 90. (Sabine is an American writer.)

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the surrender of Gen. Cornwallis at Yorktown. What is said of the Loyalists and of their persecutions? Give a sketch of the proposed changes in the constitution of Canada.

to give to each section a Legislative Council and House of Assembly, with a local government of its own. Lord Dorchester opposed the division of the province; but, nevertheless, the bill was introduced into the House of Commons by the younger Pitt.\* After much opposition it was finally passed in 1791.† Thus, under the celebrated constitutional act of this year, representative government, in a modified form, was for the first time introduced into the



William Pitt.

two Canadas simultaneously, and gave very great satisfaction. In the same year the famous Clergy Reserve Act was passed in England. This Act set apart one seventh of the unsurveyed lands of the Province "for the support of a Protestant Clergy;" and authorized the governor of either Province to establish rectories and endow them. This act became afterwards a fruitful source of agitation and discontent in Upper Canada.

12. *Arrival of Protestant Missionaries.*—With the exception of two or three Protestant military chaplains, who had come to Canada immediately after the conquest, little was done to supply the growing want of Protestant missionaries among the British settlers, until between the years 1780-1790. During those ten years, clergymen, ministers, and even laymen,

\* William Pitt, the second son of the great Lord Chatham, was born in 1759. He entered Parliament in 1781, and in 1783 was appointed Prime Minister by the King. He was one of the most eminent statesmen of Britain. He died in 1806, aged only 47 years.

† "It was in a debate on this bill, that Fox and Burke severed the ties of friendship which had existed between them for a long period. The scene was one of the most interesting that ever occurred in the House of Commons. Fox, overcome by his emotions, wept aloud."—*Sabine's American Loyalists* (1864), vol. 1, pages 92 and 116.

QUESTIONS.—What part did William Pitt, Fox and Burke take in the discussion on the subject? Give particulars of the Clergy Reserve Act? What is said of the arrival of Protestant ministers?

connected with the Churches of England and Scotland, and with the Methodist, Baptist, Congregational and other churches, arrived and laboured wherever they could gather together a congregation, or even a few hearers. Many of these ministers were United Empire Loyalists; some were officers and soldiers, but all were self-denying, devoted men, who cheerfully submitted to the privations and discomforts incident to a new and thinly settled country. These good men have long since rested "from their labours, and their works do follow them." (See Chapter xx.)

13. *Canada in Her Religious Aspects and Influences.*—It is a striking fact that Canada was one of the few countries which was not originally settled by (or for purposes of,) conquest. The pursuits of her inhabitants were always peaceful, not warlike. She has always acted on the defensive, and never as the aggressor. At one time her trade was in furs, and afterwards, as now, in timber and grain; but amidst all the "chances and changes" of her history, and the trade contests and internal feuds of her people, the religious culture and training of her inhabitants has not been forgotten. The adherents of the Church of Rome, who were her first settlers, were remarkable for their zeal in sending missionaries far away into the wilderness wherever their explorers, or fur traders, ventured. The emblem of France's sovereignty and the sacred symbol of her faith were always planted side by side. No hardship was too great for her missionaries to endure, and no form of martyrdom or of torture was too terrible or inhuman to induce them to slacken in their devotion, or turn them from their purpose. So, on the advent of the United Empire Loyalists, and the early British settlers, they too carried with them their ardent love for the Bible, and for "the God of their fathers." Rivalling the zeal and devotion of the early French missionaries, many of them, even down to our own time, spent their

- 
- QUESTIONS.—What is said of the pioneers of the various churches in Canada? Give a sketch of Canada in her religious aspects and influences. Who were her earliest settlers? What characterised the U. E. Loyalists?

CHAP.

lives i  
lives o  
life an  
settler  
forests  
labour  
From  
Stuart  
ardent  
of the  
1780-  
now re  
numbe

Prin

1. A  
the A  
Britis  
to pre  
Loyal  
sovere  
upon  
tradit  
the d  
apost  
"fear  
unto  
and t

Qu  
the p  
Loyal

lives in unceasing labours and privations, "counting not their lives dear unto them" so that they might carry the word of life and the spirit of consolation to the home of the distant settler, or to the wandering tribes which yet linger in our forests. And God's blessing has rested abundantly upon their labours; for they have increased and multiplied exceedingly. From the three or four Recollet Fathers of 1615,—the apostolic Stuart, "father of the Church in Upper Canada," in 1783,—the ardent soldier Tuffey of the Methodists, and the zealous heralds of the Presbyterian, Baptist and Congregational churches of 1780-90, the number of successors to these devoted men has now reached that of nearly three thousand ministers, and their number is still increasing in all parts of the land.

## CHAPTER XII.

### THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS OF AMERICA.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Principles, Conduct, and Treatment of the U. E. Loyalists.*

1. *Principles of the American Loyalists.*—As the object of the American revolutionists was to destroy the unity of the British Empire, so the object of the American Loyalists was to preserve it. Hence, they took the name of United Empire Loyalists. The adherents to the royal cause felt that loyalty to the sovereign was their first and highest duty—that it was enjoined upon them by all the influences and associations of national tradition, early teaching, and natural instinct, as well as by the divine authority of God himself, whose injunction in the apostolic precept was as imperative upon them no less to "fear God" than to "honour the king," and to "be subject unto the higher powers; for there is no power but of God;"—and they felt that "whosoever, therefore, resisteth the power,

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the labours of the missionaries? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XII. Who were the United Empire Loyalists? By what principles were they guided in the revolution?

resisteth the ordinance of God." Animated by these patriotic and Christian views, they nobly took up arms to maintain them, and never laid them down until they were vanquished.

2. *Conduct and Treatment of the Loyalists.*—The United Empire Loyalists, on the final failure of the royal cause in the thirteen colonies, nobly abandoned their possessions, their homes, and firesides in the United States of America, that they might still enjoy, though as exiles, protection and freedom under the British flag. Their heroic fortitude, under the unparalleled sufferings and privation which they and their families endured, in leaving their comfortable homes for a life in the distant wilderness, has rendered their memory dear to all British Americans; while the unrelenting severity of the acts for their perpetual banishment and the confiscation of their property, which were passed by the several States which they had left, inflicted deep and unmerited wrongs upon young and old alike, and doomed them to years of privation and hardship in a new, unsettled country. The generous amnesty even of Cromwell under the protectorate, and the no less remarkable "act of oblivion" for political offences in the time of Charles II, must ever remain in striking and chivalrous contrast to the heartless refusal of the victorious "thirteen free and independent States of America" to restore the rights, property and privileges of their conquered fellow-colonists at the close of their successful revolution.\*

\* "The state legislatures, generally, continued in a course of hostile action [to the U. E. Loyalists], and treated the conscientious and the pure, and the unprincipled and corrupt, with the same indiscrimination as they had done during the struggle. In some parts of the country, there really appears to have been a *determination* to place these misguided, but then humbled men, *beyond the pale of human sympathy*. In one legislative body, a petition from the banished, praying to be allowed to return to their homes, was *rejected without a division*; and a law was passed which *denied to such as had remained within the State, and to all others who had opposed the revolution, the privilege of voting at elections, or of holding*

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the conduct of the Loyalists, and their treatment by the conquerors. What does Sabine say of the latter? How does this treatment compare with the amnesties of Cromwell and of Charles II?

3. A  
colonis  
British  
ber we  
and th  
their e  
sterlin  
part fo  
free g  
Canad  
and se  
for th  
loyalis  
of the  
he lo  
of the  
the c  
incred  
British  
Canad  
pione  
ple of

office.  
to be a  
it, and  
of their  
of the

\* "N  
than t  
half a  
even o  
die' w  
Col. J  
of the  
half-p  
at the

QUE  
a sket  
for the



patriotic  
maintain  
ished.  
United  
ause in  
s, their  
at they  
freedom  
er the  
d their  
or a life  
dear to  
of the  
tion of  
which  
young  
on and  
innesty  
no less  
in the  
valrous  
hirteen  
rights,  
ists at

hostile  
he pure,  
as they  
re really  
out then  
islative  
turn to  
d which  
who had  
holding

eatment  
oes this  
les II?

3. *Dispersion of the Loyalists.*—Of the 25,000 American colonists, who, at the close of the war, remained true to the British cause, about 10,000 came to Canada, the same number went to Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and other colonies, and the remainder to England. As an acknowledgment of their eminent services and devoted loyalty, about £3,300,000 sterling were distributed among them as a compensation in part for their losses. Each one of them also received, as a free gift from the Crown, from 200 to 5,500 acres of land in Canada or the other colonies, according to their military rank and services. This liberal grant was, however, no equivalent for the comfort and worldly prosperity which many of the loyalists had freely sacrificed at the call of duty, in the service of their king and country. Some of the more prominent of the loyalists were appointed to offices of emolument. Most of them lived to a good old age, respected and honoured by the community.\* Although, in most cases, they suffered incredible hardships in their efforts to reach the maritime British provinces, and to penetrate into the interior of Upper Canada, they proved themselves when there to be invaluable pioneers and colonists. By their early labours, their example of thrift and industry, and their sterling loyalty, they

office. In another State, all who had sought royal protection were declared to be *aliens*, and to be incapable of claiming and holding property within it, and their return was forbidden. Other legislatures refused to repeal such of their [repressive and confiscation] laws as conflicted with the conditions of the treaty of peace."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, 1857, page 86.

\* "Nothing in the history [of the U. E. Loyalists] is more remarkable than their longevity. Several lived to enjoy their half-pay upwards of half a century; and so common were the ages of eighty-five, ninety, and even of ninety-five years, that the saying 'Loyalist half-pay officers never die' was often repeated."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, 1857, page 68. Col. Joseph Ryerson of Charlotteville, County of Norfolk, U. C. (father of the Rev. Dr. Ryerson, Chief Superintendent of Education), drew his half-pay from the close of the revolutionary war until his death in 1854, at the age of *ninety-four years*, having been 72 years a half-pay officer.

QUESTIONS.—Where did the Loyalists go after their banishment? Give a sketch of their after-career in the various colonies. Was anything done for them? What is said of their longevity, and of the case of Col. Ryerson?

have largely contributed to the prosperity and stability of the British American colonies. The race has now passed away; but the early impress which they gave to the institutions of the provinces, and to the character of their descendants, is yet strongly felt among us. Their principles of honour and traditions of loyalty will long remain, it is hoped, to be among those potent historical influences for good which we possess, and which often mould the character and after-life of nations.

### CHAPTER XIII.

#### Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

(Continued from page 145).

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

##### I. LOWER CANADA.

Lower Canada is about 600 miles in length, from east to west, and 300 in breadth, from north to south.

1. *Noted For.*—Lower Canada is noted for the exploring enterprise of its founders; for its commercial importance, fisheries, mineral wealth, beautiful scenery, and noble rivers.

2. *Boundaries.*—Lower Canada is bounded on the north by Labrador, and the Hudson Bay Territory; on the east by Labrador and the Gulf of St. Lawrence; on the south by the Bay of Chaleurs, New Brunswick, and the State of Maine; on the south-east by the States of New Hampshire, Vermont, and New York; and on the south-west by the River Ottawa and Upper Canada. (See the map on page 231.)

3. *Physical Features.*—Though not a mountainous country, the scenery of Lower Canada is more picturesque than that of Upper Canada. Its rivers and mountain-ridges are also on a grander scale. Fogs frequently prevail in the autumn on its

---

**QUESTIONS.**—How should the conduct and character of the U. E. Loyalists influence us? Give the length and breadth of Lower Canada. For what is it noted? Trace its boundaries. Describe its chief physical features?

navigable waters. The lower St. Lawrence is enclosed by two mountain-ranges, viz., the Appalachian, on the south-east, running along the peninsula of Gaspé (there known as the Notre Dame Mountains), and extending to Alabama; and the Laurentian, on the north, running from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Cape Tourment, near Quebec, and thence extending into the interior north-west of Lake Superior.

4. *The Principal Rivers* are the St. Lawrence, Saguenay, St. Maurice, Ottawa and some large tributaries; the Richelieu, St. Francis, Batiscan, Ste. Anne, and Chaudière.

5. *The Inhabitants*.—The first settlers in Lower Canada were chiefly from the central parts of France; but in the Eastern Townships, the inhabitants are principally of British origin, including descendants of the United Empire Loyalists.

## II. UPPER CANADA.

Upper Canada is about 750 miles in length, from south-east to north-west, and from 200 to 300 miles in width.

6. *Noted For*.—Upper Canada is noted for its great lakes; for its agricultural products, fertile soil, and petroleum-springs.

7. *Boundaries*.—Upper Canada, which presents the appearance of a triangular peninsula, is bounded on the north and the east by the Hudson Bay Territory and the river Ottawa; on the south and the south-east by Lake Superior, Georgian Bay, Lakes Ontario and Erie, and the river St. Lawrence; and on the west by the Western Indian Territories, Lakes Superior, Huron, and St. Clair, named by de la Salle (page 69) Ste. Claire, and the rivers St. Clair and Detroit. (See map on page 231.)

8. *Physical Features*.—The surface is gently undulating, rather than mountainous, and is diversified by rivers and lakes. The ridge of high land which enters the province at the Falls of Niagara, extends to Hamilton, and is continued to Owen Sound, thence along the peninsula to Cabot Head, and through

---

QUESTIONS.—Name the principal rivers of Lower Canada. Who first settled Lower Canada? What is the length and breadth of Upper Canada? Of what shape is it? Trace its boundaries. Sketch its physical features.

the Manitoulin Islands, Lake Huron. The Laurentian Hills run westward from the Thousand Islands (in the St. Lawrence near the foot of Lake Ontario), and extend north of Lake Simcoe, forming the coast of Georgian Bay and Lake Huron. The water-sheds of Upper Canada are not in general sharp ridges, but rather level, and often marshy surfaces, on which the streams interlock. A main water-shed separates the waters of the Ottawa from those of the St. Lawrence and its lakes; a minor one divides the streams flowing into Lake Simcoe, Georgian Bay, and Lake Huron, from those flowing into Lakes Erie and Ontario.

9. *The Principal Lakes.*—The magnificent lakes which form the southern and western boundaries of Upper Canada, contain nearly half the fresh water on the globe. Their total length is 1,085 miles, and, exclusive of Lake Michigan, they cover an area of upwards of 70,000 square miles.

Names.	Length in Miles.	Greatest Width in Miles.	Area in Eng. Sq. Miles.	Height in Feet above Sea.	Mean Depth in Feet.
Superior .....	355	160	32,000	601	900
Huron, and Georgian Bay.....	280	190	25,000	578	800
St. Clair.....	20	36	360	571	20
Erie.....	240	80	9,500	566	100
Ontario.....	180	65	6,000	234	500

10. *The Principal Rivers* in Upper Canada are the Ottawa and its tributaries; the Spanish, the French, the Maganétawan, the Muskoka, and the Nottawasaga, falling into Georgian Bay; the Saugeen and the Aux Sables, into Lake Huron, the Sydenham and the Thames, into Lake St. Clair or Ste. Claire; the Grand into Lake Erie, through the County of Haldimand; the Trent and the Moira, into the Bay of Quinté, and the Niagara, into Lake Ontario.

11. *The Boundary Rivers* between Upper Canada and the United States are the St. Clair, (being the contraction of Lake

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the two chief water-sheds in Upper Canada. What is said of the size, height above the sea and depth of the great lakes? Give the names of the principal rivers and boundary-rivers of Upper Canada.

Huron near Sarnia,\*) the Detroit, the Niagara, and the St. Lawrence; and between Upper and Lower Canada, the Ottawa.

12. *The Inhabitants*.—Upper Canada was chiefly settled by the United Empire Loyalists of America, and by emigrants from the British Isles and other parts of Europe.

## CHAPTER XIV.

SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, SECOND PERIOD: FROM THE SEPARATION OF THE PROVINCES UNTIL THE CLOSE OF THE WAR OF 1812, *i. e.* FROM 1792 TO 1814. (Continued from p. 145.)

Principal Subjects of this Chapter,

*Parliamentary Government—Slavery—Political Progress—War of 1812.*

### I. LOWER AND UPPER CANADA.

1. *Parliamentary Government inaugurated*.—In June, 1792, the first parliamentary elections were held in Lower Canada; fifty members were returned. The Legislative Council, appointed by the Crown, consisted of fifteen members. On the 17th of December, the new Legislature was opened by General Alured Clarke, the Lieutenant-Governor, in the absence of Lord Dorchester, who remained in England until 1793. Eight acts were passed by both houses, and the session terminated in May. During the second session five bills were passed. The revenue of Lower Canada this year was only \$25,000. During the third session, of 1795, accounts of the revenue and expenditure, which now reached \$42,000, were first laid before the Legislature. Of the revenue, Upper Canada was only entitled to one-eighth. Lord Dorchester continued in Canada until 1796. During his administration many useful acts were passed, and

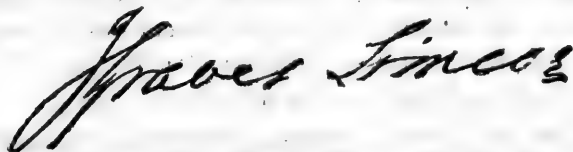
\* Sarnia, where a settlement was formed in 1833, was so named by Sir John Colborne—after Sarnia, the ancient name of the Island of Guernsey of which Sir John was formerly lieutenant-governor.

QUESTIONS.—Who originally settled U. Canada? Of what does Chapter XIV treat? Name the principal subjects of it. When were the first elections held in L. Canada? When and by whom was the Legislature opened?

general prosperity was enjoyed. Nevertheless, symptoms of latent hostility between the French and British races in Lower Canada were now and then apparent; while the remains of sympathy with the American revolutionary agitation of 1776 caused the legislature to pass some stringent precautionary measures so as to ensure public tranquillity.

2. *Settlement of Upper Canada.*—As the western part of Canada was chiefly settled by United Empire Loyalists (to whom the British Government had liberally granted land and subsistence for two years), it was deemed advisable to confer upon these settlers a form of government, similar to that which they had formerly enjoyed. In the east, the seigniorial or feudal tenure of lands had prevailed since 1627; but in the west, that of free and common socage (freehold) was established. In 1788, Lord Dorchester divided what afterwards became Upper Canada into four districts, viz: Lunenburg, Mecklenburg, Nassau, and Hesse. He had strongly opposed the division of the province into Upper and Lower Canada as unwise and impolitic; but his objections were overruled by the Imperial Government, and the "Constitutional Act of 1791" was passed. In 1792, the Upper Canada Legislature changed the names which had been given to the Districts by the Governor General, into Eastern, Midland, Home, and Western. These districts were afterwards divided, and their number increased; but they were abolished in 1849.

3. *The First Upper Canada Parliament* was opened at Newark (Niagara) on the 17th September, 1792, by Lieutenant-Governor, Colonel J. G. Simcoe.\* The House of Assembly



\* Lieutenant-Governor John Graves Simcoe, colonel in the army, was

QUESTIONS.—What was done by it? Describe the state of feeling in L. Canada. Why were stringent measures passed? What is said of the divisions of the Province? By whom was the first U. C. Parliament opened?



consisted of only sixteen members, and the Legislative Council of seven. Eight bills were passed; one of which provided for the introduction of the English Civil Law. Trial by jury was also specially introduced, by statute, in that year. The English Criminal Law (though previously introduced into the entire province of Quebec, by Imperial statute), was also (as it stood in 1792) made the law of the land in Upper Canada, by Provincial statute. In 1792 the Duke of Kent (father to the Queen), who, as Commander-in-Chief of the British Forces in America, resided near Halifax, visited Canada, and was entertained by Governor Simcoe at Newark (Niagara).

4. *Slavery Abolished.*—In 1793, slavery was abolished in Upper Canada; and in 1803, Chief Justice Osgoode decided that it was incompatible with the laws of Lower Canada.

5. *The Seat of Government* in Upper Canada was, in 1796, removed from Newark (Niagara), to York (Toronto), by Governor Simcoe. He was anxious that the capital should be fixed as far as possible from the frontier, and had even proposed London as an eligible site. Lord Dorchester strongly advocated Frontenac (Kingston) as the site of the capital; but the Lieutenant-Governor's opinion in favour of York prevailed.

6. *Eleven Years' Comparative Quiet.*—General Prescott\* succeeded Lord Dorchester as Governor-General in Lower Canada

born in England in 1752. His military career commenced at nineteen; and he commanded the Queen's Rangers (Hussars) during the American revolutionary war. In 1790 he became a member of the British Parliament; and in 1792, he was appointed first Lieut.-Governor of Upper Canada. He induced many of the United Empire Loyalists to settle in Upper Canada, and sought in every way to promote the prosperity of the Province. He constructed Yonge Street as a military road from York (Toronto) on Lake Ontario to the lake at the north which now bears his name. He was appointed Governor of St. Domingo in 1794, and a Lieutenant-General in 1798. He died on his return to England, in 1806, aged 54.

\* Governor Robert Prescott was born in England in 1725. He served in America during the revolutionary war, and afterwards in the West Indies. He was governor of Canada in 1793. He died in 1815, aged 89 years.

QUESTIONS.—Sketch his life. Sketch the proceedings of the Upper Canada Legislature. What is said of the Duke of Kent? When was slavery abolished? What is said about the U. Canada seat of government?

in 1796. After remaining three years, he was followed by Sir R. S. Milnes, as Lieutenant-Governor of Lower Canada. On his retiring, in 1805, Hon. Thomas Dunn, senior Legislative Councillor, acted as administrator until 1807. During these eleven years little of public or historical interest occurred in Canada. The local discussions related chiefly to abuses in land-granting by the government, the application of the forfeited Jesuit estates to the purposes of education, and the establishment of a Royal Institution for the promotion of public education in Lower Canada. Efforts were also made to improve the navigation of the lower St. Lawrence, to regulate the currency, extend the postal communication, ameliorate the prison system, promote shipping and commerce.

7. *War with the United States foreshadowed.*—The relations between England and the United States had been unsatisfactory for some time. This state of things arose out of the persistent claim of the British Government to the *Right of Search* for British naval deserters in American vessels, and also in consequence of orders in Council (prohibiting neutral vessels to trade with France) which England passed in retaliation for Napoleon's famous Milan and Berlin Decrees directed against English trade and commerce. In order to demonstrate the loyal feeling of the French Canadians, Governor Dunn, in 1807, called out and organized the militia of Lower Canada. The call was promptly and cordially responded to; so that any apprehensions as to their loyalty, in case of war with the Americans, were set at rest. Col. (afterwards Sir) Isaac Brock, the commandant, also strengthened the defences of Quebec.\*

\* Major-General Sir Isaac Brock, "the Hero of Upper Canada," was born in the island of Guernsey, in 1769,—the same year in which Napoleon and Wellington were born. He entered the army in 1785. In 1799, he served under Sir R. Abercromby in Holland, and in 1801, under Lord Nelson, at Copenhagen. In 1802, he came to Canada, and served at Montreal, York (Toronto), Niagara and Quebec. In 1803, he crossed from

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Gen. Prescott. Who, during eleven years, were the successors of Lord Dorchester? Sketch the history of those years. What led to the war of 1812? How was Lower Canada tested?

8. *Sir*  
(1807) s  
mained  
At this  
the Hou  
indiscre  
bers in  
ernmen  
from the  
more un  
sembly,  
salaries

9. *Sir*  
was tra  
eral; a  
of Jama  
the feel

Toronto  
cept dese  
of a servi  
the Roya  
he held  
Governor  
on Detrou  
2,500 me  
the Ame

\* Sir J  
manded  
1795, and  
came to  
in 1811.

† Sir G  
of Gene  
himself  
1805, an  
office of  
during

QUEST  
James  
Sir Geo

8. *Sir James Craig's Administration.*—In the same year (1807) Sir James Craig arrived as Governor-General.\* He remained until 1811, when Mr. Dunn again held the office *pro tem*. At this time the question of excluding the Judges from seats in the House of Assembly, was warmly discussed. Sir James indiscreetly interfered with the House and some of its members in this matter, but he was overruled by the Home Government, and at length assented to a bill excluding the Judges from the legislature. In order to bring the Government officials more under the control of the Legislature, the House of Assembly, in 1810, proposed to assume the payment of their salaries, and thus render them amenable to Parliament.

9. *Sir George Prevost's Policy.*—In 1811, Sir Geo. Prevost† was transferred from Nova Scotia to Canada, as Governor General; and in the same year the Duke of Manchester, Governor of Jamaica, visited Canada. Sir George entered heartily into the feelings of the Canadian people, and sought to remove all

Toronto to Niagara in an open boat, thence round by Hamilton to intercept deserters. In 1806, to prevent desertions, he suggested the formation of a service battalion. In 1807, such a battalion was sent out (subsequently the Royal Canadian Rifles were embodied for the same purpose.) In 1811, he held the office of President of Upper Canada during the absence of Governor Gore in England. On the 16th August, 1812, he made an attack on Detroit, and caused the American General, Hull, to surrender with 2,500 men. On the 18th October, while gallantly leading his men to drive the Americans from Queenston Heights, he fell early in the action, aged 43.

\* Sir James Henry Craig served in the army from his youth. He commanded the British troops at the capture of the Cape of Good Hope in 1795, and served at Naples as commander of the English forces in 1805. He came to Canada as Governor-General in 1807, and returned to England in 1811. He died the same year.

† Sir George Prevost was born in New York in 1767—his father (a native of Geneva) being a British General there, at that time. He distinguished himself in the West Indies in 1803. He was Governor of Dominica in 1805, and was created a baronet in that year for his bravery. He held the office of Lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia in 1808, and of Canada during the war of 1812. He died in 1817, aged 50 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Sir Isaac Brock. What is said of Sir James Craig's administration. What visit was made to Canada while Sir George Prevost was governor? Give a sketch of his career.

immediate causes of discontent. In the meantime the relations between England and the United States continued to be most unfriendly. At length a decisive act of hostility occurred in the capture, on the 16th May, 1812, by an American frigate of 44 guns, of a British sloop of 18 guns. In view of the impending hostilities, the Legislature of Lower Canada passed an Act, with great unanimity, empowering the Governor-General to embody the whole militia-force of the country, endorsed his "army bills" to the extent of \$1,000,000, and voted \$60,000 per annum for five years,\* to be expended in maintaining the defence of the Province.

## II. THE WAR OF 1812.

10. *American Declaration of War in 1812.*—In order to excite Congress to a prompt declaration of war against Great Britain, President Madison purchased from a Capt. Henry for \$500,000, a series of confidential letters, which the captain had written (as a political speculation of his own) to Governor Craig's secretary in Canada, on the state of feeling in the New England States against the projected war. In the letters a wish on the part of these States to ally themselves with England was alleged. The President laid these letters before Congress, as evidence of the secret machinations of England against the integrity of the Republic. They produced the desired result; and, under the authority of Congress, war was forthwith declared against England by the President on the 18th June. Sir George Prevost set out at once to examine and strengthen the frontier, and to rally the population in defence of the country. With a view to secure the active co-operation of the Roman Catholic clergy, he agreed to the proposition of Bishop Plessis to restore to that church the right as well as the status which it had enjoyed in Lower Canada prior to the conquest.

\* Coffin's "Chronicle of the War of 1812," Montreal, John Lovell, 1864.

**QUESTIONS.**—How did Lower Canada respond to Sir George Prevost's war policy? By what means was Congress induced to declare war against England? What steps were taken in Canada to meet the emergency?

CHAP.

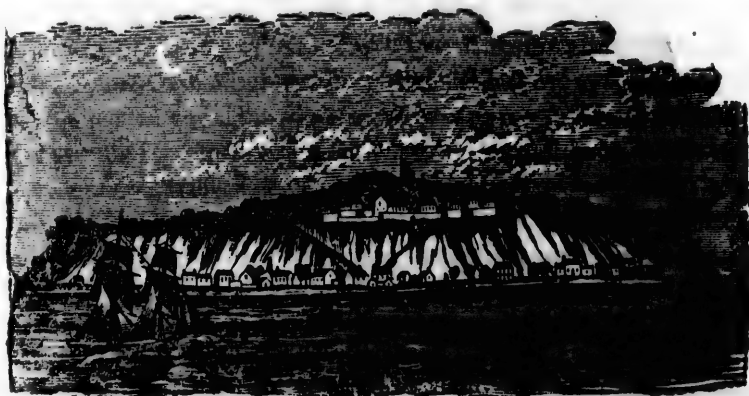
11.  
Canad  
Upper  
for th  
Robert  
of Ger  
Comm  
and, c  
Fort M  
miles



Huro  
cans,  
over t  
herst  
mand  
Mong  
the so  
the A  
Brook  
well

Qu  
about  
were

11. *Opening of the Campaign of 1812.*—At this time Lower Canada contained an estimated population of 200,000, and Upper Canada, 80,000. The campaign opened inauspiciously for the Americans. Besides some minor captures, Captain Roberts (commandant at the Isle St. Joseph), by direction of General Sir Isaac Brock (then Lieutenant-Governor and Commander of the British forces in Upper Canada), surprised, and, on the 17th July, 1812, with great gallantry captured, Fort Michilimackinac, situated on an island of that name, forty miles from St. Joseph, and lying in the strait between Lake



The Island and Fort of Michilimackinac (Mackinac).

Huron and Lake Michigan. Five days previously, the Americans, having collected an invading army at Detroit, had crossed over to Sandwich and advanced against Fort Malden at Amherstburgh. To compel them to retreat, the British commander despatched a small force across the Detroit river to Mongaunga so as to intercept the American supplies from the southwards. This plan succeeded; for on the 7th of August the Americans retreated to Detroit. In the meantime General Brock arrived, and on the 11th August crossed over to Springwell and advanced on Detroit. On the 16th, the American

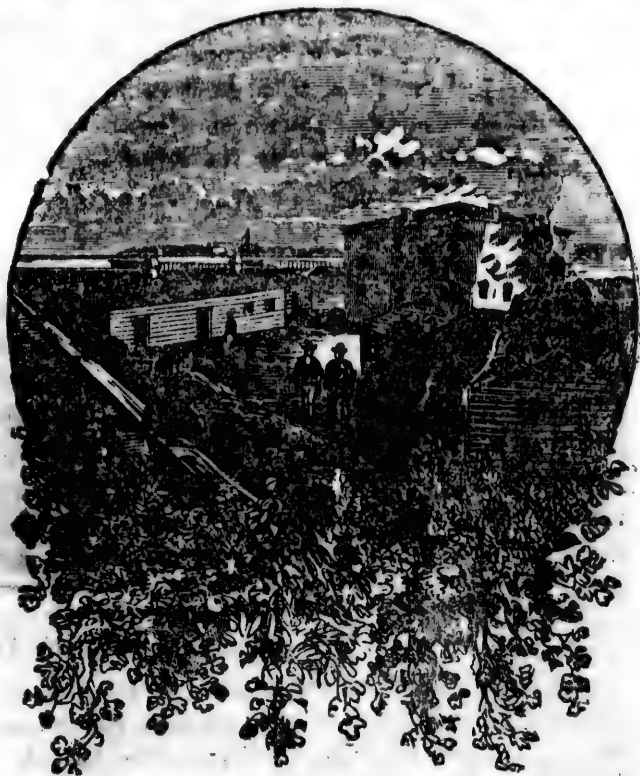
---

QUESTIONS.—Give the estimated population of the two Canadas about the year 1812. How was the campaign opened? By what means were Detroit and Michilimackinac captured? Where are they situated?



general, Hull, capitulated without firing a gun. Thirty-three pieces of cannon and 2,500 men fell into the hands of the British. Leaving a garrison at Detroit, General Brock returned to the fort at Niagara. An armistice in the meantime prevented further hostilities until September.\*

12. *Battle of Queenston.*—Early in October, 1812, another



Interior of Fort Miesasauga, at Niagara.

American invading army, under General Van Ranselaer, having been collected opposite Queenston, on the Niagara frontier,

\* Sir James C. Smyth's *Precis of the Wars in Canada*; London, 1862.

**QUESTIONS.**—Why were hostilities suspended? Give an account of the battle of Queenston Heights. Who were in command of the British and American forces? What did Gen. Brock do? Name the fort shown above.

CHAP.

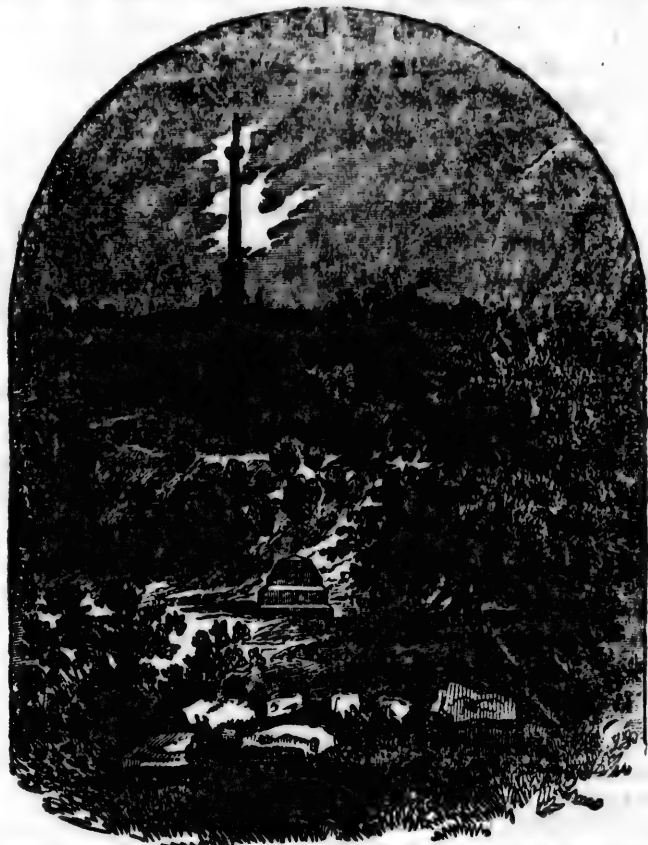
Gener  
On th  
cross  
the n  
morni  
up fr  
alread  
detach

Brock

Que  
What  
gravin



General Brock prepared promptly and effectually to repel it. On the 11th of October, the American troops attempted to cross the Niagara river, but failed for want of boats. On the night of the 12th, however, they succeeded; and on the morning of the 13th, General Brock, who had hastened up from Niagara (not knowing that the Americans had already effected a landing above Queenston), directed the detachment which had been posted on the heights with a bat-



**Brock's Monument; also a Cenotaph marking the Spot on which he Fell.**

**QUESTIONS.**—How and where did the Americans invade Upper Canada? What steps did Gen. Brock take to prevent them? Point out in the engraving the spot on which he fell, and also his monument on the heights.

tery of two guns, to descend and support the force on the bank, which was endeavouring near the village to dispute the landing of the main body of the invaders. The Americans, who had already landed above Queenston, at once took possession of the heights. Perceiving his mistake, General Brock endeavoured to retake the position which he had thus voluntarily lost; and, in ascending the hill to do so, he was unfortunately struck by a shot and killed, just as he had uttered the words, "Push on, brave York Volunteers!" A stone now marks the spot where he fell. His aide-de-camp, Colonel Macdonnell, while leading the volunteers, was also shot down. The command then devolved on Gen. Sheaffe,\* who, coming from Niagara by a circuitous route, gallantly carried the heights, and compelled nearly 1,000 of the invaders to lay down their arms, many of whose comrades during the battle, were driven over the heights into the river. Upper Canada deeply mourned Sir Isaac Brock, and has twice honoured his noble deeds by erecting a monument to his memory.†

13. *Close of the Campaign of 1812.*—In November, the Americans under General Smyth, in attempting to cross the Niagara river above the falls, were driven back with loss. In the same month, Gen. Dearborn pushed forward from Lake Champlain to Lacolle. Col. de Salaberry‡ went with a force to meet him; but Dearborn retired after an encounter with a small picket-force.

\* General Sir Roger H. Sheaffe was born in Boston, Massachusetts, in 1763. He entered the army in 1778, and served in Ireland, Holland, and Canada. For his eminent services at Queenston Heights he was created a Baronet. He died in 1851, aged 88 years.

† The first monument, erected in 1815-6, was blown up by an insurgent during the rebellion troubles of 1837-8. The second was erected in 1853.

‡ Colonel Charles Michel de Salaberry, C.B., was born at Beauport near Quebec in 1778. He first served in the West Indies, and afterwards in Canada. He defeated and drove back the American invading army at Chateaugay in 1813. For his services he was created a military commander of the Bath, and a medal was struck for his victory at Chateaugay.

● **QUESTIONS.**—What mistake did Gen. Brock make? How was it taken advantage of? Who took command on Gen. Brock's death? Sketch his career, and that of Col. de Salaberry. What is said of Brock's monuments?

under  
Indian  
the St  
fort a  
Amer  
more  
severa  
the c  
points  
ican

14.

next  
the  
victor  
the A  
near  
also a  
succe  
(at M  
McDo  
At S  
Chan  
sortie  
their  
husb  
on th

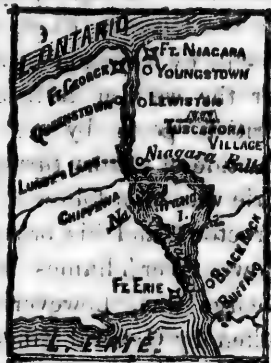
\* Si  
some  
force  
appoi  
in 188

† W  
Mrs.  
heroi

Qu  
place  
of Sir

under Col. McKay. The capture by the Americans of the Indian village of St. Regis (where the boundary-line touches the St. Lawrence), was counterbalanced by the taking of their fort at Salmon River, near St. Regis. At sea, however, the Americans were more successful. With larger ships, carrying more guns and men, they captured several British vessels; but on land, the campaign of 1812 ended at all points in the discomfiture of the American invading armies.

14. *Reverses and Successes of the next Campaign.*—In January, 1813, the campaign was opened by a victory gained by Col. Proctor over the American troops at Brownstown, near Detroit. In May and July he also attacked them, but with doubtful success. In April and May, York (Toronto) and Fort George (at Niagara) were taken by the Americans; but Major McDonell gained important advantages at Ogdensburgh, N. Y. At Stoney Creek, near Hamilton, the American Generals Chandler and Winder were captured in a successful night-sortie, on the 5th June, 1813, by Sir John Harvey,\* and their invading army driven back. Mrs. James Secord† (her husband being wounded) walked twenty miles, to Beaver Dams, on the Niagara frontier, on the 24th June, 1813, to apprise



Niagara Frontier.

\* Sir John Harvey was born in England in 1778, and, having served for some time in the army, was sent out as deputy adjutant-general of the forces in Upper Canada. He served with great distinction there, and was appointed Governor of Prince Edward Island in 1836; of New Brunswick in 1837; of Newfoundland in 1841, and of Nova Scotia in 1846.

† While in Canada, in 1860, His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales gave Mrs. Secord a donation of four hundred dollars, in appreciation of the heroic and patriotic act which is related above.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the campaign of 1812. Point out each place marked on the map. What occurred at Niagara, &c.? Give a sketch of Sir John Harvey. Describe the engravings. What is said of Mrs. Secord?

Lieut. Fitzgibbon, the British officer, of an expedition sent against him. By skilfully arranging his scanty force of two hundred and fifty men, including Indians, Lieut. (afterwards Col.) Fitzgibbon captured, after a slight skirmish, five hundred troops, fifty cavalry, and two field-pieces, under Colonel Boerstler. Lewiston, Buffalo, Forts Schlosser, and Black Rock, on the Niagara river, were also successfully attacked and burnt, by direction of Sir Gordon Drummond,\* in retaliation for the wanton destruction of Newark (Niagara) and other British posts by the retreating American general. But the tide of victory turned; and the American success on Lake Erie was soon followed by the defeat of the British General Proctor† and his brave Indian ally, Tecumseh, at Moravian Town, river Thames. Fort George was, however, retaken by General Vincent, and Fort Niagara (as shown in the engraving), opposite to it, was also wrested from the Americans by Col. Murray during the campaign of 1813.



The American Fort Niagara in 1813.

\* General Sir George Gordon Drummond was born at Quebec, in 1771, while his father held the post there of paymaster-general of the forces in Lower Canada. He served on the staff, and had command of the forces in Lower Canada in 1811; and in 1813 he took command of the forces in Upper Canada, under Sir George Prevost. After a variety of eminent services in Upper Canada, he succeeded Sir George Prevost (after his failure at Plattsburgh) in 1814, as administrator of the Government and as Commander-in-Chief of the forces. He retired from Canada in 1818, and was generally regretted.

† Lieutenant-General Henry A. Proctor was born in Wales in 1787. He took part in Sir Isaac Brock's expedition against Général Hull at Detroit, in 1812. In 1813 he defeated General Wilkinson at the river Raisin, near the same city. For his ill-judged retreat up the river Thames, he was tried by court martial and suspended from service for six months; but he afterwards commanded the troops with great spirit in Canada. He was an able officer and highly popular.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the success of the British army, and of reverse? What events occurred on Lake Erie, the river Thames, and at Fort Niagara? What is said of Gen. Proctor; and of Sir G. Drummond.

15.  
with W  
army,  
icans,  
Hamp  
ed fo  
26th  
1813,  
troops  
Cham  
wards  
At th  
of th  
& CH  
rivers  
count  
Canad  
tia  
onel  
rv, w  
their  
By s

\* Te  
born  
In the  
ish.  
some  
Briga  
had b  
war v  
co-op  
from  
Mora  
wero  
44 y  
ciple

Qu  
Low  
Whi

15. *Campaign of 1813 in Lower Canada.*—To effect a junction with Wilkinson's army, the Americans, under Gen. Hampton, pushed forward, on 26th of October, 1813, with 3,500 troops, from Lake Champlain towards Montreal. At the junction of the Outarde & Chateauguay rivers, they encountered 1,000 Canadian militia under Colonel de Salaberry, who disputed their advance. By skilful man-



Tecumseh, a Shawanee Chief.\*

\*Tecumseh (or Tecumthé), a noted chief of the Shawanee Indians, was born in 1770. His brother was the celebrated "prophet" of that tribe. In the American war of 1812, he was the warm friend and ally of the British. Although opposed to the civilization of the Indians, he adopted, in some measures, the habits of the whites, and held the rank of Indian Brigadier in the British army. He, with the western tribes of Indians, had been involved in hostilities with the United States, in 1811; and when war with Great Britain was declared, in 1812, Tecumseh and his warriors co-operated with the British forces. On the 5th October, while retreating from Detroit with General Proctor, the Americans overtook them at Moravian Town (river Thames), and a battle ensued. The allied forces were defeated, and the brave Tecumseh fell in the midst of the fight, aged 44 years. He was a fine-looking Indian, and a man of inflexible principle—honourable and humane.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Tecumseh. How did the campaign in Lower Canada progress? Give an account of the battle of Chateauguay. Which party was successful at that battle? Where is Chateauguay situated?





Battle-Ground, River Thames, 1813.

to concentrate their forces for a combined attack on Montreal. General Wilkinson, who had a force of eight thousand men at Sackett's Harbour, was directed to join General Hampton at Montreal, and invest that city with a portion of his troops from Chateauguay. Wilkinson left Sackett's Harbour on the 4th of November, and on his passage down the St. Lawrence, menaced Kingston from Grenadier island. Being harassed, as he proceeded, by a Canadian force which had been despatched from Kingston to intercept him, Wilkinson resolved, when some distance down the river, to land and disperse it. The enemy were 3,000 strong, and the Canadians about 1,000. The Americans were led by Gen. Covington, —and to Lieutenant Smith was entrusted a battery. They landed at Cook's Point, and established themselves at Cook's tavern. At Chrysler's farm, near by, Col. Morrison had the

**QUESTIONS.**—What is shown in the engraving? What did the American general do? Give an account of the battle of Chrysler's field, or farm. Where were the American generals to unite? What was the result?

agement and great bravery on the part of the Canadian officers, the American forces were defeated & compelled to retreat towards Plattsburg.

16. *The Battle of Chrysler's Farm.* — The success of the Americans in Upper Canada had led them

CHAP.

British  
Amer  
on th

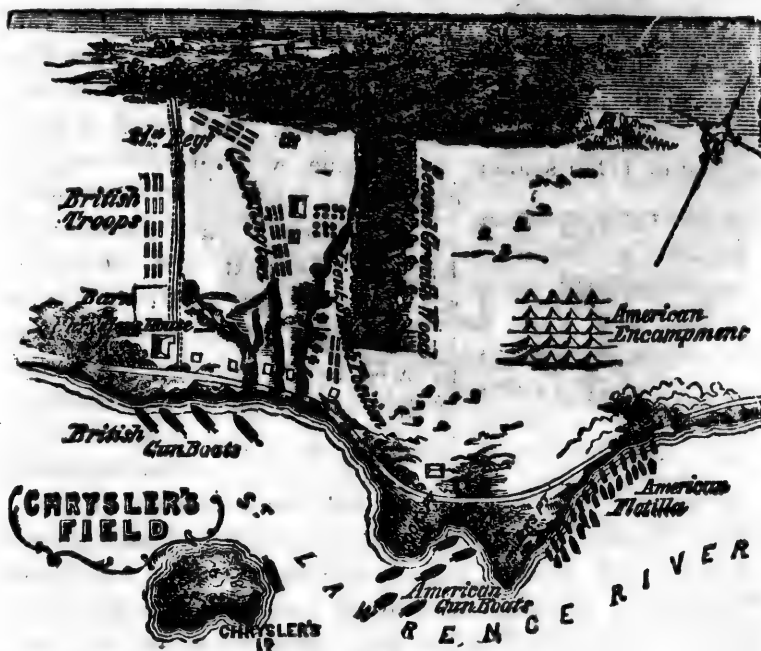
CAN  
F

comp  
Covin  
loss v  
were  
of the  
ler's  
attac  
inferi  
ended  
17

foot o  
Qu  
of the  
out o



British forces skilfully drawn up to oppose the passage of the Americans. After two hours' hard fighting in an open field on this farm, on the 11th of November, the Americans were



compelled to retire to their boats, with a loss of their general, Covington, and 350 killed and wounded; while the Canadian loss was only about 200. Hampton and Wilkinson's armies were thus defeated and disheartened by the determined bravery of the British and Canadian forces at Chateauguay and Chrysler's farm; and this decided them in giving up the contemplated attack on Montreal. These two battles, so gallantly won by inferior numbers, terminated the campaign of 1813. Thus ended the formidable invasion of Lower Canada.

17. *Campaign of 1814.*—At Lacolle Mill, eight miles from the foot of Lake Champlain, the campaign of 1814 was opened on

**QUESTIONS.**—How did the battle of Chrysler's farm affect the movements of the Americans? Give an account of the relative opposing forces. Point out on the engraving the places marked. How did the contest end?

the 31st March. This post, which was garrisoned by only 500 men, was attacked by Gen. Wilkinson with 5,000 American troops. With the aid of two gun-boats, and two sloops from the Isle-aux-Noix, the Americans were defeated, and driven back to Plattsburg. After the failure of their invading army at Lacolle, the Americans turned their attention to Upper Canada. But here the British were active. On the 4th of May, a force of 1,200 soldiers and marines were sent to Oswego to



Forts at Oswego.

destroy the dépôt there. They were highly successful, and returned to Kingston the next day. It was a source of great mortification that this victory of the British at Oswego was followed by the comparative failure of their attack upon Sackett's Harbour, owing to the irresolution of Sir George Prevost, who ordered a

retreat just as victory was achieved. Fort Erie was also lost. This fort, defended by only 200 men, was captured by the Americans, 4,000 strong, on the 3rd of July, 1814. At Chippewa, on the 5th July, Gen. Riall, with 2,400 troops, gave battle to 4,000 Americans. The British fought bravely; but Riall was compelled to retreat to the Twenty-Mile Creek on his way to Burlington Heights, near Hamilton. Thence he sent a detachment of 900 to —

18. *Lundy's Lane* (called Bridgewater by the Americans), near Niagara Falls. Here, on the 25th July, this detachment was attacked, and was about retreating, by order of General Riall, when General Drummond opportunely arrived from York and encountered the American forces. The battle commenced at 5 p.m., and continued until half-past 11. Both parties being reinforced, the strife was renewed. At midnight the enemy retired to Chippewa, leaving the British in posses-

**QUESTIONS.**—What was the effect of this double defeat? Where was the campaign of 1814 opened? Give a sketch of the battles at Oswego, Sackett's Harbour, and Fort Erie? Give an account of battle Chippewa.

sion  
and p  
who  
This v  
19.

sough  
the be  
on ea  
more  
and th  
Lake  
disast  
power  
Fort E  
his fo  
except  
tought  
cans v  
which  
(two v  
Forts  
peace  
instit  
the br

20.

Altho  
und L  
oped  
Provi  
politic  
to upl  
(in t  
telegr

QUE  
water  
the co

sion of the field. The Americans lost 1,200 killed, wounded and prisoners; and the British, 900, including General Riall, who was captured. The generals on both sides were wounded. This was the hardest fought battle in the whole campaign.

19. *Close of the War.*—On the 15th August, Gen. Drummond sought to retake Fort Erie, but failed. On the 17th September, the besieged made a sortie, but were driven back. The loss on each side was 600. Drummond's failure, however, was more than compensated by the capture of Prairie du Chien, and the gallant relief and defence of Fort Mackinac. But on Lake Champlain, the British forces suffered defeat; though this disaster was soon retrieved by a decline of American naval power on Lake Erie, and the retirement of their army from Fort Erie on the 5th of November, 1814. The destruction of this fort was the last act in the bloody drama, with the exception of the fatal battle of New Orleans, which was fought on the 8th of January, 1815, and at which the Americans were victorious. This closed the war. By the Treaty which was signed at Ghent, on the 24th of December, 1814, (two weeks before the battle of New Orleans was fought), Forts Mackinac and Niagara were given up to the Americans, peace was finally restored to the Province, and our laws and institutions preserved to us by the blessing of Providence and the bravery of our loyal defenders.

20. *Conditions of the Provinces at the Close of the War.*—Although the war of 1812 lasted only three years, it left Upper and Lower Canada very much exhausted. It, however, developed the patriotism and loyalty of the people in the two Provinces in a high degree. Party spirit was hushed; and political parties of all shades united in a firm determination to uphold the honour of the country's flag—in what was then, (in the absence of steam communication and the electric telegraph) one of most distant portions of the empire. And

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the battle of Lundy's Lane or Bridge-water? Give a sketch of the close of the war. Mention the final acts of the contest. What is said of the treaty and of the close of the war?

nobly did the loyal militia of Canada maintain their country's freedom; for at the close of the war no invader's foot rested within our borders.

## CHAPTER XV.

### FAMOUS CANADIAN BATTLE-GROUNDS OR FORTIFIED POSTS.

1. *Quebec* was founded, near the site of the ancient Algonquin village, Stadacona, by Champlain, in 1608. Quebec is supposed to have been so named from the Algonquin word *ke-pec*, a "strait,"—the St. Lawrence being only about 1,300 yards wide from Cape Diamond to Point Lévis, while immediately below it expands into a basin of more than twice that width. Quebec was taken by Sir D. Kertk, in 1629; restored in 1632; successively defended by Count de Frontenac against Sir William Phipps, in 1690; by the Marquis de Vaudreuil against Admiral Walker, in 1711; but was finally captured by the English forces under General Wolfe, in 1759, and formally ceded to England in 1763. The Americans, under Gen. Montgomery, were repulsed before its walls in 1775-6.

2. *Beauport Flats*, near Quebec.—At the siege of Quebec, Wolfe had fixed his camp on the left bank of the Montmorency river, and Montcalm his at Beauport. On the 31st July, 1759, Wolfe, aided by the fleet, attacked Montcalm with 8,000 men, but was defeated and compelled to retire.

3. *Ste. Foye*, outside of Quebec.—Here, on the 28th April, 1760, General Murray made a sortie from the citadel upon the French besieging force, under General de Lévis. He was defeated and driven into his entrenchments, with the loss of his artillery and ammunition. In October, 1863, a monument was erected at Ste. Foye to the memory of the French and English slain in this battle.

4. *Montreal* was founded, on the site of the ancient Huron village of Hochelaga, by M. de Maisonneuve, in 1642, and named Ville Marie, or Marianopolis, by the Superior of the Jesuits. It afterwards took its name from the adjoining "Mountain," or *Mont Royal*, so styled by Jacques Cartier. It was devastated by the Iroquois in 1689; capitulated to the English in 1760; taken by the Americans under General

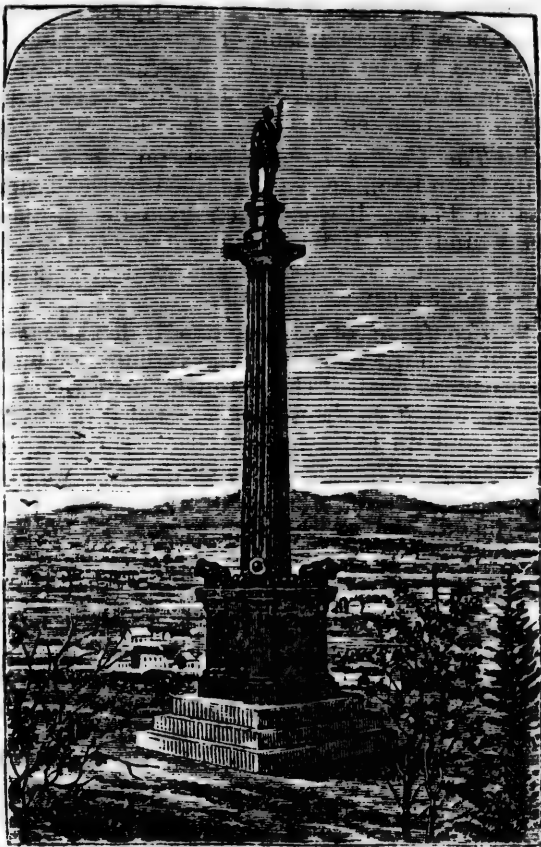
QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter xv. refer? Give a sketch of Quebec and of its vicissitudes in war. What is said of Beauport Flats? For what is Ste. Foye noted? Sketch the military history of the city of Montreal.

Montgomery, in 1775, and restored in 1776 when the Americans were forced to retire with their army from Canada.

5. *Isle-aux-Noix*, in the Richelieu river, commands the entrance to Lake Champlain; it was fortified by the French on their retreat from Crown Point in 1759; captured by the English in 1760; taken by the Americans in 1775 (from hence they issued their proclamation to the Canadians); and it rendered important service in the war of 1812-14.

6. *St. Johns*, Richelieu river, at the foot of the navigable waters of Lake Champlain, had been occupied by the French

previous to 1749, but was fortified by Montcalm in 1758; it was taken by the English; again fortified and enlarged by Sir Guy Carleton; captured by the Americans in 1775, and retained by them until they were forced to retire from Canada, in 1776. It was the point of rendezvous for Burgoyne's army, previous to his ill-fated expedition, which terminated so disastrously at Saratoga, in 1777. (See pages 137 and 140.)



Monument erected at Ste. Foye in 1863.

QUESTIONS.—What monument was erected at Ste. Foye in October 1863? What is shown in the engraving? How did it get its name? What battles were fought there? Where is the Isle aux Noix? For what is it noted?



7. *Fort Chambly*, the third important military post on the Richelieu river, 12 miles from St. Johns, was originally built of wood and named St. Louis, by M. de Chambly, a retired captain of the regiment of Carignan-Salières. It was often attacked by the Iroquois. Afterwards it was rebuilt of stone, and named Chambly. In 1775 it was captured by the Americans, but retaken in 1776. It is now a military station.

8. *The Cedars Rapids* post, on the St. Lawrence river, 24 miles from Lachine, was occupied by the Americans, as a small fort, in 1776. It was taken by a detachment of the British army and 500 Indians under the celebrated Brant, without firing a gun. The Americans sent for its support were captured after a severe struggle.

9. *Frontenac*, or Kingston.—M. de Courcelles originated the design with the consent of the Indians, of building a fort here, as a barrier against the English fur-traders; but, he being recalled, Count de Frontenac erected it in 1672. It was rebuilt with stone in 1678, by la Salle. In 1689, during the famous eruption into Canada of the Iroquois, it was abandoned by the French, and taken possession of for a short time by the Indians. In 1695 it was again rebuilt; and in 1758, captured by the English under Col. Bradstreet. It is now called Fort William Henry, after the late King William IV. It is fortified.

10. *Fort Niagara*.—This spot, though now beyond the boundaries of Canada, was enclosed by la Salle, in 1679, when on his way to the Mississippi. In 1725, the French erected a fort here, which, in 1759, was captured by Sir Wm. Johnson. The legends connected with the history of this fort, under French rule, are numerous. In the war of 1813, it was surprised and captured from the Americans by the Canadian militia. (See the illustrations on pages 106, 161, and 162.)

11. *Queenston Heights*, Niagara river. Here on the 13th of October, 1812, Sir Isaac Brock attacked the Americans, but fell in battle. After his death, the invaders were driven over the heights. John Brant, an Indian chief, son of the celebrated Joseph Brant, led 100 warriors in this battle. (See page 159.)

12. *Stoney Creek*, seven miles from Hamilton. On the 5th June, 1813, the American Generals Chandler and Winder were here captured in a successful night-sortie, by Sir John Harvey, and their invading army driven back. (See page 161.)

QUESTIONS.—Who built Fort Chambly? When was it captured and restored? What is said of the Cedars Rapids Post; of Frontenac, or Kingston; of Fort Niagara; of Queenston Heights and Stoney Creek?

13.  
24th J  
miles  
expedi  
Indian  
under

14.  
kinson  
Gener  
ward,  
Mont  
rivers  
berry,  
great  
cans  
son's

15.  
Nove  
their  
haras  
them  
1,000  
Ame  
and  
only  
num  
form  
by t  
hero  
atta

16  
plain  
oper  
Am  
Wit  
aux  
1  
troc  
bra  
afte  
1

Q  
Wh  
of C



13. *Beaver Dams, or Beech Woods*, Welland river. On the 24th June, 1813 (Mrs. James Secord having walked twenty miles to apprise Lieut. Fitzgibbon, the British officer, of the expedition sent against him), a picquet of 50 men and 200 Indians captured, after a slight skirmish, 500 Americans, under Col. Boerstler, including 50 cavalry and two field-pieces.

14. *Chateauguay*.—To effect a junction with General Wilkinson's large army from Sackett's Harbour, the American General Hampton, on the 26th October, 1813, pushed forward, with 3,500 troops, from Lake Champlain towards Montreal. At the junction of the Outarde and Chateauguay rivers, he encountered 400 Canadians, under Colonel de Salaberry, who disputed his advance. By skilful management and great bravery on the part of the Canadian officers, the Americans were compelled to retreat towards Plattsburg. Wilkinson's army also retired. (See page 163.)

15. *Chrysler's Farm*, Williamsburg, County Dundas, 11th November, 1813. The Americans, under Gen. Wilkinson, in their passage down the St. Lawrence to attack Montreal, being harassed by the Canadian forces, resolved to land and disperse them. They were 3,000 strong, and the Canadians about 1,000. After two hours' hard fighting in an open field, the Americans were compelled to retire, with a loss of one general, and 350 killed and wounded, while the Canadian loss was only 200. These two battles, so gallantly won by inferior numbers, terminated the campaign; and thus ended this formidable invasion of Lower Canada. Medals were awarded by the British Government to the Canadian Militia, whose heroism and stratagem in these battles saved Montreal from attack. (See page 165.)

16. *La Colle Mill*, eight miles from the foot of Lake Champlain. Here, on the 31st March, the campaign of 1814 was opened, with the attack by General Wilkinson and 5,000 American troops upon this post, garrisoned by only 500 men. With the aid of two gun-boats, and two sloops from the *Isle-aux-Noix*, the Americans were driven back to Plattsburg.

17. *At Chippewa*, on 5th July, 1814, Gen. Riall, with 2,400 troops, gave battle to 4,000 Americans. The British fought bravely, but were at length compelled to retreat. Gen. Riall afterwards sent a detachment of troops to—

18. *Lundy's Lane*, or Bridgewater, near Niagara Falls.

---

QUESTIONS.—What noted occurrence took place at Beaver Dams? Who was the heroine there? Give a sketch of the battle of Chateauguay; of Chrysler's Farm; and of Lacolle Mill? What of the battle of Chippewa?

Here, on the 24th July, 1814, General Drummond, in support of Riall's detachment encountered the American forces. The battle commenced at 5 P.M., and continued until 11½. Both parties being reinforced, the strife was renewed. It was the most severely contested battle of the whole war. At midnight the enemy retired to Chippewa, leaving the British in possession of the field. (See page 166.)

19. *Thames*.—After the capture of the British force on Lake Erie, General Proctor and Tecumseh, with 1,400 men, retreated from Amherstburg along the Thames river. At Moravian Town, on that river, they were overtaken by General Harrison, with an army of 3,000 Americans, and defeated. Here the brave Tecumseh lost his life. (See page 163.)

20. *Fort Erie*.—This fort, defended by only 170 men, was captured by the Americans, 4,000 strong, on the 3rd July, 1814. On the 15th August, General Drummond sought to retake it, but failed. On the 17th September, the besieged made a sortie, but were driven back. The loss on each side was 600. On the 5th November, the Americans blew up the fort, and retired from Canada. It is now in ruins.

21. *The Wars affecting New France and the British Provinces* were as follows:—

1. King William's War, 1689, between William III, Prince of Orange, and Louis XIV, on behalf of James II; commenced in Nova Scotia by the capture of Port Royal by Sir William Phipps; ended in 1697 by the Treaty of Ryswick.

2. Queen Anne's War, commenced 1702, between France and England, ended in 1713 by the Treaty of Utrecht.

3. King George's War, or the old French and Indian War, commenced in 1744 between England and France, ended in 1748 by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

4. French and Indian War, or the Seven Years' War, commenced between England and France in 1756. In 1759, Quebec was taken by Wolfe. The war was ended in 1763 by the Treaty of Paris.

5. The American Revolutionary War, commenced in 1775, ended in 1783 by the Treaty of Paris, and the independance of the thirteen colonies.

6. War of 1812 between England and the United States, commenced in 1812, ended in 1815 by the Treaty of Ghent.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of the battle of Lundy's Lane; of Moravian Town, River Thames; and of Fort Erie? Mention the different wars which affected New France and the various British Provinces in America

22. *Battles of the French and Indians, or Seven Years' War.*

WHEN FOUGHT.	WHERE FOUGHT.	COMMANDERS.	
		English.	French.
1754, May 23.	Great Meadows, Pa.*	Washington.....	Jumonville.
July 3.	Fort Necessity, †....	Washington.....	Villiers.
1755, June 13.	{ Fort Beauséjour, † Fort Gaspereau, † both in Acadia.	{ Monckton.....	{ De Verger. De Villeral.
July 9.	Monongahela, †....	Braddock.....	Beaujeu.
Sept. 8.	Near Lake George, †	Williams.....	Dieskau.
8.	Fort Wm. Henry, *	Johnson.....	Dieskau.
1756, Aug. 11.	Oswego, †.....	Mercer.....	Montcalm. (chief.
Sept. 8.	Kittanning, Pa.*....	Armstrong.....	Jacobs, Delaware
1757, Aug. 3.	Fort Wm. Henry, †.	Monroe.....	Montcalm
1758, June 25.	Louisbourg, *.....	Amherst and Wolfe	De Drucour.
July 8.	Ticonderoga, †.....	Abercrombie.....	Montcalm.
Aug. 25.	Fort Frontenac, *	Bradstreet.....	De Noyan.
Nov. 4.	Fort du Quesne, *	Forbes.....	De Lignières.
1759, July 22.	Ticonderoga, *.....	Amherst.....	Bourlamagne.
24.	Fort Niagara, *.....	Prideaux & Johnson	D'Aubry.
31.	Beauport Plats, †..	Wolfe.....	Montcalm.
Sept. 13.	Quebec, *.....	Wolfe.....	Montcalm.
1760, April 28.	Ste. Foye, †.....	Murray.....	De Lévis.
Sept. 8.	Montreal, *.....	Amherst.....	Vaudrenil.

\* British successful; † French successful.

23. *Principal Land-Battles of the War of 1812.*

WHEN FOUGHT.	WHERE FOUGHT.	COMMANDERS.	
		British.	American.
1812, July 17.	Mackinac, *.....	Roberts.....	Hancks.
Aug. 5.	Magagua, *.....	Tecumseh.....	Van Horne.
9.	Magagua, †.....	Muir.....	Müller.
16.	Detroit, *.....	Brock.....	Hull.
Oct. 13.	Queenston, *.....	Brock.....	Van Rensselaer.
1813, Jan. 23.	Frenchtown, *.....	Proctor.....	Winchester.
April 27.	York, †.....	Shesaffe.....	Pike.
May 1.	Fort Meigs, †.....	Proctor.....	Clay.
27.	Fort George, †.....	Vincent.....	Dearborn.
29.	Sackett's Harbour, †	Prevost.....	Brown.
June 5.	Stoney Creek, *.....	Harvey.....	Chandler.
24.	Beaver Dams, *.....	Fitzgibbon.....	Boerstler.
July 11.	Black Rock, *.....	Bishopp.....	Adams.
26.	Burlington Heights*	Maule.....	Scott.
Aug. 2.	Lower Sandusky, †.	Proctor.....	Croghan.
Oct. 5.	Thames, †.....	Proctor.....	Harrison.
26.	Chateauguay, *.....	De Salaberry.....	Hampton.
Nov. 11.	Chrysler's Farm, *..	Morrison.....	Wilkinson.
Dec. 19.	Fort Niagara, *.....	Murray.....	McClure.
1814, Mar. 30.	La Colle Mill, *.....	Hancock.....	Wilkinson.
July 5.	Chippewa, †.....	Riall.....	Brown.
25.	Lundy's Lane, *.....	Drummond.....	Brown.
Aug. 14.	Fort Erie, †.....	Drummond.....	Gaiues.
24.	Bladensburg, *.....	Kearney.....	Winder.
Sept. 11.	Plattsburg, †.....	Prevost.....	Macomb.
13.	Fort M'Henry, †....	Cochrane.....	Armistead.
1815, Jan. 8.	New Orleans, †.....	Pakenham.....	Jackson.

\* British successful; † Americans successful.

## III. AMERICAN POSTS CAPTURED DURING THE WAR OF 1812-14

(War declared by authority of Congress against England 18th June, 1812.)

24. *By the Canadian Troops.*—*Mackinac*, by Capt. Roberts, 17th July, 1812; *Detroit* (with General Hull and 2,500 Americans), by Sir Isaac Brock, 16th August, 1812; at *River Raisin*, Gen. Winchester and his army, by Gen. Proctor, 22nd January, 1813; *Ogdensburgh*, by Major McDonnell, 22nd February, 1813; *Fort Meigs*, Ohio, by Gen. Proctor, 5th May, 1813; (also various towns on the *Chesapeake River*, by the British in May, 1813;) *Black Rock*, near Buffalo, by Col. Bishopp, 11th July, 1813, and again in December; the frontier towns of *Buffalo*, *Youngstown*, *Lewiston*, *Manchester* (Falls), and *Tuscarora*, were also burnt in December, as reprisals for the burning of *Niagara* by the Americans; *Plattsburg*, by Col. Murray, 31st July, 1813; *Niagara*, by Col. Murray, 19th December; *Oswego*, by Commodore Yeo, 6th May, 1814; several towns on the coast of *Maine*, by the British, July, 1814; and *Washington*, by General Ross, 24th August.

25. *Naval Captures by the British*, not including re-captures. National vessels: *Wasp*, *Chesapeake*, *Argus*, *Essex*, *Frolic*, *President*, *Rattlesnake*, *Syren*, *Nautilus*, *Viper*, *Madison*, &c. Total 14 (15,000 tons), carrying 660 guns and 3,000 men.

## IV. CANADIAN POSTS CAPTURED BY THE AMERICANS.

26. *Revolutionary War.*—*Chambly*, by Col. Bedell, 30th Oct., 1775; *St. Johns*, by Gen. Montgomery, 3rd Nov., 1775; *Montreal*, by Gen. Montgomery, 13th Nov., 1776. In June, 1776, the Americans evacuated the Province.

27. *War of 1812-14.*—*Toronto*, by Gen. Pike (who was killed), 27th April, 1813; *Fort George* (Niagara River), 27th May, 1813; *Moravian Town*, on the river *Thames*, by Gen. Harrison, 5th Oct., 1813; *Fort Erie*, by Gen. Brown, 3rd July, 1814; *Chippewa*, by Gen. Brown, 4th July, 1814.

28. *Naval Captures by the Americans.*—British force on *Lake Erie*, by Commander Perry, 10th Sept., 1813; on *Lake Champlain*, by Com. McDonough, 11th Sept., 1814. National vessels (not including re-captures): *Alert*, *Guerrière*, *Frolic*, *Macedonian*, *Java*, *Peacock*, *Boxer*, *Epervier*, *Avon*, *Cyane*, *Levant*, *Dominica*, *St. Lawrence*, *Highflyer*, &c. Captures at sea

QUESTIONS.—Who declared war against England in 1812? What principal American posts and war vessels were captured by the British? What British posts and war vessels were captured by the Americans?

1812-14

June, 1812.

Roberts,  
0 Ameri  
River Rat  
tor, 22nd  
22nd Feb  
5th May,  
; by the  
; by Col.  
e frontier  
r (Falls),  
orials for  
g, by Col.  
19th De-  
; several  
814; and

-captures.  
x, Frolic,  
dison, &c.  
men.

CAVS.

del, 30th  
ov., 1775;  
In June,

(who was  
ver), 27th  
t, by Gen.  
3rd July,

ce on Lake  
ake Cham  
ational ves-  
Frolic, Ma  
tyane, Lev  
ures at sea

What prin-  
the British?  
Americans?

(not including those on the Lakes): 30 (10,000 tons), carrying 503 guns and 2,800 men.

### V. MILITARY AND MILITIA FORCE IN CANADA.

29. *The various Military Stations* of the Province of Canada are garrisoned by soldiers sent out and paid by the Imperial Government; and by Canadian militia on active service, raised and maintained by the Province. The regular force is about 3,500 men. The militia force (both volunteer and sedentary) has recently been put upon an efficient footing. It now consists of 12,565 officers, about 350,000 men, 2,000 cavalry horses, and 50 guns. The Governor-General is the Commander-in-Chief. Military Schools of Instruction for militia officers have been successfully established by the Canadian Government at Quebec, Toronto, and other parts of the Province.

## Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

(Continued from page 167.)

### CHAPTER XVI.

#### SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, SECOND PERIOD (Continued):

FROM THE CLOSE OF THE WAR OF 1812-14, UNTIL THE UNION OF THE PROVINCES.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Governors—Contests between the Government and the Houses of Assembly in Upper and Lower Canada—Canal Policy—Crisis of 1837—Lord Durham's Mission.*

1. *Governors of Upper Canada.*—During the years 1805-1815, there had been frequent changes of Governors. The Hon. Francis Gore held office from 1806 until 1811, when he was succeeded as President by Sir Isaac Brock, who fell at Queenston Heights in October, 1812. Sir R. H. Sheaffe held the office *pro tem.*, as President, when he was succeeded by Baron

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the military and militia force in Canada? Who is commander-in-chief? Mention some of the principal subjects of Chapter xvi. Who were the governors of Upper Canada from 1805 to 1812?

de Rottenburgh, also as President, in 1813. In that year, Sir Gordon Drummond was appointed Lieutenant-Governor, and he succeeded Sir George Prevost as Administrator in Lower Canada, in 1815. During this same time, Sir George Murray, Hon. Francis Gore, and Sir F. P. Robinson, succeeded each other as Lieutenant-Governors of Upper Canada. The latter gentleman remained in office until 1817, when Hon. Samuel Hunter was appointed Administrator until the arrival of the new Governor, Sir Peregrine Maitland,\* in 1818.

2. *Political Discussions in Upper and Lower Canada, 1816-1822.*—The distracting influences of the war having gradually ceased, political discussions soon occupied public attention. In Lower Canada, a protracted contest arose between the Legislative Assembly and the Executive Government, on the subject of the finances. The Assembly maintained that the right to fix and control the public expenditure was inherent in itself, while the Governor and Legislative Council, being co-ordinate branches of the Legislature, resisted this doctrine, and sought to vest it in themselves. The chief object which the Assembly had in view was, by controlling the expenditure, to prevent or to reform certain abuses which had grown up in the administration of public affairs. It also wished to assert its own authority, as an independent branch of the Legislature, and to prevent the possibility of its being reduced to an inferior position in the state. So tenacious was the Assembly of its rights in this matter, that for years, almost all other questions

---

\* Sir Peregrine Maitland was born in England in 1777. Having distinguished himself at Waterloo, he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada in 1813; while his father-in-law, the Duke of Richmond, was appointed Governor-General of Lower Canada. On the Duke's sad death from hydrophobia, in 1819, Sir Peregrine administered the Government of Lower Canada until the appointment of the Earl of Dalhousie as Governor-General, in 1820. Sir Peregrine was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia in 1828, and died in 1854, aged 77 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the names and dates of the Governors of Upper Canada from 1813 to 1818. Give a sketch of Sir Peregrine Maitland. What was the state of political feeling in Lower Canada after the war of 1812?



year, Sir  
ernor, and  
in Lower  
e Murray,  
eded each  
The latter  
t. Samuel  
val of the

da, 1816-  
gradually  
ention. In  
e Legisla-  
he subject  
e right to  
t in itself,  
co-ordinate  
and sought  
e Assembly  
prevent or  
e adminis-  
rt its own  
ature, and  
an inferior  
mbly of its  
r questions

aving distin-  
Governor of  
f Richmond,  
e Duke's sad  
t the Govern-  
Dalhousie as  
Lieutenant-  
ears.

more of Upper  
itland. What  
e war of 1812?

were made subordinate to this vital one, or they were treated as only forming part of the general issue involved in it. Thus things remained during the administrations of Sir John C. Sherbrooke,\* the Duke of Richmond (who was unfortunately bitten by a fox and died of hydrophobia, while up the Ottawa river in 1819), and the Earl of Dalhousie.† In Upper Canada an almost similar contest arose between the same parties in the state; while the abuses arising out of the system of land-granting, the management of the Post Office Department, and the oligarchical power of the Family Compact (intermarried families of the chief government officials and their immediate adherents), were warmly discussed and denounced. Nevertheless, progress was made in many important directions. Emigration was encouraged; wild lands surveyed; commercial intercourse with other colonies facilitated; banking privileges extended; the system of public improvements (canals, roads, &c.) inaugurated; steamboats were employed to navigate the inland waters; education encouraged, and religious liberty asserted as the inherent right of all religious persuasions.

3. *The Clergy Reserve Discussion in Upper and Lower Canada.*—The lands reserved by the Imperial Act of 1791 for the support of a protestant clergy in Canada, amounted to one seventh of the province, or nearly 2,500,000 acres in Upper, but only about 1,000,000 acres in Lower Canada—no reserves having been made in that province until 1796. The appropriation of these clergy reserves to the exclusive use of

\* Sir John Coape Sherbrooke was born in England, and before coming to Canada had acquired some distinction as an officer in the East Indies and the Peninsula, and as Governor of Nova Scotia. He administered the Government of Lower Canada with firmness and tact from 1816 to 1818. He died in 1830.

† George, Earl of Dalhousie, a general in the army, was born in Scotland. He served in Nova Scotia before coming as Governor-General to Canada. He arrived in 1820, and remained nine years. His administration was energetic and firm. He died in 1838.

QUESTIONS.—What spirit did the L. C. House of Assembly exhibit? How long did this state of feeling last? Give a sketch of Sir John Sherbrooke and of the Earl of Dalhousie. What is said of the Clergy Reserves?

the Church of England in Canada gave rise to most exciting and unpleasant political discussions (chiefly in Upper Canada), from 1817 until the final settlement of the question in 1854. In 1817, an ineffectual motion was first made in the Upper Canada House of Assembly, to alienate one half of the clergy reserve lands to secular purposes. Up to this time, and for two years longer, these lands were entirely in the hands of the government, and no part of the moneys arising out of rents received for them had as yet been paid to any religious body\*—except £427 to the Church of England in 1816. In 1819–20, a Church of England clergy corporation was created in each province to manage these reserves—the corporation, however, was directed to pay the proceeds of the sales of the reserves into the hands of the government, to be by it afterwards appropriated. The payments to the Church of England in Upper Canada recommenced in 1821, and continued until 1854; but none were made to any other religious body until later. In 1822, the Lower Canada House of Assembly voted an address to the king, praying that the various Protestant bodies in Canada be permitted to share in the reserves. In 1823, upon a petition from the Church of Scotland in Canada, an address was also adopted by the Upper Canada House of Assembly, recommending that a portion of the reserves be given to that church. The passage of these addresses was the signal for a general agitation of the question throughout the provinces—the prevailing feeling being that the reserves should be divided among all the Protestant denominations. In 1826, a similar address was passed, with the additional recommendations that in case it be deemed inexpedient to divide the reserves among all denominations, they “be applied to the purposes of education and the general improvement of the province.”

\* The clergy reserve lands were invariably leased up to 1829, when portions of them were first sold. The rents received for them were for many years insufficient to defray the expenses of surveying and management.

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the discussions which took place on the Clergy Reserve question. By whom were the lands originally held? What payments were made from the fund? Mention what addresses were passed.

4. *Upper and Lower Canada from 1823–1828.*—The public discussions in Lower Canada were chiefly directed against a project for the Union of the two Provinces, which was proposed by the Imperial Government. The feeling of Upper and Lower Canada being against the measure, it was not persisted in. Notwithstanding the continuance of the demands of the Legislative Assemblies in either Province to control the finances, even to the “stopping of the supplies” (that is, refusing to sanction by vote the payment of moneys necessary

to defray the current expenses of the Province), public improvements were carried on with spirit. In Lower Canada, large sums were voted by the Legislature for the continuation of the Chambly and Lachine canals; and stock to the amount of \$100,000 was taken by it in the Welland canal, of Upper Canada. In Upper Canada, the Welland canal



Hon. William H. Merritt.

(projected by the Hon. William H. Merritt)\* was also aided

\* The Honorable William Hamilton Merritt was the son of a United Empire Loyalist. He served in the war of 1812, and projected the Welland Canal in 1818. Mr. Merritt was a member of the Legislature for

QUESTIONS.—What was the state of feeling, 1823–28? Did the political discussions affect public improvements? Mention what was done in Upper and Lower C in this subject. Give a sketch of the Hon. W. H. Merritt.

by Parliament. The political discussions of the day were, however, characterised by much personality and bitter feeling. This was especially so in regard to the press. In Lower Canada the editor of the *Quebec Spectator* was twice arrested for libel; while in Upper Canada, the editor of the *Colonial Advocate* had his office broken open, and his type thrown into Toronto bay. The perpetrators of this outrage were, however, compelled to pay heavy damages.

5. *Political Party Contests in Canada from 1829 to 1836.*—In 1829, the Governors of Upper and Lower Canada were changed. Sir John Colborne\* replaced Sir Peregrine Maitland, in Upper Canada, and Sir James Kempt† replaced Lord Dalhousie in Lower Canada. In the meantime, political questions were discussed with vehemence; and to thoughtful men, public affairs seemed to be gradually approaching a crisis.‡

many years; President of the Executive Council, in 1849; and Chief Commissioner of Public Works, in 1851. He died in 1862, aged 69 years.

\* Sir John Colborne was born in England in 1777; entered the army in 1794. He served in Egypt and Sicily, and also in the Peninsula. He governed Upper Canada during a stormy period, but failed to restore harmony. On his retirement from Upper Canada in 1836, he was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the forces in Canada, and remained until the suppression of the rebellion in 1839. He held the office of Governor-General for a short time, after Lord Gosford's recall. He was created Baron, Lord Seaton, in 1840, and a Field-Marshal of the Empire in 1860. He died in 1863, aged 86 years.

† Gen. Sir James Kempt was born in Scotland, in 1765. He served with distinction in Holland, Egypt and Spain, and in 1807 was appointed Quarter-Master General for British North America. He was wounded at Waterloo. He was Governor of Nova Scotia from 1820 to 1828, when he was transferred as Governor-General to Lower Canada, where he remained until 1830. He died in 1855, aged 90 years.

‡ To enter into all the details of the political contests of those stormy times, long since settled, would be but to recapitulate the numerous points of dispute between the two great political parties. This would be foreign both to the scope and objects of this history. The utmost we can do, is to glance briefly at the most striking features of public affairs or events of moment, and to deal summarily with the general results, either of a long and irritating political discussion, or of a political crisis.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the personalities of the press? Who were the governors from 1829 to 1836? Sketch Sir John Colborne, and Sir James Kempt. What is said of the stormy discussion of political questions then.

The subjects of dispute were in reality few, although the phases of the protracted and ever varying discussions were numerous, and unfortunately partook largely of personalities.\* Few candid men will deny, however, at this distance of time, that serious faults existed on both sides.

6. *The Two Great Parties in Upper Canada Contrasted.*—

The governing party (although individually estimable men in private life) was, as a party, intolerant to others and arbitrary. It was a self-constituted oligarchy, which, having the reins of power in its hands, would allow no person to question its acts, or to share in its rule. Heedless of the grave responsibilities of their position as the ruling party, they steadily refused to make wise concessions, or to meet the just and reasonable demands of public opinion at the proper time. All their opponents were indiscriminately denounced as revolutionists and republicans. Unfortunately, there was some reason for this assertion; but it was true of individuals only, and not of the party. The continued voluntary association (if not identification on all public occasions and questions) of the reformers with political malcontents, was, for a time, a serious blot on the escutcheon of the liberal party in Upper Canada. Although many distinguished leaders among them held firmly to the great principles of British constitutional freedom, as expounded by British statesmen, still, many who invariably acted with them, and gave great strength to their party, felt little reverence for anything, either British or monarchical. With them, the republican experiment on this continent, of then only sixty years' growth, was an unquestioned success; and by that standard all things political in Upper Canada were to be judged. As the crisis of 1837 drew near, the liberal party

\* It would prejudice the learner's mind to criticise each arbitrary act too severely, or to bear too hardly upon either political party, without giving fuller information than this school history will permit.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the two great political parties of 1829 to 1836? Give a sketch of each. What was the effect of the course pursued by them at the time? What led to the break-up of the liberal party?

showed signs of disintegration. The standard of authority and the political principles of each section of the party being essentially different, the British constitutionalist portion gradually withdrew from association with the republican malcontents; this added new elements of strife and bitterness to the seething political turmoil of the time.

7. *Political Contests in Lower Canada, 1829-1836.*—In Lower Canada, party strife, in many respects, assumed a different aspect from that of Upper Canada. Some features of the political contest between the governing party and the governed in Lower Canada were, however, the same as they were in Upper Canada. Favouritism and exclusiveness marked the conduct of the governing party in each province, and, as a matter of course, it produced similar fruits in discontent and resistance in both provinces.

8. *Elements of Discord in Lower Canada.*—There was a special element of discord in Lower Canada, which gave intensity to all the political discussions there—and that was the hostility of race—French against British, and British against French. As was very natural, the French element being largely in the preponderance, and being the old race in possession of the soil, looked with great distrust on the intrusive British, whose hereditary national antipathies to the French had been kept alive since 1660, and during the continuance of the long contests for the monopoly of trade and territory. And although, at the conquest, and subsequently during the American revolution, the laws, customs, and religion of the French Canadians were, as far as possible, guaranteed, and this guarantee confirmed, still, they looked upon this concession as only temporary. They maintained that the policy of the British governing party, and their own exclusion from office, violated the spirit of this concession, or compact, if it did not virtually revoke it.

9. *The Lower Canada Ninety-Two Resolutions.*—With such

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the state of political feeling in Lower Canada at this time? How did it differ from that in Upper Canada? Mention the chief elements of discord which were at work in Lower Canada.



a state of feeling, and under such circumstances, the political discussions in Lower Canada were very bitter for several years. At length they culminated in the passage by the House of Assembly of 92 famous resolutions, prepared chiefly by the Hon. A. N. (late Judge) Morin,\* although nominally by the late Hon. Judge Bedard.† These resolutions denounced the conduct of public affairs by the government, the exclusion of the French Canadians from office, the party nomination by the Crown of Legislative Councillors, &c. This led to counter-demonstrations and equally strong resolutions on the part of the British portion of the population, so that a fierce war of rival races and political parties was the result. At length, both sides appealed to the British government and Legislature for a settlement of their differences. In the British Parliament warm debates on the subject took place.

10. *Imperial Commission of Inquiry.*—Finally, in 1835, the Imperial Government sent a commission, composed of Lord Gosford‡ (as Governor-General), Sir Charles Grey, and Sir James Gipps, to inquire into the cause of the alleged grievances in Lower Canada. The report of the Commissioners was laid before the Imperial Parliament, and discussed by it early in 1837. The discussion in the British Parliament was moreover unfavourable to the Lower Canada opposition, and several of its propositions were negatived by large majorities.

\* The Hon. Auguste Norbert Morin was born near Quebec in 1803. He was admitted to the bar in 1828. He held a seat in the Legislature of Lower Canada and of United Canada. He was also Speaker of the House of Assembly from 1848 to 1841, and member of the government in 1842, 3 and 1853-5.

† The Hon. Elzéar Bedard, a prominent and active politician until elevated to the Bench, was a native of Lower Canada, and died in 1849.

‡ The Earl of Gosford was appointed Governor-General of Canada in 1835, in place of Lord Aylmer. He sought to conciliate opposing parties in Lower Canada, and to remove causes of complaint; but having failed in his mission, he was relieved in the government by Sir John Colborne, and returned to England in 1838. He died in 1849.

QUESTIONS.—Give the principal points of the famous 92 resolutions. How were these resolutions viewed by the two parties; and in England? Sketch Hon. Elzéar Bedard; Hon. A. N. Morin; and the Earl of Gosford.

**II. Establishment of the Fifty-Seven Rectories.**—In Upper Canada, the strife between the two parties not only continued, but was heightened by the unlooked-for establishment, in 1836, of fifty-seven Church of England Rectories by Sir John Colborne, on the eve of his leaving the Province. The legality of the act was questioned but without effect, as the statute of 1791 clearly authorized the establishment of rectories. In the meantime, a strong party of liberals in Upper and Lower Canada became gradually detached from the more extreme opposition. This opposition was led by Hon. L. J. Papineau, in Lower Canada, and by Mr. W. L. Mackenzie,\* in Upper Canada.

**12. The Fatal Crisis Approaching.**—The proceedings of the British Parliament, as arbiter between the contending parties, left the ultra oppositionists no resource but either to recede from

---

\* William Lyon Mackenzie, Esq., was born in Scotland in 1794, and came to Canada in 1820. In 1824 he published the first number of the *Colonial Advocate* at Niagara. Soon afterwards the paper was removed to Toronto; and, in 1828, having given offence to the ruling party, the office of the paper was broken open and the types thrown into the Bay. Mr. Mackenzie recovered sufficient damages to enable him to continue to publish his paper until 1836. In 1828 he was returned for the first time to the Provincial Parliament, for the County of York. Having used some strong expressions in his paper against the ruling party in the House of Assembly, he was expelled from the House. He was re-elected, and again expelled; and this was repeated five times in succession. At length the House refused for three years to issue a writ of election. This proceeding was severely condemned by the Home Government. In the meantime Mr. Mackenzie went to England to represent the grievances of Upper Canada, and was well received by the Colonial Secretary, who requested him to remain to give information. In 1836 he was elected the first Mayor of Toronto. In 1837 he became the leader of the armed insurgents against the Government. Having failed, he went to Navy Island, thence to the United States; and did not return until 1850, when he was again elected to the House of Assembly. He held a seat there until 1858, when he resigned. Though Mr. McKenzie lived to regret his connection with the rebellion of 1837, he was nevertheless a sincere and honest man in the expression of his views. He died in 1861 much regretted, aged 66 years.

---

**QUESTION.**—What unlooked-for act did Sir John Colborne perform? Give a sketch of Mr. W. L. Mackenzie. What was the effect in Lower Canada of the discussion on the Canada question in England?

In Upper  
continued,  
In 1836,  
John Col-  
legality of  
statute of  
ries. In  
and Lower  
extreme  
Papineau,  
in Upper

gs of the  
g parties,  
cede from

1795, and  
ber of the  
as removed  
party, the  
o the Bay.  
o continue  
or the first  
k. Having  
g party in  
He was re-  
s in succes-  
writ of abso-  
overnment.  
nt the grie-  
l Secretary,  
was elected  
f the armed  
nt to Navy  
1850, when  
seat there  
o regret his  
s a sincere  
1861 much

e perform ?  
in Lower

their untenable position, or to carry out their threats of armed resistance. In order to avoid any appearance of coercion, no troops were sent out from Britain; but, in case of need, draughts were directed to be made on the garrisons of the adjoining provinces. Meanwhile, the spirit of resistance, which had been so fiercely aroused, took active shape: a secret enrolment of the disaffected was made, and the plans of their leaders in Upper and Lower Canada matured. Inflammatory appeals were made to the disaffected by their chiefs, and counter-appeals were made to the people by the clergy, and by the leaders of the loyal population. The Governors also issued proclamations of warning.

13. *The Rebellion in Lower Canada.*—Before any hostile blow was actually struck, Lord Gosford retired from Lower Canada, and Sir John Colborne from Upper Canada. Sir John was replaced by Sir F. B. Head, and was on his way to England, when he was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the forces in Canada, and Administrator of the government in Lower Canada. He at once armed the volunteers there; while Sir F. B. Head sent to him all the troops he had, and then appealed to the loyalty of the people of Upper Canada for support. At length, on the 7th of November, the first fatal blow was struck. The "Sons of Liberty" attacked the "Doric" volunteers in the streets of Montreal, and compelled them to give way. Both parties now flew to arms in Montreal and its neighbourhood; and during the month a series of skirmishes or fights took place between the opposing parties at Chambly, Longueuil, St. Denis, St. Charles, and Point Olivier. Martial law was at once proclaimed in Lower Canada; and a Special Council, invested with Legislative power, convened.

14. *Crisis in Upper Canada.*—No collision had as yet taken place in Upper Canada; but on the 4th of December, 1837,

---

QUESTIONS.—What steps were taken by the disaffected? What changes took place among the Governors? Who took command of the forces in Canada? What did Sir F. B. Head do? How was the first fatal blow struck?





18 20 22 25  
E E E E E  
E E E E E

10 01  
E E E E E  
E E E E E



some of Mackenzie's adherents having prematurely assembled at Montgomery's Tavern on Yonge street, (four miles from Toronto,) resolved to attack the city. On the 5th, a flag of truce was sent to parley with them, and to dissuade them from their mad scheme; another was sent on the 6th, refusing their demands; and on the 7th, Sir Francis marched out against them with about 1,000 volunteers. Providentially the contest was short and decisive. Mackenzie, not having completed his plans, had to fight at a disadvantage. He vainly attempted to rally his men, and, at length, had to retreat up Yonge street, whence he afterwards fled to Buffalo. From this place he went to Navy Island (near Niagara Falls), where he collected quite a number of followers; under General Van Rensselaer. On the Canada side the insurgents were confronted by Colonel (afterwards Sir Allan) MacNab, at the head of about 2,500 militia.\* Watching his opportunity, Colonel MacNab sent a small force under Lieut. Drew, R.N., to cut out Mackenzie's supply steamer, the *Caroline*. This they did successfully, and, having set her on fire, sent her over the Falls. Shortly afterwards, artillery was brought to bear upon the Island; and Van Rensselaer, finding his position difficult to maintain, retreated to the American mainland, where his forces soon dispersed. In the meantime, efforts were made along the Western frontier to invade the country from the United States, but, owing to the vigilance of the

\* The honorable Sir Allan Napier MacNab was born at Niagara in 1798. He was an officer in the navy, and afterwards in the army, in the war of 1812. After the war, he became a prominent politician, and in 1829 was elected an M.P.P. He was twice Speaker of the House of Assembly and once Speaker of the Legislative Council of Canada. In 1837, he was appointed military chief of the Upper Canada loyalists, in suppressing the insurrection. For his services he was knighted in 1838. He projected the Great Western Railway; was appointed Premier of Canada in 1855, and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom in 1856. He died in 1862, aged 64 years.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the collision between the loyalists and the insurgents in U.C.? Give an account of the Navy Island affair? Sketch Sir Allan MacNab's career? What steps were taken to restore quiet?

assembled  
miles from  
a flag of  
made them  
h, refusing  
rched out  
ntially the  
aving com-  
He vainly  
to retreat  
lo. From  
ra Falls),  
nder Gene-  
gents were  
ab, at the  
portunity,  
rew, R.N.,  
ine. This  
sent her  
s brought  
nding his  
can main-  
me, efforts  
e country  
ce of the

Niagara in  
ry, in the  
and in 1829  
of Assembly  
1837, he was  
pressing the  
projected the  
n 1855, and  
1862, aged

oyalists and  
air? Sketch  
tore quiet?

loyalists, they were unsuccessful. Lount and Matthews, who took part in the Toronto outbreak, were shortly afterwards tried and summarily executed.

15. *Progress of the Rebellion—Lord Durham's Mission.*—In the meantime the Earl of Durham,\* who had been appointed Governor General, and Her Majesty's Lord High Commissioner to enquire into the affairs of Canada, arrived. Sir Francis B. Head was succeeded by Sir George Arthur\* as Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada. Large reinforcements were also sent to Canada, and the two provinces put in a better state of defence. Shortly after their arrival, Lord Durham, and the several eminent men who accompanied him, set about the objects of their mission. Valuable information was collected, witnesses examined, and inquiries instituted with great vigour. A voluminous report on the state of the country was prepared as the result of these inquiries, and laid before Her Majesty. Among other recommendations made by the Earl, the union of the two Canadas was urged as of paramount importance. A hostile censure, in the House of Lords, on Lord Durham's local administration of the government, however, brought his mission to an abrupt termination, and he returned to England. Sir John Colborne (afterwards Lord Seaton) again became Administrator of the Government in Lower Canada until the appointment of the Right Hon. Charles Poulett Thomson (afterwards Lord Sydenham) as Governor General.

\* The Right Honourable John George Lambton, Earl of Durham, was born in 1792. In 1813 he was elected to Parliament, and was appointed Her Majesty's Lord High Commissioner to Canada, in May, 1838, to inquire into its political grievances. His report upon the political state of the Provinces (which ultimately led to the union of the Canadas, and the introduction of parliamentary, or responsible, government into British America) was published in 1839. He died in 1840, aged 48.

\* Sir George Arthur was born in 1784. Having been governor of Honduras and of Van Dieman's Land (Tasmania), he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada at a critical time, in 1838. The efforts made during his administration against the rebellion were successful.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the Earl of Durham. Give a sketch of Sir George Arthur. What was done by the Earl of Durham? Why did he so soon leave the country? What efforts were made by the insurgents?

16. *Final Efforts of the Insurgents.*—Various hostile attempts were made, during the year 1838, to invade the Province. The most serious of these took place simultaneously in November, at Napierville, in Lower Canada, and at the Windmill Point, Prescott, on the St. Lawrence, in Upper Canada. That at Napierville was promptly put down



Windmill Point, near Prescott.

by Sir John Colborne in person. At Prescott, the insurgents, under Von Shoultz, a refugee Pole, maintained themselves for three days in a stone windmill; but they were at length defeated and captured. The windmill and adjacent buildings still remain blackened and battered ruins, as monuments of the misguided efforts of these men. The principal prisoners taken at both places were tried and executed; others were transported or banished. Further unsuccessful attempts at invasion were made during the winter of 1838-9 at Windsor and Sandwich, near Detroit; but by this time, the rebellion had well nigh spent its strength; and having lost all prestige and sympathy, even among the Americans, no invasion of the Province was again attempted. The Glengarry Highland Militia have long been noted for their loyal devotion to their country. In token of their patriotic loyalty during the insurrectionary troubles of 1837, 38, the inhabitants (men, women, and children) erected, on one of the islands opposite the shore, in Lake St. Francis, an immense cairn of stones, 60 feet high, surmounted by a flag-

**QUESTIONS.**—Where did the contests with the insurgents take place? What is said of Prescott? How did the rebellion progress in 1838? In what way did the inhabitants of Glengarry evince their loyal feeling?

Gle  
strife  
Hon.  
chant  
obtain  
Provi  
the pr  
of the  
Glover  
Upper  
Decem  
John  
Octob  
22nd

\*Th  
M.P. i  
1834.  
Gover  
sted B  
tamen  
Upper  
and w

QUE  
Canad  
was d



Glengarry Cairn, Lake St. Francis.

staff, inserted in the mouth of a cannon which had been placed in an upright position.

17. *Union of the Provinces in 1840.*—On the return of tranquillity, in 1839, the British Government promptly determined to apply such political remedies to the state of the Provinces as would pre-

vent the recurrence of civil strife or give any reasonable cause of complaint. The Right Hon. C. P. Thompson (Lord Sydenham),\* an eminent merchant, was sent out as Governor-General. He was directed to obtain the concurrence of the inhabitants to a union of the Provinces. The Special Council of Lower Canada agreed to the proposed union (and the assumption by the united province of the large debt of Upper Canada) after a conference with the Governor General in November, 1839. The Legislature of Upper Canada also agreed to it after two weeks' debate, in December of the same year. Lord Sydenham relieved Sir John Colborne in Lower Canada on his arrival there, 19th October, and Sir George Arthur in Upper Canada, on the 22nd of November, 1839. The Act of Union so readily agreed

---

\*The Right Hon. Charles Poulett Thompson, born in England in 1799; M.P. in 1826; Vice-President of the Board of Trade in 1829; President in 1834. He established the English Schools of Design in 1837; appointed Governor-General of Canada in 1839; united the Canadas, and was created Baron Sydenham and Toronto, in 1840; opened the first united parliament at Kingston, in June, 1841; projected a municipal system in Upper Canada in August; and died by reason of a fall from his horse, and was buried in Kingston, in September, 1841, aged only 42 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—What steps were taken in 1839 to unite Upper and Lower Canada into one Province? Give a sketch of Lord Sydenham. What was done in Upper and Lower Canada in regard to this projected union?

to by both provinces, was drafted by Lord Sydenham and sent home. It was passed by the British Parliament in 1840, and took effect by royal proclamation, (issued by Lord Sydenham) on the 10th of February, 1841—a threefold anniversary already memorable in the history of Canada, viz—*first*: by the Treaty of Utrecht, by which the province was, in 1763, ceded to the British Crown; *secondly*: by the assent of the Sovereign to the Imperial Act of 1838, by which the Constitution of Lower Canada was suspended; and *thirdly*: by the marriage of our most gracious Sovereign the Queen to His Royal Highness Prince Albert of Saxe Coburg and Gotha, in 1839.

18. *Incorporation of Quebec, Montreal and St. Sulpice Seminary.*—The Governor General returned to Montreal in Feb., 1840. Among the first things which he did was to issue an ordinance of the Special Council, to revive the charters of incorporation of the cities of Quebec and Montreal, which had expired during the rebellion. He also, in the same way, granted a charter of incorporation to the Seminary of St. Sulpice [peace], Montreal. The authorities of this Seminary had, since 1663, been seigniors of the Island of Montreal. This charter enabled the corporation of the Seminary to collect its seigniorial dues, as well as commute them; the latter, however, Lord Sydenham considered most desirable to encourage them to do. The Act of 1854 still further facilitated the commutation of these dues.

19. *Lord Sydenham's Visit to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.*—In July, the Governor General went to Nova Scotia and New Brunswick to confer with the local authorities on some political questions of importance. He returned to Canada in about a month, and then made a gratifying tour in Upper and Lower Canada. His reception everywhere throughout the country was most loyal and enthusiastic. It had the effect of softening down many political asperities, and of more firmly uniting all classes of the people together.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who drafted the Union Act of 1840? On what day did it come into effect? For what was that day noted? What Acts of incorporation were granted? What official visits did Lord Sydenham make?

## CHAPTER XVII.

### SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, THIRD PERIOD: FROM THE UNION OF THE PROVINCES IN 1840 UNTIL 1866.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Union of the Provinces—Administration of Lord Sydenham—of Sir Charles Bagot—of Lord Metcalfe—of Lord Elgin—of Sir Edmund Head—of Lord Monck (in part).*

1. *The Act of Union of the Two Canadas.*—The new constitution of United Canada, as embraced in the Act of Union, embodied several features not heretofore introduced into colonial constitutions. The most important of these features was *first*: the institution of "responsible government," that is, a government controlled by colonial ministers of the crown, having seats in the Legislature, and responsible to it for their official acts, and for their advice to the Governor-General; and *secondly*: the concession to the House of Assembly of complete control over the revenue in all its branches, and the supervision of the entire expenditure of the country. Thus were the demands of one great party granted; while to meet the views of the other party, guards and checks were then interposed, which since that time have been gradually relaxed.

2. *Lord Sydenham's Administration.*—The year 1841 was an eventful one for Canada. In that year the double system of lieutenant-governors and legislatures ceased; and Lord Sydenham became sole representative of the Queen in Canada. The elections to the new legislature took place in March; and the first United Parliament of the province was opened with imposing ceremonies, at Kingston, Upper Canada, in June, 1841. During that memorable session, the foundation of many of our important civil institutions was laid, especially

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XVII. What were the peculiar features of the Act of Union? How were the views of the two great parties met? For what is the year 1841 chiefly noted?



those relating to the municipal system, popular education, the customs, currency, &c. Another valuable measure was passed relating to the management of the public works of the province,—which had hitherto been constructed, either by private irresponsible companies, or by contracts issued by separate departments of the government. At Lord Sydenham's suggestion, the numerous acts relating to public improvements were consolidated, and a Board of Public Works, with a cabinet minister at its head, created. In order to enable this board to carry on to completion some newly projected public works, and to consolidate the debt already incurred for them, £1,500,000 sterling was, upon the Governor General's recommendation, raised in England on the credit of the province. The session at length terminated in September, under most melancholy circumstances, occasioned by the unexpected death of Lord Sydenham, the Governor-General, who died from the effects of a fall from his horse, on the 19th of the month.

3. *Administration of Sir Charles Bagot,\** 1841–42.—The regret for the death of Lord Sydenham was universal throughout Canada. By his energy and wisdom he had rescued Canadian politics from the debasement of personalities and strife, and elevated them to the dignity of statesmanship. He had opened up new fields for provincial ambition, in the prosecution of comprehensive schemes of public improvements, public education, finance, trade, and commerce. Under such circumstances his successor, Sir Charles Bagot, arrived. The new Governor General had, however, many difficulties to contend with.

\* Sir Charles Bagot was born in England in 1781. He became Under Foreign Secretary of State in 1808. He was successively Ambassador at Paris, Washington, St. Petersburg, The Hague, and Vienna. He became Governor-General of Canada in 1842. During his administration the chiefs of the reform party first held office as ministers of the Crown, under the new system of responsible government. Many useful measures were passed by the Legislature. He died in 1848, much regretted, aged 63.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal measures which were passed in 1841? How public improvements promoted? What sad event occurred? How did Lord Sydenham improve political discussion? Sketch Sir C. Bagot.

CHAP.

During  
political  
of the  
He ne  
counc  
ascend  
ever,  
when

4.

Metca  
and in  
mitiga  
govern  
betwe  
resign  
the Cr  
admin  
to par  
that t  
to mex  
of the  
Govern  
an app  
was su  
afterw  
his fac  
return  
the th  
while i

\* Sir  
office of  
Govern  
the disc  
retired

QUES  
Who su  
What i

During his administration the smouldering embers of former political strifes were frequently fanned into a flame; and many of the fierce old party rivalries and passions were aroused. He nevertheless acted with great prudence, and called to his councils the chiefs of the reform party, which was then in the ascendant in the legislature. His health having failed, however, he resigned his office, and was about to return to England, when he died at Kingston in May, 1843.

4. *Administration of Lord Metcalfe,\* 1843-5.*—Sir Charles Metcalfe, who had distinguished himself as Governor in India and in Jamaica, succeeded Sir Charles Bagot. His endeavour to mitigate what he felt to be the evil to the country of mere party government, and appointments to office, led to a difference between himself and the members of his cabinet, and they resigned. They maintained that appointments to office under the Crown should be made chiefly with a view to strengthen the administration, and upon the advice of ministers responsible to parliament. Sir Charles, on the other hand, maintained that the patronage of the Crown should be dispensed according to merit, irrespective of party objects, and for the sole benefit of the country. Other points of difference arose between the Governor and his cabinet, which widened the breach. On an appeal being made to the country, the policy of Sir Charles was sustained by a majority of the electors, and he was shortly afterwards raised to the peerage, as Baron Metcalfe. A cancer in his face soon afterwards compelled him to resign his office and return to England, where, after a painful illness, he died—being the third Governor in succession who fell a victim to disease while in office. In 1844, the Government removed to Montreal.

\* Sir Charles Metcalfe was born in England in 1785, and, having held the office of governor in India and Jamaica, succeeded Sir Charles Bagot as Governor-General of Canada in 1843. He was firm and conscientious in the discharge of his duty, and in his administration of government. He retired from Canada in 1845, and died in England in 1846, aged 61 years.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the administration of Sir Charles Bagot. Who succeeded him? Give a sketch of his administration and of his career. What is said of the death of three governors in Canada in succession?

5. *The Administration of the Earl of Elgin.*\*—When ill health compelled Lord Metcalfe to retire, Gen. Lord Cathcart, Commander of the Forces in British North America, assumed the reins of government as Governor-General, until the arrival of the Earl of Elgin and Kincardine early in 1847. Shortly after Lord Elgin's arrival, the famine and fever, which had spread sad desolation in Ireland and Scotland, drove multitudes to seek a home in Canada. They brought fever and death with them; and for a time pestilence was abroad in the land. Measures were taken to provide for this calamity, and for the large influx of emigrants. These measures, under God's blessing, were successful, and in some degree mitigated the evil.—Public attention having for a time been devoted to this subject, was soon again directed to the political state of the country. Lord Elgin, in the discharge of the duties of his high office exhibited a comprehensiveness of mind and a singleness of purpose which at once gave dignity to his administration, and divested the settlement of the various questions, then agitating the public mind, of much of that petty bitterness and strife which had entered so largely into the discussion of most of the political questions of the day. Under his auspices, responsible government was fully carried out, and every reasonable cause of complaint removed. Rarely had a Governor so identified

\* The Right Honourable James, Earl of Elgin and Kincardine, was born in London in 1811. He was elected a Member of the Imperial Parliament in 1841; appointed Governor of Jamaica from 1842 to 1846; Governor-General of Canada, from 1847 to 1854; laid the corner-stone of the Upper Canada Normal School, in 1851; effected a treaty of commercial reciprocity with the United States, in 1854; was appointed envoy extraordinary to China in 1857, and to Japan in 1858. Returning to England, he became a member of Lord Palmerston's Administration, as Postmaster General, in 1859. He was again appointed Her Majesty's special Commissioner to China in 1860; and, in 1861, he was made Viceroy of India. After a comparatively short life of great public usefulness, he died in northern India, in 1863, universally regretted, aged only 52 years.

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded Lord Metcalfe? Under what circumstances did Lord Elgin arrive in Canada? What was done to avert the scourge from Canada? What is said of Lord Elgin's qualifications? Sketch his career.

himself  
effectu  
tentme  
through  
which  
House  
with t  
import  
educat  
lature.  
of par  
mony,  
former  
issued  
the reb  
or from  
acted u  
to bear  
losses,

\* As I  
party in

(1.) Th  
and was  
length o  
in Uppe  
came an  
ney-Gen  
1854, cre  
guished  
1858, age

(2.) Th  
ville, Lo  
disting  
Attorney  
Justice  
Kingdon

QUEST  
measures  
that yo

ill health  
art, Com-  
sumed the  
arrival of  
orly after  
spread sad  
to seek a  
them; and  
ures were  
influx of  
were suc-  
attention  
oon again  
ord Elgin,  
exhibited  
of purpose  
d divested  
tating the  
and strife  
most of the  
responsible  
able cause  
identified

ne, was born  
l Parliament  
; Governor-  
of the Upper  
cial recipro-  
extraordinary  
England, he  
Postmaster  
special Com-  
roy of India.  
e, he died in  
ears.

ircumstances  
scourge from  
h his career.

himself with the interests of Canada, or sought so ably and effectually to promote them. The consequence was that contentment, peace, and prosperity became almost universal throughout Canada. A general election took place in 1848, which gave a large preponderance to the reform party in the new House of Assembly. Lord Elgin at once surrounded himself with the chiefs of that party;\* and measures of the greatest importance to the country, relative to the finances, post-office, education, and public improvements, were passed by the Legislature. One measure, however, produced a sudden ebullition of party violence, which for a time disturbed the general harmony, and brought disgrace upon the province. In 1845, a former ministry, under Lord Cathcart's administration, had issued a commission to enquire into the losses sustained during the rebellion by individuals, either through military necessity or from lawlessness, in 1837-8. Their report was but partially acted upon at the time; but so great was the pressure brought to bear upon the government by parties who had suffered these losses, that in 1849 the matter came up before the Governor

\* As Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine were the chiefs of the reform party in this cabinet, we give a short biographical sketch of each:

(1.) The Honourable Robert Baldwin, C.B., was born in Toronto in 1804, and was the son of the late Hon. Dr. William Warren Baldwin. For a length of time Mr. Baldwin was a prominent leader of the liberal party in Upper Canada. He was first elected to the Legislature in 1829; became an Executive Councillor in 1836; Solicitor-General in 1840; Attorney-General, and Joint Premier of Canada, in 1842 and 1848. He was, in 1854, created by the Queen a Civil Commander of the Bath, for distinguished public services. He retired from public life in 1851; and died in 1858, aged 54 years.

(2.) The Honourable Sir Louis Hypolite Lafontaine was born in Boucherville, Lower Canada, in 1807. For many years he was an M.P., and a distinguished political leader in Lower Canada. He was appointed Attorney-General and Joint Premier of Canada, in 1842 and 1848; Chief Justice of Lower Canada in 1853; and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom, in 1854. He died in 1864, aged 57 years.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine. What measures were passed in 1849? What circumstances led to the outburst that year? What loss did the province sustain? How did Lord Elgin act?

in Council, and subsequently before the legislature for final settlement. The measure proposed being thought too indiscriminate and liberal by the party in opposition to the government, warm discussions took place in the House, and an agitation on the subject commenced throughout the country. The measure, however, passed both houses, and was assented to by Lord Elgin in the Queen's name. No sooner had he done so than he was assailed in the streets of Montreal—the seat of government being in that city since 1844—and as a crowning act of violence, the Houses of Parliament were set fire to, and they, with their valuable library, were almost totally destroyed. Besides the irreparable loss of the library and of the public records, a fatal injury was inflicted upon the good name and public credit of the country, and popular violence for a time triumphed. The seat of government was at once removed to Toronto. In consequence of this ebullition, Lord Elgin tendered his resignation; but the Queen declined to accept it, and raised him a step in the peerage. After a time tranquillity returned; and with it the unfeigned respect of the great mass of the people for Lord Elgin, for the courage and ability which he had displayed during an eventful crisis in their history. In 1850 a free banking law was passed. In 1851 a uniform postage rate of five cents on each letter transmitted throughout the province was adopted. In the same year, Lord Elgin laid the corner-stone of the Upper Canada Normal School; and personally throughout the period of his term of office, he promoted the success of the system of Public Instruction in Upper and Lower Canada, and aided in its administration by his graceful eloquence. In 1853 the members of the House of Assembly were increased from 84 to 130. When Lord Elgin left Canada, in 1854, the Province again enjoyed great peace and prosperity. Before leaving, he procured the passage of the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States—which was, however, abrogated

**QUESTIONS.**—How did this outburst affect Lord Elgin? Was he sustained by the Queen? What is said of his promotion of education? Mention the closing acts of his career. Give a sketch Mr. Hincks's career.

by the  
West  
Allan  
lines,  
hibiti  
most  
variet  
her v  
and  
goods

6. 4

not ec  
admin  
in Can  
Clergy  
Tenur  
the Gr  
did V  
In 185  
the Gr  
Dublin  
Cham  
running  
were  
Settler  
Canad  
civil w

\* The  
late Re  
Exam  
M.P.;  
project  
Chief o  
In 1862

QUEST  
tration  
interest



by that country in 1866. During his administration the Great Western and Grand Trunk Railways (projected chiefly by Sir Allan MacNab and the Hon. Mr. Hincks\*), with some branch lines, were commenced. At the Great International Exhibition, which was held in London in 1851, Canada made a most favourable impression on the British public, both by the variety and extent of the samples which were there shown of her valuable natural resources, and by the mechanical skill and enterprise which were apparent in the manufactured goods which were sent by the province to that exhibition.

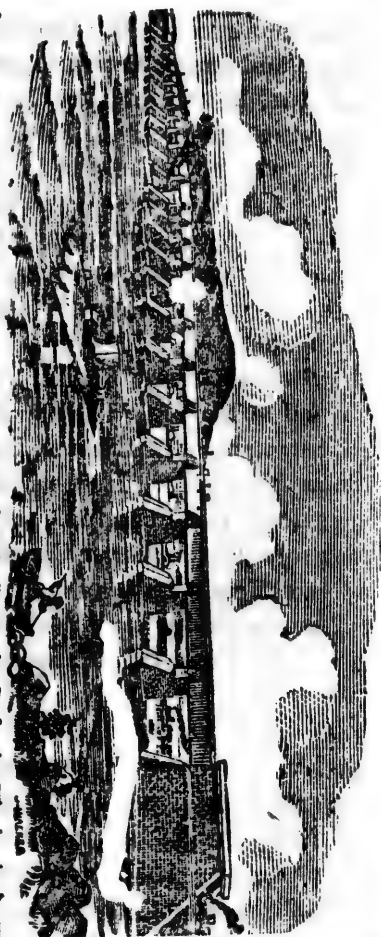
6. *Administration of Sir Edmund Head, 1854–60.*—Although not equal to Lord Elgin as an able and popular Governor, the administration of Sir Edmund Head has been a memorable one in Canadian annals. It was noted for the final settlement of the Clergy Reserve question in Upper Canada, and of the Seigniorial Tenure question in Lower Canada; also for the completion of the Grand Trunk Railway to Rivière du Loup, and of its splendid Victoria Bridge over the St. Lawrence river at Montreal. In 1855, 1861 and 1865 Canada again distinguished herself in the Great International Exhibitions held in Paris, London and Dublin. In 1856, the Legislative Council was made an Elective Chamber. In the same year a Canadian line of ocean steamers, running to Ireland and England, was established; and efforts were made to open up communication with the Red River Settlement. In 1857 a severe commercial crisis visited Canada, from which she has not yet recovered, and which the civil war in the United States has unusually protracted. In

\* The Honourable Francis Hincks, C.B., fifth and youngest son of the late Rev. Dr. Hincks, of Belfast, Ireland. He established the *Toronto Examiner* newspaper in 1839, and the *Montreal Pilot* in 1844. He was an M.P.; Inspector General of Public Accounts, and Premier of Canada; projected the Grand Trunk Railway; and was appointed Governor-in-Chief of the Windward Islands in 1855, and of British Guiana in 1861. In 1862 he was created by the Queen a Civil Commander of the Bath.

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded Lord Elgin? What is said of his administration? For what was it noted? Mention the principal matters of public interest. What is said of the Exhibition? What occurred from 1855–60?



1853 the decimal system of currency, with appropriate silver and copper coins, was introduced. In the same year the 100th Regiment was raised in Canada and sent to England, in addition to large subscriptions and a Legislative grant of \$30,000 towards the Patriotic (Crimean) Fund. In 1858, after repeated attempts to fix upon a permanent seat of government for Canada, the legislature requested the Queen to select a suitable site. Her Majesty accordingly fixed upon Ottawa; and contracts were soon given out for the erection of the necessary public buildings there. In 1859-60 the statute law of Upper and Lower Canada was consolidated by able commissioners appointed for that purpose. The handsome buildings for the University of Toronto and University College were also finished and occupied in 1858-60. The



The Victoria Tubular Railway Bridge from St. Lambert.

closing period of Sir Edmund's administration was rendered still more memorable by a visit to Canada and the other British North American provinces, of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales, in 1860. The Prince met with an enthusiastic reception wherever he went;

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of the events which occurred in 1858-60? Mention the most noted ones. What was the object of the visit of the Prince of Wales to the provinces in 1860? How was he received wherever he went.

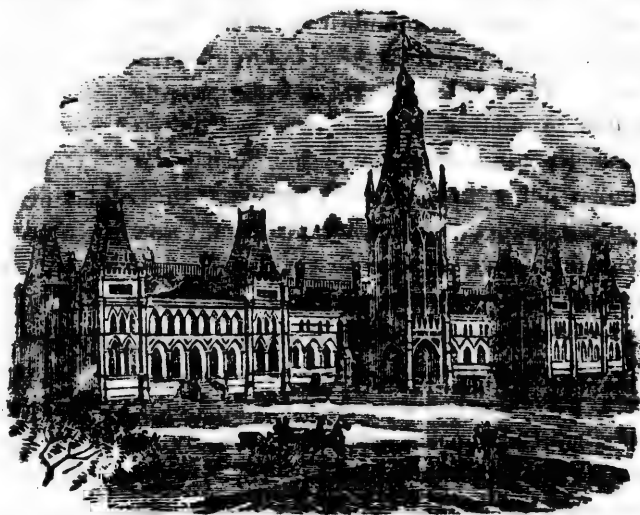
CHAP

and  
moth  
and  
inaug

stone  
His R  
towed  
7. A  
Sir Ed  
succee  
South  
greatly  
was cl  
South  
Trent  
ment,

QUES  
What is  
Canada

and his presence, as the special representative of his august mother, the Queen, evoked feelings of the warmest affection and loyalty for Her Majesty. While in Canada the Prince inaugurated the Victoria Railway Bridge, and laid the corner-



The Parliament Buildings at Ottawa. Upper Canada.

stone of the Parliament Buildings at Ottawa. The visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales was, in 1861, followed by a brief one from his brother, Prince Alfred.

7. *Administration of Lord Monck.*—On the retirement of Sir Edmund Head, Lord Viscount Monck was appointed to succeed him. The civil war between the Northern and Southern States of America, which commenced in 1861, had greatly deranged trade. At first, public sympathy in Canada was chiefly enlisted with the North in its contest with the South; but the unwarrantable seizure of the British steamer *Trent* by a Federal admiral, and its justification by his government, as well as the denunciation of England by American

---

QUESTIONS.—What did the Prince do? Who succeeded Sir E. Head? What is said of the American civil war? What was the state of feeling in Canada in regard to it? How did the seizure of the steamer *Trent* affect it?

public speakers and writers, first checked the current of sympathy in Canada for the North. As the war progressed, a feeling of respect for the Southerners grew up, on account of their heroic bravery, and the wonderful skill and prowess of their leaders, Generals Lee, "Stonewall" Jackson, and Beauregard, in so long resisting the Northern armies. This admiration for Southern bravery, (although it did not weaken the efforts which were made both in England and in these provinces to maintain an attitude of neutrality in the war) was still very much lessened by the attempts made by southern agents in Canada to compromise her neutrality. To prevent the raids into the States on our borders by Southerners from Canada, volunteers were sent on active service to the frontier.—The cowardly assassination of Mr. Lincoln, the American President, at Ford's Theatre, in Washington, on Good Friday night, 1865, evoked heartfelt sympathy in all the British provinces. The day of his funeral was observed as a day of mourning throughout the whole of British America.—In 1865, the civil code of Lower Canada (which was commenced in 1860) was completed by commissioners appointed for that purpose, and reduced to a statutory enactment. During the Fenian excitement in 1865-6, volunteers were again sent to the frontier to prevent the irruption into Canada of the misguided Fenians; and prompt measures were taken by the governments of the various provinces to meet the emergency should the Fenians venture to desecrate the free soil of any one of them. About 20,000 volunteers were in a few days enrolled for active service in the provinces, and nobly did they respond to the call of duty.

8. *Confederation*.—In 1864, the feeling of antagonism in Parliament between U. and L. Canada came to a crisis. In the successive elections which had been held during the preceding years, it was found that the hostile majority from either Province in the legislature was increased rather than diminished.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—What fluctuations did the state of feeling in Canada in regard to the war undergo? How were they indicated? What is said of neutrality; of Mr. Lincoln; of the volunteers; and of Confed. tion!

t of sym-  
pressed, a  
ccount of  
ss of their  
auregard,  
ration for  
rts which  
maintain  
ry much  
Canada to  
into the  
olunteers  
cowardly  
at Ford's  
5, evoked  
he day of  
ghout the  
of Lower  
pleted by  
duced to  
ement in  
o prevent  
ans; and  
e various  
s venture  
ut 20,000  
ce in the  
uty.  
onism in  
s. In the  
preceding  
ther Pro  
inished.

A project of confederation, designed to embrace the whole of the provinces of British North America, was therefore set on foot. By this scheme it is proposed to leave to each province the management of its own local affairs; while to a general government it is designed to leave matters common to all. Should this project take effect, it is intended to construct an Intercolonial Railway, connecting Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia directly with the ocean, so as to give to these provinces a winter outlet for their commerce. It is expected, that, should this principle of confederation be applied to the various British North American Provinces, a great impetus will be given to internal trade and foreign commerce, and a new era of social and political prosperity will dawn upon these colonies. As in 1841, when the union of Upper and Lower Canada was consummated, so now, it is hoped that the bitter personalities and strife of mere local politics will give place to a more enlarged and enlightened statesmanship; and our public men will feel that, as Canada will then form part of a great confederation, their policy and acts must be dictated by a higher and more dignified national standard than that which has yet been attained in any of the provinces.

9. *Governors of Canada.*—The following are the names of the Governors of Canada since its discovery :

1. <i>New France.</i>			
Jean François de la Roque,		Chevalier de Saffray Mésy. . . . .	1668
Sieur de Roberval, Vice Roi. 1540		Alexandre de Provville Tracy..	1668
Marquis de la Roche, do. do... 1598		Chevalier de Courcelles.....	1665
2. <i>Canada—Royal Government Es-</i>		Count de Frontenac. 1772 and 1689	
<i>tablished.</i>		Sieur de la Barre.....	1682
Samuel de Champlain, Viceroy 1612		Marquis de Denonville.....	1685
Marc Antoine de Bras de fer de		Chevalier de Callières.....	1689
Chateaufort ..... 1685		Marquis de Vaudreuil.....	1708
Chevalier de Montmagny ..... 1636		Marquis de Beauharnois.....	1726
Chevalier d'Ailleboust de Cou-		Count de Galissonnière.....	1747
longe, 1648 and 1657		Marquis de la Jonquière.....	1749
Jean de Lauzon..... 1651		Marquis du Quesné de Menne-	
Charles de Lauson Charny.... 1656		ville.....	1752
Viscount de Voyer d'Argenson 1658		Marquis de Vaudreuil Cavagnal 1755	
Baron du Bois d'Avaugour.... 1661		3. <i>Province of Quebec.</i>	
		Gen. James Murray, Gov. Gen. 1763	

Canada in  
it is said of  
and 'lon!

QUESTIONS.—What political project has been set on foot in Canada? Explain it. What is this scheme designed to accomplish? How is it expected to influence public prosperity, and the conduct of our public men?

Paulus E. Irving, Esq., Presdt. 1766  
 Gen. Sir Guy Carleton, (Lord  
 Dorchester,) Governor-Gen-  
 eral. .... 1766, 1774, 1776, and 1793  
 Hector T. Cramahé, President. 1770  
 Gen. Frederick Haldimand.... 1778  
 Henry Hamilton, Lieut. Gov.. 1774  
 Henry Hope, Esq., do. .... 1775

#### 4. Lower Canada.

Colonel Clarke, Lieut. Gov.... 1791  
 Gen. Robert Prescott..... 1796  
 Sir R. S. Milnes..... 1799  
 Hon. Thos. Dunn, Pres. 1806 and 1811  
 Sir J. H. Craig..... 1807  
 Sir George Prevost..... 1811  
 Sir G. Drummond, Administ.. 1815  
 Gen. John Wilson, Administ.. 1816  
 Sir J. Coape Sherbrooke..... 1816  
 Duke of Richmond..... 1818  
 Sir James Monk, President... 1819  
 Sir Peregrine Maitland..... 1820  
 Earl of Dalhousie..... 1825  
 Sir F. N. Burton, Lieut. Gov.. 1824  
 Sir James Kempt, Administrat. 1828  
 Lord Aylmer, Administrator.. 1837  
 Earl of Gosford..... 1835  
 Sir J. Colborne, (Lord Seaton) 1838  
 Earl of Durham..... 1838  
 C. Poulett Thompson, (Lord  
 Sydenham)..... 1839

#### 5. Upper Canada.

Col. J. G. Simcoe, Lieut. Gov. 1792  
 Hon. Peter Russell, President. 1792  
 General Peter Hunter..... 1799  
 Hon. Alexander Grant, Pres.. 1806  
 Hon. Francis Gore.... 1806 and 1816  
 Sir Isaac Brock, President.... 1811  
 Sir R. Halo Sheaffe, President. 1813  
 Baron F. de Rottenburg, Pres. 1813  
 Sir Gordon Drummond..... 1813  
 Sir George Murray..... 1816  
 Sir Frederick P. Robinson.... 1815  
 Hon. Sam. Smith, Adm. 1817 & 1820  
 Sir Peregrine Maitland 1818 and 1820  
 Sir J. Colborne, (Lord Seaton).. 1823  
 Sir Francis B. Head..... 1836  
 Sir George Arthur..... 1838

#### 6. Province of Canada.

Baron Sydenham and Toronto. 1841  
 Gen. Sir R. Jackson, Admin.. 1841  
 Sir Charles Bagot..... 1842  
 Sir Charles (Baron) Metcalfe.. 1843  
 Earl Cathcart..... 1845  
 Earl of Elgin and Kincardine.. 1847  
 Sir Edmund W. Head 1854 and 1857  
 Gen. Sir William Eyre, Adm.. 1857  
 Lord Viscount Monck. 1861 and 1866  
 Gen. Sir John Michel, Adm... 1866

## PART IV.

### CHAPTER XVIII.

#### SKETCH OF THE POLITICAL CONSTITUTION, &c., OF CANADA.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*The Constitution—Common Law—Magna Charta and various  
 Ancient and Modern Statutes—Canadian Acts—Civil Gov-  
 ernment—Courts of Law.*

1. *Elements of the Constitution.*—The simplest form of gov-  
 ernment, originally instituted in the world by God himself,  
 when mankind had increased into families and tribes, was  
 Patriarchal. Afterwards among the Israelites, from the time  
 of Moses to that of Samuel, the form of government was Theo-  
 cratic,—that is, JEHOVAH himself was the supreme Ruler and

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the names of the most distinguished French and  
 English Governors of Upper and of Lower Canada given in the table. To  
 what does Part IV relate? Mention the principal subjects of Chap. XVIII.



Gov. 1792  
 ment. 1792  
 ..... 1799  
 rest.. 1806  
 and 1815  
 t.... 1811  
 dent. 1813  
 Pres. 1813  
 ..... 1818  
 ..... 1815  
 ..... 1815  
 1817 & 1820  
 8 and 1820  
 on).. 1828  
 ..... 1836  
 ..... 1838

da.

onto. 1841  
 in.. 1841  
 ..... 1842  
 life.. 1843  
 ..... 1845  
 ine.. 1847  
 and 1857  
 im.. 1857  
 and 1866  
 im.. 1865

NADA.

various  
vil Gov-

of gov.  
 himself,  
 es, was  
 he time  
 s Theo  
 ler and

er and  
 abe. To  
 p. I. III.

**Lawgiver.** After a time the Israelites "desired a king," and God granted their request. Since then, three pure unmixed forms of government have existed in the world, viz., the Regal, Patrician, and Republican. The Patrician having now ceased to exist, there are but two principal forms of government, the Regal or Monarchical, and the Republican or Democratic. In Canada, the system of government is happily monarchical, in its most popular form. The Queen is represented by a Governor-General. The Constitution is founded upon that of England. In it are incorporated the Common Law of England, and those great national compacts which have been entered into from time to time, modified as they have been by Acts of the Imperial and Canadian Parliaments.

2. *The Constitution of England* (after which ours is modelled) comprehends (says Lord Somers) the whole body of laws by which the people are governed, and to which, through their representatives in Parliament, every individual is presumptively held to have assented. This assemblage of laws (says Lord Bolingbroke) is distinguished from the term government in this respect,—that the constitution is the rule by which the sovereign ought to govern at all times; and the government is that machinery by which he does govern at any particular time.

#### I. THE COMMON LAW OF ENGLAND.

3. *The Common Law of England* is an ancient collection of unwritten maxims and customs (*leges non scriptæ*), of British, Saxon, and Danish origin, which have prevailed in England from time immemorial.

#### II. NATIONAL AND FUNDAMENTAL COMPACTS.

4. *Magna Charta*, or the Great Charter, was chiefly derived from old Saxon charters, as continued by Henry I in 1100. It was formally signed by King John, at Runnymede, near Windsor, in 1215, and finally confirmed by Henry III, in 1224. It secures to us personal freedom, a constitutional form of government, trial by jury, free egress to and from the kingdom, and equitable and speedy justice.

5. *The Charta de Foresta*, or Charter of the Forests, was founded upon the *Magna Charta* of King John, and was granted

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the form of government first instituted? Give a sketch of the progress of human government. Sketch the constitution of England. What is the *Common Law* of England? Describe *Magna Charta*.



by King Henry III, in 1217. It abolished the royal privilege of hunting all over the kingdom, and restored to the lawful owners their woods and forests.

6. *Confirmatio Chartarum*, or Confirmation of the Great Charter (which was then made common law), and the Charter of the Forest, made by Edward I in 1297. In the same year a statute was passed, forbidding the levying of taxes without the consent of Parliament.

7. *The Statute of Treasons*, granted by Edward III in 1350, at the request of Parliament, defined treason, and put an end to judicial doubt or caprice in the matter. Treason was still more clearly defined in the Act 36 George III, chapter 7.

8. *The Petition of Right*, a parliamentary declaration against the exaction of forced loans to the King and the billeting of soldiers on private persons, was assented to by Charles I in 1627.

9. *The Habeas Corpus Act* (founded on the old Common Law of England) was passed in the reign of Charles II, in 1679. It compels persons in charge of a prisoner to bring his body and warrant of commitment before a judge, within a specified time, so as to inquire into the legality of his arrest. The judge's writ of habeas corpus may be demanded as a right, and cannot be refused, under penalty of a fine. The Act can only be suspended by authority of Parliament, and then but for a short time, when public safety demands it. It has only been suspended sixteen times in various parts of England, Ireland, and Scotland since 1689. [In consequence of a decision by the Upper Canada Court of Common Pleas, in 1861, on a writ of *habeas corpus* issued by one of the Superior Courts in England, in the case of John Anderson, a fugitive slave from Missouri, the British Parliament passed an Act, in 1862, declaring that no writ of *habeas corpus* should again issue in England into any British colony, in which a court was established having authority to grant such a writ.]

10. *The Declaration and Bill of Rights* was based upon the Petition of Right (see above), obtained by Parliament from Charles I, in 1627. This Bill was passed in the first year of the reign of William and Mary,—1689. It declared the rights and liberties of the subject; and settled the succession to the crown, from the time of the English revolution, in 1688.

11. *Other Acts*.—The other more important Acts passed since

---

QUESTIONS.—Explain *Charta de Foresta*. What is *Confirmatio Chartarum*? Describe the *Statute of Treasons*. What is the *Petition of Right*? Explain the *Habeas Corpus Act*; also the *Declaration and Bill of Rights*?

privilege  
lawful

Great  
and the  
In the  
of taxes

in 1350,  
an end  
as still  
7.

against  
ting of  
Charles J

common  
in 1679.

is body  
pecified  
The  
right,  
ct can  
but for  
ly been  
reland,  
sion by  
on a  
urts in  
e from  
declar-  
in Eng-  
lished

on the  
t from  
year of  
rights  
to the

id since

Charita-  
Right;  
Rights?

1688, related to religious toleration; to the re-settlement of the succession to the Crown (also limiting the Royal prerogative); the independence of the Judges and of Parliament; the freedom of the Press; the abolition of Slavery; and Catholic Emancipation. These Acts form part of our Canadian Constitution, as well as the following:

### III. IMPERIAL TREATY AND ACTS RELATING TO CANADA:

12. *The Treaty of Paris*, in 1763, ceded Canada to the Crown of England. This treaty secured to the people of Lower Canada the free exercise of their religion, laws, and institutions. (In 1763, the English criminal laws were introduced into Canada by royal proclamation; but, by the—

13. *Quebec Act of 1774*, this proclamation was annulled, and the ancient *Coutume de Paris* (law and custom of Paris) restored in civil matters. By this Act, the English criminal law was perpetuated, and a supreme Legislative Council established.

14. *The Constitutional Act of 1791* divided the Province into Upper and Lower Canada; introduced the representative system of government. Under its authority, the Upper Canada Parliament introduced the English criminal law and trial by jury in 1792. Another Act set apart the Clergy Reserve lands.

15. *The Union Act of 1840* united the Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada into one Province, under one government. A seal for the united province, like that in the engraving, was then adopted.



### IV. CANADIAN ACTS.

16. *The Representation Act*, the *Franchise Act*, and the *Independence of Parliament Act*, were passed in 1853.

QUESTIONS.—What Acts have been passed since 1688? Mention the object of the Treaty of Paris. What Acts have been passed by the Imperial Parliament relating to Canada? What Canadian Acts have been passed?

17. *The Legislative Council* was made elective in 1856.

18. *The Seigniorial Tenure* was abolished in Lower Canada, and the proceeds of the Clergy Reserve Lands of Upper Canada applied to municipal purposes, in 1855-7.

19. *Municipal Institutions* were introduced into Upper Canada in 1841, and into Lower Canada in 1847-55.

20. *Systems of Education* were devised for Upper and Lower Canada, in 1841-6.

21. *The Law of Primogeniture*, limiting the succession of property to the eldest son, in Upper and Lower Canada, was repealed in 1851.

#### V. CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

22. *The Executive Government of Canada* consists of a Representative of Her Majesty the Queen, styled His Excellency the Governor-General of Canada, aided by a Cabinet, or Executive Council, comprising twelve Heads of Departments, who, by virtue of their office, have the title of Honourable. They are: 1. President of Committees of the Executive Council; 2. Attorney-General for Upper Canada; 3. Attorney-General for Lower Canada; 4. Minister of Finance; 5. Commissioner of Crown Lands; 6. Secretary of the Province; 7. Commissioner of Public Works; 8. Postmaster-General; 9. Receiver-General of the Public Revenue; 10. Minister of Agriculture; 11. Solicitor-General East; 12. Solicitor-General West. (The office of Minister of Militia is generally held by the Premier, but may for convenience be held by any member of the Cabinet.) The Members of the Cabinet are appointed by the Governor, and hold office (unless removed) so long as they can retain the confidence and support of the Legislature, in which they must hold seats. [In this respect our system differs from the American. In the United States, the Members of the Cabinet, appointed by the President, hold office for four years, and are independent of Congress. They cannot be changed during the President's four years' tenure of office, except by his consent—no matter how obnoxious may be the measures of his government, or how distasteful may be its policy.]

23. *The Parliament, or Legislature*, consists of three branches: 1. The Queen (represented by the Governor); 2. The Legislative Council; and 3. The House of Assem-

---

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of the Legislative Council—Seigniorial Tenure—Municipal Institutions—Education—Law of Primogeniture—Executive Government? How does the Executive differ from the American system?

856.  
Canada,  
Canada  
Upper  
Lower  
cession of  
Canada, was

ists of a  
is Excel-  
Cabinet,  
of Depart-  
of Hon-  
the Execu-  
a; 3. At-  
Finance;  
the Pro-  
master-  
10. Min-  
12. Soli-  
a is gen-  
be held  
the Cabi-  
e (unless  
support  
[In this  
e United  
the Presi-  
nt of Con-  
nt's four  
tter how  
r, or how

of three  
vernor);  
Assem-

dial Tenure  
Executive  
n system?

bly. The consent of each branch is necessary before a bill can become law. The Parliament of England, from which ours is modelled (from the French word *parlement*, discourse), derives its origin from the Saxon general assemblies, called *Wittenagemot*. The first summons to Parliament in England by writ, which is on record, was directed to the Bishop of Salisbury, in the reign of King John, in 1205. The power and jurisdiction of the Parliament in England have been declared to be "so transcendent and absolute that it cannot be confined, either for causes or persons, within any bounds. It hath sovereign and uncontrollable authority in making and repealing laws."

24. *The Governor-General* is appointed by the Queen, and generally holds office for six years. He is guided by general or special instructions from the Queen's ministers, as well as by law and usage. He reports on public matters in the Colony, from time to time, by despatches to the Imperial Government addressed to the Secretary of State for the Colonies. He represents the Queen, and is the chief executive officer of the government. He grants marriage licenses, and is commander-in-chief of the militia. He assembles, prorogues, and dissolves Parliament, and assents to all unreserved bills passed by it, previous to their becoming law. Reserved bills await Her Majesty's pleasure; and any law can be disallowed by the Queen within two years from the date of its passing.

25. *The Legislative Council* corresponds to the House of Lords in England, or to the Senate of Congress in the United States. The members were formerly appointed by the Crown for life; but they are now elected for eight years—each electoral district returning one member. The old members retain their seats for life, unless disqualified. The Speaker is elected from among the members of the House, at the beginning of each Parliament. The Council can originate any bill but a money one. It may also amend or reject any bill passed by the Assembly. It cannot amend but may reject a money bill. It can be dissolved by the Governor. There are forty-eight electoral divisions—twenty-four in each Province.

26. *The House of Assembly* corresponds to the House of Commons in England, and to the House of Representatives in the United States. It consists of 130 members (65 from Lower Canada and 65 from Upper Canada), elected by freeholders

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe the functions and origin of Parliament. What is said of the Governor-General? How is the Legislative Council constituted? What powers does it possess? What is said of the House of Assembly?

and householders in counties, cities, and towns. The Speaker is elected by the House, for each parliamentary term of four years. This branch can originate any bill. It has the exclusive control of the revenue and expenditure of the Province. The forms of procedure in both branches of the Legislature are similar to those in use in the Imperial Parliament.

#### VI. JUDICIARY.\*

27. *The Superior Courts of Upper Canada* are: 1. *Queen's Bench*, presided over by a Chief Justice and two Puisné Judges. This is the highest Common Law Court; it has an almost exclusive authority in criminal matters, and can compel all inferior courts and public officers to perform acts required of them. 2. *Chancery*, presided over by a Chancellor and two Vice-Chancellors. It is a Court of Equity, and is designed to supply, in civil matters, the deficiencies of other courts, either in their machinery or in their rigid adherence to peculiar forms. 3. *Common Pleas*, presided over by a Chief Justice and two Puisné Judges, has more special jurisdiction between subject and subject. The Judges of the Queen's Bench and Common Pleas hold the Courts of Assize, in the various counties, twice a year. 4. *Error and Appeal*, presided over by the Chief Justice of Upper Canada, and is composed of all the Superior Judges. Its name and composition indicate its jurisdiction and authority. (See *Habeas Corpus Act*, on page 204.)

28. *The other Courts* are: 1. *Heir and Devisee*, to determine claims of land from the Crown. 2. *Probate and Surrogate*, to give legal effect to wills and to the administration of estates. 3. *County Courts*, with equity powers, to try all civil cases under \$200 and \$400. 4. *Courts of Quarter Sessions*, to try cases of larceny and other petty offences. 5. *Recorders' Courts* are Quarter Sessions for cities. 6. *Division Courts* try summarily, in divisions of counties, small civil cases. 7. *Insolvent Debtors' Courts*, held by County Judges.

29. *The Superior Courts of Lower Canada* are: 1. The *Queen's Bench*, which has one Chief Justice and four Puisné

\* The chief features in the original constitution of the Superior Courts of Law are given; but in Upper Canada the Courts of Queen's Bench and Common Pleas have now very nearly the same powers, as well as co-ordinate jurisdiction.

- **QUESTIONS.**—What is said of the constitution of the Superior Courts in U. C.? Describe each of these courts? What other courts are there in Upper Canada? Give an account of the Superior Courts of Lower Canada,



Judges. It hears appeals, and gives judgment in serious criminal matters. 2. The *Superior* has one Chief Justice and seventeen Puisné Judges. It gives judgment in cases and appeals from the Inferior Courts. 3. The *Admiralty*, which has one Judge. It tries maritime cases.

30. *The other Courts* are: 4. *Commissioners*, in parishes, for trying civil cases under \$25; 5. *Quarter Sessions*; and 6. *Special Magistrates*.

31. *Final Appeal*.—There is a final appeal, in all civil cases over \$2000, from the Superior Courts of Upper and Lower Canada, to the Judicial Committee of Her Majesty's Privy Council in England.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### SOCIAL, CIVIL, AND COMMERCIAL PROGRESS.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Resources, Enterprise, and Progress of Canada.*

##### 1. PROGRESS OF LOWER CANADA.

1. *Latent Resources*.—During the first period after the conquest of Lower Canada, little progress was made. She had, however, within her own borders, the germ and elements of her future advancement; and in the activity of her sons, under the fostering care of a more popular form of government, she was enabled, when unchecked, to develop advantageously her wealth and resources.

2. *Early Enterprise*.—The basis for this development was laid at the time when the spirit of exploration and discovery, which so eminently characterised the early periods of French colonial government, was evoked, and nobly sustained by the zeal and heroism of Champlain, Jolliette, Marquette, Bhamois, la Verandrye, de la Salle, Frontenac, and Beauharnois. The navigation of the rivers first explored by Champlain, has since been rendered complete, by the construction of the Chambly Canals; the course pursued by Jolliette and de la Salle is now the great highway of our commerce; while the example of the self-reliance and energy of Frontenac and his successors, is still felt where he and they so long maintained in the New World the honour and glory of France. La Verandrye, in the

QUESTIONS.—Describe the other Courts of Lower Canada. What is said of final appeal? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XIX. What is said of the latent resources of L. C.? Give a sketch of her early enterprise.



years 1642-43, followed the course of the Saskatchewan, and reached the Rocky Mountains 60 years before Lewis and Clarke.

3. *Material Progress.*—Of public works, the most important in Lower Canada are the canals, railways, harbours, light-houses, and timber-slides. The annual value of her agricultural produce is now between fifty and sixty millions of dollars.

4. *Interesting Facts.*—The first Roman Catholic mission in Lower Canada was established by the Recollets, in 1615; and before the end of the same year, one of the Recollet fathers, who had accompanied Champlain, began to preach to the Wyandots, near Matchedash Bay. The first Roman Catholic bishop (Mgr. de Laval) was appointed in 1659-74; the first Protestant bishop (Dr. Jacob Mountain) in 1793; and the first regular Protestant Church service performed in Lower Canada, was in the Recollet Chapels, kindly granted by Franciscan Friars, to the Church of England in Quebec, and to the Church of Scotland in Montreal. The *Quebec Gazette* (still in existence) was first published in 1764; the *Montreal Gazette*, in 1778; the *Quebec Mercury*, in 1805; the *Quebec Le Canadien*, in 1806; the *Montreal Herald*, in 1811; the *Montreal La Minerve*, in 1827. Forty years ago there were but five newspapers published; now there are upwards of fifty. The Seminary at Quebec (now the Laval University) and the Industrial Schools, were founded by the munificence of Bishop Laval, in 1663.

5. *Recent Ameliorations.*—The Seigniorial Tenure has recently been abolished; municipal government introduced; and primary, collegiate, and university education placed within the reach of the entire population.

## 2. PROGRESS OF UPPER CANADA.

6. *French Posts.*—Lower Canada had already introduced civilization, and planted her trading-posts on the upper lakes, when the Province was divided, and Upper Canada settled by the loyalists from the United States, under Governor Simcoe.

7. *Public Improvements.*—Immediately after the removal of the seat of government from Newark to York, the energetic Simcoe constructed the great lines of road leading northward and westward from his infant capital. The Welland Canal was projected by the Hon. Wm. H. Merritt, in 1818-24; the Rideau Canal in 1826; and the Kingston Marine Railway in 1827. The St. Lawrence Canals, the Great Western and

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the most important public works of Lower Canada. Give a sketch of the interesting facts mentioned. What recent social ameliorations have taken place? Describe the progress of Upper Canada.

CHA

Gra  
sinc

8

in 1

ins

pop

publ

1820

Briti

Can

The

reorg

for p

great

the p

educ

1.

establ

were h

eastw

anoth

Simco

vicini

churc

1625,

parts

Jeune

the Ma

in 163

at Sille

Dutche

Dieppe

Indian

and the

was fou

QUEST

principal

Missions

Grand Trunk Railways, and other important works, have since followed. (See Chapter xxv. page 227.)

8. *Interesting Facts.*—The first Assessment Act was passed in 1793, and slavery abolished in the same year. Municipal institutions were introduced in 1841, and greatly enlarged and popularized in 1849. The *Upper Canada Gazette* was first published at Niagara, in 1793; the *Brockville Recorder*, in 1820; the *Toronto Christian Guardian*, in 1827; the *Kingston British Whig* and the *Perth Courier*, in 1834; now Upper Canada has upwards of one hundred and fifty newspapers. The Upper Canada Bible Society was first formed in 1819, and reorganized in 1829. Legislative provision was first made for public education in 1807; it was extended in 1816, and greatly increased in 1841. In 1846–50–53, the foundation of the present admirable system of popular and grammar school education was consolidated and enlarged.

## CHAPTER XX.

Principal Subject of this Chapter.

*Sketch of the Early Religious Bodies in Canada.*

1. *The Church of Rome.*—The first Roman Catholic missions established in Canada, were by four Recollet fathers, who were brought from France by Champlain in 1615. One went eastwards among the Montagnais Indians near the Saguenay, another went westwards among the Huron Indians near Lakes Simcoe and Huron, and two remained at Quebec and its vicinity (see page 43). In 1620, the Recollets erected a church and convent near the St. Charles river, Quebec. In 1625, three Jesuit fathers arrived and laboured in various parts of Canada (see page 48). In 1626–32, Father le Jeune founded a school for Indian boys at Quebec. In 1636, the Marquis de Gamache founded a college at Quebec; and in 1637, Noël Brulart de Sillery established an "Habitation" at Sillery (near Quebec) for the young Hurons. In 1638, the Dutchess d'Aiguillon founded a "House of the Hospitallers of Dieppe" at Quebec; in the following year, a seminary for Indian girls was founded at Quebec by Madame de la Peltierie, and the Hôtel-Dieu by the Ursulines. In 1644, a Hôtel-Dieu was founded at Montreal by Madame de Bullion. In 1647, the

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the public improvements of U. C. Mention the principal interesting facts given. To what does Chapter xx relate? What Missions and Colleges were established in Lower Canada?

Seminary of St. Sulpice was founded at Montreal by the Sulpicians of Paris. In 1678, Mgr. de Laval founded the Seminary at Quebec (now Laval University), and in 1668, at the suggestion of Colbert, he established some industrial schools for the Indian youth. Other schools were founded from time to time by various persons; and in 1697, Mgr. de St. Valier (second Roman Catholic Bishop of Quebec), founded the Ursuline convent at Three Rivers. From time to time other missionary priests arrived in the colony, and endured great hardships in the prosecution of their work among the Indians. Many of them suffered martyrdom at the hands of those whom they sought to benefit (see pages 53, 54); but this did not deter their successors from devoting themselves to the same work. At the conquest, in 1759, the free exercise of the Roman Catholic religion was guaranteed to those who professed that faith in Canada. The suppression of the religious order of the Jesuits, which took place in France in 1762, in Italy in 1773, was by royal instructions carried into effect in Canada in 1774. The Jesuits' Estates, however, remained in possession of the survivors of the order until 1800, when they were vested in the crown for educational purposes. The growth of the church was very steady for a long time; and within the last twenty years its agencies have been greatly multiplied; representatives of various religious orders have arrived from France, and among them are the Jesuits who again occupy a prominent place.

2. *Roman Catholic Bishoprics in Canada.*—In 1659-74, Mgr. de Laval was appointed first Roman Catholic Bishop of Quebec. For nearly 150 years this was the only Roman Catholic see in Canada. In 1826, however, that of Kingston was established for Upper Canada; in 1836, Lower Canada was divided; and Montreal was set apart as the seat of a bishopric; in 1842, Upper Canada was divided, and Toronto became a new diocese; in 1848, Bytown (now Ottawa) was set apart; in 1852, dioceses of Three Rivers and St. Hyacinthe were formed; in the 1855, London (afterwards changed to Sandwich) became a diocese, and in the following year, Hamilton, the ninth and youngest diocese, was formed. (In regard to Roman Catholic colleges, &c., see Chapter xxii. page 221).

3. *Church of England.*—The first clergyman who officiated

---

QUESTIONS.—What seminaries, schools and convents were established in L. C.? What took place at the conquest? What is said of the Jesuits; of the growth of the Roman Catholic Church; of R. C. Bishoprics?

in Canada after the conquest, was the Rev. Mr. Brooke of Quebec. Soon afterwards three clergymen of Swiss extraction were employed to labour among the French Canadians. The first entry of the name of one of them in the Quebec diocesan register was in 1768. The British residents employed their own clergyman; but having no place of worship of their own, the Recollet friars allowed them the use of their chapel. The first Church of England clergyman in Upper Canada was the Rev. John Stuart,\* a United Empire Loyalist who arrived there in 1781, and was attached as a chaplain to a provincial regiment. In 1784 he commenced his missionary labours among the refugee loyalists and the Iroquois Indians from Niagara to Kingston; in the same year, the first Church of England mission in Lower Canada was established at Sorel, and placed in charge of the Rev. John Doty or Doughty, an expatriated loyalist. In 1787, the Rev. John Langhorn came to Canada, and laboured as a missionary in Ernestown (near Kingston). In 1789, Bishop Inglis, of Nova Scotia, (having then jurisdiction in Canada) held his first visitation of the Canadian clergy of Quebec. In 1791, Rev. Robert Addison came to Niagara, and in the following year he opened a school there. In the same year (on the passing of the Constitutional Act), provision was also made, in another celebrated Statute (known as the Clergy Reserve Act), for the maintenance of a Protestant clergy in Canada (see page 143). In 1793, the Rev. Dr. Jacob Mountain† was appointed first Protestant bishop of Quebec. His episcopal jurisdiction extended over the whole of Canada. In 1794, when Bishop Mountain made his first visitation, there were only six clergymen in Lower and three in Upper Canada. In 1796, the Rev.

\* Rev. John Stuart, D.D., was born in Virginia in 1736. In 1769 he went to England to be ordained, and returned to Philadelphia in 1770. For seven years he laboured as a missionary among the Iroquois Indians at Fort Hunter. He was then aided by the famous Brant in translating the New Testament into Mohawk. In 1781 he came to Upper Canada, and laboured there as a missionary among the refugee loyalists and Iroquois. He subsequently became rector of Cataraqui (Kingston), and chaplain to the Legislative Council. He died in 1811, aged 75 years. One of his sons was the late Archdeacon Stuart, of Kingston; another was the late chief justice Sir James Stuart, of Quebec.

† The Right Rev. Jacob Mountain, D.D., was born in England, in 1751; consecrated first Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Quebec, in July, 1793, and continued in that office for thirty-two years. As a laborious and excellent man, he was greatly esteemed. He died in 1825, aged 75 years.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the history of the Church of England in Canada. What is said of the Rev. Dr. Stuart; Rev. John Doty; Rev. John Langhorn; Bishop Inglis; Rev. R. Addison; Bishop Mountain?

George J. Mountain, (brother to the bishop) was appointed to Three Rivers, and in 1800 he became rector of Montreal. In 1803, the Rev. John (afterwards bishop) Strachan was ordained and sent as a missionary to Cornwall, where he opened a classical school. In 1804, the cathedral at Quebec was erected. In 1807, the Hon. and Rev. Charles J. Stewart (son of the Earl of Galloway) was appointed to St. Armands, Lower Canada. In 1815, the Rev. John West was sent as a missionary chaplain to the Hudson Bay Company's trading fort at Red River. In 1823, Hon. and Rev. Dr. Strachan was appointed by Bishop Mountain, Archdeacon of York, and the Rev. Dr. J. Stuart, Archdeacon of Kingston. In 1825, Bishop Mountain died, and was in 1826 succeeded by the Hon. and Rev. Dr. C. J. Stewart. In 1830, Bishop Stewart established a society "for converting and civilizing the Indians of Upper Canada." In 1836, the Rev. Dr. G. J. Mountain was appointed Coadjutor Bishop, with the title of Bishop of Montreal. In the following year, 1837, the Bishop of Quebec died, and the Bishop of Montreal administered that diocese until 1850. In 1839, the Hon. and Rev. Dr. Strachan was appointed Bishop of Toronto. The Rev. Dr. Bethune of Cobourg, succeeded him as Archdeacon of York (now Toronto). In 1841, Bishop's College was established at Lennoxville, L. C.; and in 1842, church societies were organized at Quebec and Toronto. In the same year, a Theological College was established at Cobourg, U. C.; and in 1843, Bishop Mountain made an episcopal visit to the Red River settlement. In the same year King's College, under the Presidency of Bishop Strachan, was opened, at Toronto. In 1849, this institution was erected into the University of Upper Canada, and the Church of England ceased to have any official connection with it. In 1850, the Bishop of Toronto went to England to collect money for Trinity College, Toronto, which was projected in that year. In 1857, the diocese of Huron was set apart, and Rev. Dr. Cronyn elected Bishop; and in 1861 the diocese of Ontario was set apart, with Rev. Dr. Lewis as Bishop.

4. *The Presbyterian Churches.*—In 1787, the first Presbyterian congregation was organized at Quebec in a school room attached to the Jesuit barracks. Mr. Keith, the schoolmaster conducted the services. In 1788, 9, Rev. Mr. Bethune travelled as a missionary in the County of Glengarry, U. C. In

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Rev. Dr. Strachan; Rev. Chas. J. Stewart; Rev. John West; Bishop Mountain; Bishop Stewart; Rev. Dr. Strachan; Rev. Dr. Stuart; Rev. Dr. Bethune; Bishop and King's College?



ted to  
l. In  
ained  
a clas-  
ected.  
of the  
Lower  
a mis-  
g fort  
n was  
and the  
Bishop  
n. and  
shed a  
Upper  
as ap-  
ntreal.  
d, and  
1850.  
Bishop  
ceeded  
ishop's  
1842,  
to. In  
hed at  
ade an  
he year  
an, was  
erected.  
urch of  
it. In  
money  
t year.  
ev. Dr.  
Ontario

Presby-  
ol room  
master  
e trav-  
C. In

Chas. J.  
Rev. Dr.  
Collegel

1790, a Presbyterian congregation was organized in Montreal, and in 1791, Rev. John Young appointed minister in charge. Divine service was for that year performed in the Recollet chapel by permission of the friars; but in 1792 St. Gabriel street church was erected. It is, therefore, the oldest Protestant church in Canada. In 1793, the Presbytery of Montreal was formed. In 1795, a Presbyterian-Lutheran place of worship was erected in the Township of Osnabruck, U. C. In 1798, the Dutch Reformed Church in the United States sent the Rev. Robert McDonald as a missionary to Adolphustown, &c. In 1805, Rev. James Somerville, a teacher in Quebec, was ordained and appointed to succeed Mr. Young. In 1809, the Rev. Mr. Sparks was appointed minister of St. Andrew's Church, Quebec, which was in that year erected on its present site. In 1810, a congregation was organised at York (Toronto), under the auspices of the American Dutch Reformed Church. In 1811, Rev. Wm. Smart was sent by the London Missionary Society to Brockville. In 1817, Rev. Wm. Bell was sent out from Edinburgh to Perth. In 1818, Mr. Smart set on foot a movement to unite all the Presbyterians in Canada into one church. The plan failed; but a "Presbytery of the Canadas" was formed. In 1819, this Presbytery was divided—one for Lower Canada, and three for Upper Canada—the whole forming a general Synod for the two Canadas. In 1821, Rev. James Harris was sent to Toronto. In 1828, Rev. Edward Black was ordained as assistant and successor of Mr. Somerville, and Rev. Henry Esson, who came to Canada in 1817. In 1829, St. Andrew's Church, Toronto, was projected. It was erected in 1830, and Rev. William Rintoul appointed minister. In 1831, a Synod was formally constituted at Kingston. In 1833, the General Assembly recognised this Synod. In 1837, a meeting of church delegates was held at Cobourg, to petition the king on the subject of the Clergy Reserves. In 1840, Queen's College, Kingston, was projected and chartered in 1841. In 1843, the disruption in the established Church of Scotland took place. In 1844, part of the church in Canada adhered to the Scottish establishment and part to the Free Church. In 1844, Knox's Theological College was established, and in 1861, the formal union of the Free and United Presbyterian Churches in Canada took place. Other branches of the Presbyterian exist in Canada, but they are not numerous.

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the early history of the Presbyterian Church in Canada. What is said of St. Gabriel street Church; Rev. R. McDonald; Rev. J. Somerville; Rev. Mr. Sparks; Rev. W. Smart; Rev. W. Bell, &c.?



5. *The Methodist Churches.*—In 1780, a local preacher named Tuffey, a Commissary of the 44th Regiment, commenced to hold meetings among the soldiers and Protestant emigrants at Quebec. In 1786, another local preacher, George Neal, an Irishman and a major in a disbanded cavalry regiment, came to Queenston and laboured among the United Empire loyalists along the Niagara river. In 1788, an American exhorter and school teacher named Lyons came to Adolphustown and laboured there among the settlers. In the same year, James McCarthy, an Irishman, arrived in Ernestown, and held religious meetings in the log houses. He, however, met with strong opposition; was arrested and taken to Kingston. From that place he was kidnapped and taken in a boat to one of the islands in the St. Lawrence near Cornwall. He was never seen or heard of afterwards. In 1790, Christian Warner established the first class meeting in Upper Canada, in the Township of Stanford, U. C. In the same year, the Rev. Wm. Losee, a United Empire loyalist, travelled into Canada from the United States and preached to the settlers along the Bay of Quinté. In 1791, he formed the first circuit in Upper Canada at the same place; and in 1792, money was subscribed among the settlers to erect a "Meeting House or Church," in Adolphustown and another in Ernestown, near Bath. In the same year, Rev. Darius Dunham was appointed to the second or Cataraqui (Kingston) Circuit. From this time the growth of the Methodist body was steady. In 1799, the erratic Lorenzo Dow laboured on a Circuit which extended from Vermont into Canada. In the same year, while on his way to Ireland, he spent a short time in Quebec preaching. In 1800, Rev. Daniel Pickett was appointed a missionary to the Ottawa country. In 1801, Mr. (afterwards Rev. Dr.) Nathan Bangs, of New York, was converted in the Niagara district, and soon began to labour as a missionary in Upper Canada. In 1802, Dow again came to Canada for a short time, and preached among the settlers up the Bay of Quinté, and at Kingston. In 1805, Rev. Wm. Case arrived in Canada and was appointed on the Bay of Quinté Circuit. In that year, the first camp meeting was held at Hay Bay, Adolphustown. In 1811, Bishop Asbury first came to Canada from Vermont by way of St. Regis and Cornwall, and remained at Kingston for a short time. In 1814, the English Conference first

---

QUESTIONS.—Who introduced Methodism in Canada? What is said of G. Neal; Lyons; J. McCarthy; C. Warren; Rev. W. Losee; the first circuit; Rev. D. Dunham; Lorenzo Dow; Rev. D. Pickett; Dr. Bangs?

stationed two preachers at Montreal; and in 1818, five were sent to Upper Canada. In 1820, the first Conference (Genesee) was held at Newark (Niagara), and Lower Canada was given up to the English Conference. In 1823, Peter Jones was converted at Ancaster, and soon began to labour among his Indian fellow-countrymen. In 1824, a Canada Conference was formed; and in 1828, the Canadian Methodists separated from the United States, and became an independent body. The Wesleyan Missionary Society of Upper Canada was formed in 1825. In 1828, an Act was passed by the Legislature of Upper Canada authorizing the various religious bodies to hold church sites "not exceeding five acres." Up to this time the Churches of England and Scotland in Canada had alone this right. In 1832, 3, Upper Canada Academy was established at Cobourg, and in 1840, it was changed into Victoria College. In the year 1833, the union of the Canadian Methodist body with the British Conference took place, and the episcopal form of church government, derived from the United States, was changed for that in use among the Wesleyan body in England. At this time the present Methodist Episcopal body was organized; and in 1837 they established a seminary at Belleville. The union of the Wesleyans with the English Conference continued until 1840, when a disagreement having arisen between the two bodies, the union was dissolved by the English Conference. In 1848, however, the difference having been adjusted, the union was restored upon a more satisfactory footing than before. The other principal Methodist bodies in Canada are the Primitives and the New Connexion; but they are much less numerous than the Wesleyans.

6. *The Baptist Church.*—The first Baptist Congregation in Canada, of which we have any record, was one which was formed by the Rev. E. Andrews of Vermont, at Caldwell's Manor, Lower Canada, in 1794. In the same year, churches were formed at Thurlow and Prince Edward County, U. C.; and in 1804, one was formed at Charlotteville, Norfolk County. In 1835, the Grand Ligne mission was commenced in Lower Canada. From that time to the present the growth of the Baptist body has been steady all over the province. In 1857, 8, the Baptists established the Canadian Literary Institute at Woodstock U. C. for the education of youth of both sexes. In 1800 the Canada Baptist Union was formed; and in 1865,

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the first Conference; Rev. P. Jones; Canada Conference; Church Sites Act; U. C. Academy; Union with English Conference; Methodist Episcopal; Belleville Seminary; Baptist Church.

the Canada Baptist Historical Society was established. The other Baptist body in Canada is known as the Free Will Baptists, but it is not numerous.

7. *The Congregational Churches.*—Before the present century a Congregational Church was formed at Quebec by the Rev. Francis Dick, from Scotland; another was planted at Stanstead, L. C., in 1816. From 1829 and onwards, under the auspices of missionary societies, churches have been formed in various parts of Upper and Lower Canada. A missionary organization has existed among the Congregational Churches since 1846. The Congregational Theological College of British North America founded in 1840, has sent out nearly sixty ministers. It is now situated at Montreal, and is affiliated with McGill University.

8. *The other Religious Bodies* in Canada are: the "Bible Christians," the "Christian Disciples," the "Evangelical Lutherans," the "United Brethren in Christ," the "Evangelical Union," the "New Jerusalem Church," the Irvingites "Apostolic Church," and the "Plymouth Brethren."

## CHAPTER XXI.

### SKETCH OF THE MUNICIPAL SYSTEM OF CANADA.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *The Municipal Institutions of Canada.*

1. *Early Municipal Institutions.*—Municipal corporations were first created in England, by royal charter, as early as 1100. They were, however, only granted as special favours to particular cities and towns, and were then made subject to a variety of tests, oaths, and conditions, which were not done away with until 1828. Nor was it until 1835 that a general law was passed regulating the municipal system of England. A similar law for Ireland was not passed until 1840. Up to that time, there was no municipal system in Canada. Special acts were passed for incorporating the cities and larger towns, but the rural parts of the country were left destitute of local representative bodies. To the Quarter Sessions, or Boards of

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Free Will Baptists; the Congregational Churches; Rev. F. Dick; College of B.N. America; other religious bodies? To what does Chap. xxi relate? What is said of the municipal institutions?

Commissioners, was entrusted the management of purely local affairs, while Parliament reserved to itself the care of the roads and bridges, canals, and other important public works.

2. *Introduction of the Municipal System.*—Immediately after the union of the Provinces, in 1840, an act was passed by the united Legislature, establishing elective Municipal Councils in townships, counties, towns, and cities in Upper Canada, and in 1847 a similar Act was passed for Lower Canada; while in the larger villages elective Boards of Police were established. To these bodies was entrusted the general management of all local affairs, including the care of the public highways and bridges, the licensing of taverns, the regulation of markets, the maintenance of jails, &c., with power to assess and collect rates to defray all municipal expenses. In 1855 the municipal system in Upper and Lower Canada was greatly extended and improved. With the further ameliorations which it has since undergone, as the result of an extensive experience in various localities, it is considered one of the most practical and comprehensive municipal systems in the world.

3. *Extent of the Municipalities.*—A village is the smallest of the municipal divisions. To entitle it to an act of incorporation, it must contain at least 1,000 inhabitants. A town must contain at least 3,000 inhabitants, and a city 10,000. A township is generally an extent of country from six to ten miles square, intersected generally at right angles by roads, called concession-lines and side-lines. Village and township corporations consist of a reeve, deputy-reeve, and a councillor for each ward or division of the township, or village. Town corporations consist of a mayor and town-councillors; and city corporations of a mayor, aldermen, and common-council men. Counties embrace various townships and villages. County councils are made up of the Reeves and deputy-Reeves of townships and villages, who elect their own chairman, or warden. The members of township and county councils are entitled to a *per diem* allowance for the time during which they attend the meetings of their respective councils. Councillors for cities, towns, or villages, however, receive no such allowance. All the members of these corporations are elected annually, by the assessed ratepayers, about the beginning of January of each year.

---

QUESTIONS.—When were municipal institutions first introduced into Upper and Lower Canada? Give a sketch of these institutions and their powers. Describe the extent and population of the various municipalities.

## CHAPTER XXII.

## SKETCH OF THE EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS OF CANADA.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Educational Progress—Universities, Colleges, and Schools.*

## 1.—OF UPPER CANADA.

1. *Early Educational Efforts in Upper Canada.*—In 1798—six years after the settlement of Upper Canada—a memorial was presented to Lord Dorchester, the Governor-in-Chief, requesting him to establish a public school in some central place such as Frontenac (Kingston). In compliance with this request, a portion of wild lands was set apart for the endowment of such a school, or schools. No school was, however, established, nor was anything realized from the land set apart. In 1796, Lieut.-Governor Simcoe, through the Protestant Bishop of Quebec, urged upon the home government the necessity of establishing such a school. In 1787, the Legislature of Upper Canada addressed a memorial on the subject to King George III. In reply to this memorial, the king, through the Colonial Secretary, in 1798, directed an endowment to be created out of the proceeds of the sales of wild lands to be set apart for that purpose, for the establishment of free grammar schools, colleges, &c., in the Province. The funds from this endowment not being sufficient, it was not until 1806-7, that the Legislature established a grammar, or high school in each of the eight districts into which Upper Canada was then divided. In 1816, common schools were first established; but, although efforts were from time to time made to improve both classes of schools, it was not until 1841 that practical legislation was directed to the subject. In that year the first systematic outline of a school system was sketched out.

2. *Subsequent Educational Efforts and Progress.*—In 1846-50 the whole system of Common schools was thoroughly revised and reconstructed, under the direction of the Rev. Dr. Ryerson, Chief Superintendent of Education. In 1847, aided by a Council of Public Instruction, he established the Normal school. In 1853 and 1865 he also reorganized and improved the County Grammar schools. In the meantime the Provincial university (formerly King's College,) was remodelled by the Legislature.

QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter XXII relate? Mention the principal subjects referred to in the chapter. Trace the early educational progress of U. C. Mention the subsequent educational efforts and progress of U. C.

3. U  
Upper  
Trinity  
lege, at

4. C  
byteria  
man Ca  
Kingsto  
(Churo  
leyan E

5. Co  
Gramm  
have e  
'mptist  
Church  
Diocesse

6. G  
in vari  
county  
sity, a  
inspect  
Superin  
of these

7. A  
establis

8. T  
are ea  
inspect  
includi  
establis  
by local  
Upper

9. T  
preside  
pointed  
tion.  
relating  
the leg  
of Edu

QUES  
legiate  
common



## CANADA.

## and Schools.

—In 1798—  
—a memorial  
rrior-in-Chief,  
some central  
pliance with  
apart for the  
ool was, how-  
the land set  
ugh the Pro-  
e government  
87, the Legis-  
n the subject  
king through  
owment to be  
ands to be set  
ree grammar  
ds from this  
1806-7, the  
school in each  
da was then  
blished; but  
improve both  
ractical legis-  
near the first  
ed out.  
—In 1846-50  
ughly revised  
Dr. Ryerson,  
aided by a  
ormal school.  
ed the County  
ial university  
e Legislature.

on the principal  
onal progress of  
gress of U. C.

3. *Universities*.—There are four Universities in operation in Upper Canada, viz.: The Universities of Toronto and of Trinity College, at Toronto; the University of Victoria College, at Cobourg; and of Queen's College, at Kingston.

4. *Colleges*.—University College, (Provincial); Knox (Presbyterian, Theological) College and St. Michael's College (Roman Catholic), at Toronto; Regiopolis (Roman Catholic), at Kingston; St. Joseph's (Roman Catholic), at Ottawa; Huron, (Church of England, Theological), at London; and the Wesleyan Female College, at Hamilton.

5. *Collegiate Seminaries*.—Upper Canada College, or Royal Grammar School, at Toronto. The Episcopal Methodists have established a Collegiate Seminary at Belleville, the Baptists a Collegiate Literary Institute at Woodstock, and the Church of England a Collegiate Institute at London, in the Diocese of Huron.

6. *Grammar Schools*.—One hundred have been established in various parts of Upper Canada, or one or more in each county. They connect the common school with the university, and are managed by local boards of trustees, but are inspected by a provincial officer. They report to the Chief Superintendent, and receive aid through his department. Ten of these schools have been selected as Meteorological stations.

7. *Academies*, superior schools, chiefly for young ladies, are established in the cities and principal towns of Upper Canada.

8. *The Common Schools* are aided by the Legislature, and are each managed by trustees, chosen by the people, and inspected by a local superintendent. About 4,500 of them, including 120 Roman Catholic separate schools, have been established in Upper Canada. All the teachers are licensed by local boards, except those trained and licensed from the Upper Canada Normal school, Toronto.

9. *The Educational Department*, situated at Toronto, is presided over by a Chief Superintendent of Education appointed by the Crown, and aided by a Council of Public Instruction. To him is confided the administration of the laws relating to grammar and common schools. He also distributes the legislative school grants, and issues a monthly *Journal of Education* for the public schools.

---

QUESTIONS.—Name each of the universities of U. C.—the colleges—collegiate seminaries. What is said of the grammar schools—academies—common schools? What are the functions of the Educational Department?



## 2.—LOWER CANADA.

10. *Early Educational Efforts in Lower Canada.*—In 1632 the first school was opened at Quebec, by Father Le Jeune, chiefly for the education of Indian youth. In 1635 he also founded the "*Seminary of the Hurons*," (subsequently the Jesuits' college). In 1639 Madame de la Pelterie established the Convent of the Ursulines at Quebec for the education of Indian girls. In 1662 the Seminary of Quebec was founded by Mgr. de Laval, first R. C. Bishop of Quebec. The College of St. Sulpice at Montreal, and various other institutions, were also early established in Lower Canada. In 1787, Lord Dorchester appointed a Commissioner to inquire into the subject. In 1801 the Royal Institution was established to promote elementary education, but it failed to accomplish much. Various efforts were subsequently made, with a similar object; but, as in Upper Canada, the present common school educational system was only established in 1841.

11. *Subsequent Educational Efforts and Progress.*—In 1845-9 various improvements were effected in the public school system of Lower Canada; but, in 1856, the whole system of superior and elementary education underwent a comprehensive revision and improvement, under the direction of the Hon. Dr. Chauveau, the Superintendent of Education for Lower Canada.

12. *Universities.*—There are three universities in Lower Canada, viz.: McGill College, Montreal; Laval College, Quebec; and Bishop's College, Lennoxville. There are also six Special Roman Catholic Theological Schools, besides the Congregational Theological College of British North America.

13. *Colleges.*—There are eleven Classical colleges and fifteen Industrial colleges in Lower Canada.

14. *Academies* are established in all the principal towns of Lower Canada. There are sixty-three for boys and mixed, and sixty-six for girls,—aided by the Legislature. There are also one hundred and thirty Model schools, and two Deaf and Dumb institutions.

15. *Common Schools*, there are about 3,500 primary and 210 secondary schools in Lower Canada. They are subject to the oversight of twenty-seven Inspectors. Three Normal schools have been established to train teachers,—French (Jacques Cartier), English (in connection with McGill University), and French (Laval). The first two are at Montreal, and the last

**QUESTIONS.**—Trace the early educational progress of L. C. Name the Universities of L. C. What is said of the Colleges and Academies? What is said of the Common Schools of L. C.?—of the Educational Department?

at Que  
intend

16.  
sided c  
colleg  
tive g  
Journa  
publish

Th

1. T  
extrem  
influen  
square  
than th  
tude.  
Upper  
The In  
delight  
is also  
autumn  
are Jul  
January

2. Mi  
stated b  
north, w  
aid by  
is inter  
of sand  
the peb  
abound  
iron, les  
jasper, &  
applicat  
fossils.  
series an  
graphic

QUESTI  
subjects o  
account o

at Quebec. The three are under the direction of the Superintendent of Education.

16. *The Educational Department* of Lower Canada is presided over by a Chief Superintendent, who divides among the colleges, academies, and common schools the annual legislative grants, and generally administers the school laws. Two *Journals of Education*—one French, the other English—are published by the Educational Department of Lower Canada.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### THE CLIMATE AND NATURAL PRODUCTS OF CANADA.

#### 1.—UPPER CANADA.

1. *The Climate of Upper Canada*, though inclined to be extreme in winter and summer, is singularly tempered by the influence of the great lakes, which occupy an area of 90,000 square miles. It is milder than that of Lower Canada, or than that of many of the American States in the same latitude. The dryness and clearness of the atmosphere render Upper Canada healthy and agreeable as a place of residence. The Indian summer, which generally occurs in October, is a delightful time of the year. The sleighing season, in winter, is also a pleasant period. Rains are abundant in spring and autumn. Fogs are rare. The hottest months of summer are July and August, and the coldest months of winter are January and February.

2. *Mineral Products of Upper Canada.*—In Upper Canada, as stated by Sir Wm. Logan, the Laurentian system occupies the north, while the more horizontal surface on the south is underlain by Silurian and Devonian deposits. The Huronian is interposed between them and the Silurian. They consist of sandstones, silicious slates, and conglomerates, of which the pebbles are quartz, jasper, syenite, and gneiss. They abound in copper ores, with which are associated those of iron, lead, zinc, nickel, and silver; and they afford agates, jasper, amethysts, and other hard stones capable of ornamental application. Like the Laurentian, these rocks are without fossils. The economic minerals of the Silurian and Devonian series are freestone and limestone, for building; marble, lithographic stone, hydraulic cement, and gypsum. The drift

QUESTIONS.—To what is Chapter XXIII devoted? Mention the principal subjects of it. What is said of the climate of Upper Canada. Give an account of the various mineral products of Upper Canada; petroleum. &c.

formation is accumulated to a great thickness over the harder rocks in the level part of Upper Canada. The drift produces clay for red and white bricks and for common pottery; and supports patches of bog iron-ore, fresh water shell-marl, and peat; while petroleum, or rock oil, in places, in the West of Upper Canada, oozes up to the surface, from bituminous rocks beneath, and gives origin to beds of asphalt. This oil has become a valuable article of commerce, and is chiefly procured by boring.

3. *Agricultural Products.*—Wheat is the staple product; barley, oats, rye, peas, buckwheat, Indian corn, and all other domestic vegetables, are raised in abundance. Hemp, flax, hops, and tobacco are easily cultivated in the western parts of Upper Canada. Maple sugar, Canada balsam, lobelia, gentian, ginseng, &c., also deserve notice. [An estimate of the value of the agricultural products of Canada will be found on next page.]

## 2. LOWER CANADA.

4. *The Climate of Lower Canada*, although similar to that of Upper Canada, is more severe and steadily fine in winter, and warmer in summer. Spring bursts forth in great beauty, and vegetation is rapid. Winter is always a gay and agreeable season, owing to the fine social qualities of the people.

5. *Mineral Products of Lower Canada.*—The Laurentian system of rocks in Lower Canada is stated by Sir William Logan to constitute the oldest series known on the continent of America, and are supposed to be equivalent to the iron-bearing rocks of Scandinavia. They abound in iron ore; and among the economic minerals belonging to them are found ores of lead and copper, phosphate of lime, barytes, plumbago, mica, and labradorite marble. The southern range consists of Silurian and Devonian rocks, in an altered condition, and they afford a mineral region yielding serpentine and variegated marbles, potstone, soapstone, granite, and roofing-slates, with the ores of chromium, iron, copper, and gold. The economic minerals of the flat country are limestones, building-stones, sandstone for glass-making, clay for common bricks and common pottery, fullers' earth, moulding-sand, bog iron ore, fresh water shell-marl, and peat.

6. *The Agricultural Products of Lower Canada* are similar to those of Upper Canada. (See above and next page.)

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the vegetable or agricultural products? Describe the climate of Lower Canada. Give an account of the mineral products of Lower C. What is said of the vegetable products of U. C.?

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## SUMMARY OF THE TRADE AND COMMERCE OF CANADA.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Trade—Commerce—Agricultural Products—Manufactures—Revenue and Expenditure.*

1. *The Early Trade and Commerce of Canada* consisted chiefly in the purchase of furs from various Indian tribes and their shipment to Europe. The return cargoes were principally imports of merchandise and military stores. Gradually seal-oil, wheat, flour, and timber, took the place of furs and skins, while the imports from Europe remained nearly the same. This species of trade continued to increase, and to extend to various countries, until further facilities for its development were provided, and laws passed to regulate it.

2. *Exports of Lumber and Grain.*—The shipping of lumber and grain—which now form the chief staple of Canadian exports—was in the early history of this country very insignificant. At the period of the conquest of Quebec, in 1759, the value of the timber shipped from that port did not reach \$40,000; fifty years later, in 1808, it had increased ten-fold, and was valued at \$400,000; at the end of another half-century, in 1863, it had increased in a still greater ratio, and was valued at \$10,000,000. In addition to the facilities of open lakes and rivers for reaching a seaport, timber-slides are constructed at the rapids, or other obstructions in the inland rivers, where timber-berths exist. It is estimated that at least 25,000 men are engaged in the lumber-trade of Canada. The value of the exports of grain is double that of the value of timber exported. In 1793, the number of bushels of wheat exported was about 500,000, and of flour 10,000 barrels; in 1802 about 1,000,000 bushels of wheat were exported, and about 30,000 barrels of flour; in 1853, about 6,300,000 bushels of wheat, flour, and bran were exported, valued at nearly \$7,500,000; while in 1865 about 11,000,000 bushels of wheat were exported from Canada, at an estimated value of about \$12,000,000.

3. *Estimate of Agricultural Products.*—The total quantity of wheat produced yearly in Canada is about 30,000,000

QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter XXIV relate? What is said of the early trade and commerce of Canada. Give an account of the exports of different kinds of lumber and grain, &c., to various countries from Canada.

busbels; of oats about 35,000,000; rye, 1,500,000; barley 4,000,000; peas 15,000,000; buckwheat 4,000,000; Indian corn 5,000,000; potatoes 20,000,000; turnips, 25,000,000; flax or hemp, about 4,000,000 pounds; tobacco 1,500,000 pounds; and maple sugar nearly 10,000,000 pounds. The value of occupied farms in Upper and Lower Canada is about \$425,000,000, and of farm-stock about \$80,000,000.

4. *Commercial Facilities.*—In addition to the magnificent lakes and extensive rivers which the province possesses, the Legislature has still further increased her facilities for internal communication and trade, by promoting the construction of numerous canals, railways, and telegraph lines. Steamboats and other lake-vessels are now numerous. In 1809 the first steamer built in Lower Canada was launched at Montreal, by the Hon. John Molson, and named the *Accommodation*. On her first trip she left Montreal on the 1st of November, 1809, and reached Quebec on the morning of the 4th. The return trip occupied a week. The first steamer built in Upper Canada was launched at Ernestown in 1816, and named the *Fron-tenac*. Her first trip took place on the 30th of May, 1817. Her route extended first from Prescott (and afterwards from Kingston) to Toronto, and thence to Burlington Bay and Niagara. The postal system is also efficient. Canada has reciprocity arrangements, for the free exchange of natural productions with Great Britain, the British North American Colonies, and the United States (which latter ceased in 1866); she has also a silver coinage and a decimal currency.

5. *The Present Trade and Commerce of Canada* are extensive. In 1764 the number of vessels which reached Quebec was only 67, with a tonnage of 5,500; while about one hundred years later the number of vessels which entered Canada, inwards from the sea, had increased to 2,500, with an aggregate tonnage of 2,100,000. In 1862, the total number of times which Canadian vessels and steamers passed up and down the canals, engaged in the internal trade and commerce of the country, was 28,000, with an aggregate tonnage of upwards of 2,600,000; exclusive of 5,000 times which American vessels and steamers, with an aggregate tonnage of 1,050,000, passed through the same canals. The grand total aggregate tonnage of vessels engaged in trade in Canadian waters is about 8,500,000. The number of vessels propelled by steam on the Cana-

QUESTIONS.—What estimate is given of the extent, &c., of the agricultural products of Canada? What commercial facilities does she at present possess? Give an account of the present trade and commerce of Canada.



dian lakes is nearly 400; with an aggregate tonnage of about 150,000, and a value of upwards of \$6,000,000. Of this number of vessels 100 are Canadian; their aggregate tonnage 32,000, and their valuation about \$1,500,000.

6. *The Chief Imports* into Canada are woollens, cottons, silks, iron, tobacco, tea, wine, sugar, &c. Their annual value is from \$40,000,000 to \$50,000,000. yielding a revenue duty of from \$4,500,000 to 5,000,000.

7. *The Chief Exports* from Canada include products of agriculture, the forest, the sea, and the mine, animals and their products, ships, domestic manufactures, &c. Their annual value is from \$30,000,000 to \$40,000,000. The aggregate annual value of the imports and exports of Canada is upwards of \$85,000,000.

8. *The Manufactures* are principally woollen, iron, glass, India rubber, cabinet-ware, soap, candles, &c., for domestic use.

9. *The Revenue and the Expenditure* are about \$11,250,000 each. The direct debt of the province is about \$67,000,000; indirect debt about \$9,000,000 more; total, \$76,000,000. The principal assets are: East India debentures, \$7,300,000; canals, harbours, light-houses, public buildings, and various provincial works, \$25,000,000; loans to incorporated companies, \$42,000,000; miscellaneous, \$2,700,000; total assets, \$77,000,000.

## CHAPTER XXV.

### SOME OF THE PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS IN CANADA.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Canals—Railways—Steamers—Telegraph—Post Offices.*

1. *The Public Improvements of Canada* consist of her canals, railroads, public buildings, harbours, light-houses, roads and bridges, &c., the aggregate cost of which amounts to about \$50,000,000. The most important of these improvements consist of the canals and railroads.

2. *The Canals of Canada* are extensive and important, and have been constructed at a cost of about \$21,000,000. Their total length is 235 miles. They are as follows:

QUESTIONS.—What was the estimated value of the chief exports and imports? Mention the principal manufactures. Give the revenue and expenditure. What are the principal subjects mentioned in Chapter xxv.



The Welland connects Lakes Erie and Ontario, and thus overcomes the Niagara Falls. The length of its main trunk is 28 miles, and of its feeder about 22½ miles. It has 28 locks, and surmounts an aggregate of 354 feet. The locks are from 150 to 200 feet in length, by 26½ in width, and have 10 feet water on the mitre-sills. Total cost about \$7,000,000.

The Rideau connects Lake Ontario with the River Ottawa. It is 126½ miles long, has 47 locks, and surmounts an aggregate elevation of 457 feet, viz., 165 from Kingston up to Lake Rideau, and 292 from Lake Rideau down to the Ottawa. Its locks are 134 feet by 34, with 5 feet water on the mitre-sills. It was constructed by the Imperial Government for military purposes, and cost \$4,380,000.

The St. Lawrence consists of a series of canals, in all 40½ miles in length, extending from near Prescott to Montreal, and surmounting an aggregate of 204½ feet of rapids. The 27 locks are 200 feet by 45 each, and have from 9 to 16 feet water on the mitre-sills. Total cost, \$8,550,000.

The Ottawa, a series of 10½ miles between Ottawa City and the St. Lawrence, at Lake St. Louis, surmounts an aggregate of 88½ feet. Total cost, about \$1,500,000.

The Chambly, on the Richelieu river, extends from St. Johns to Chambly, 11½ miles. With the St. Ours lock, it completes the navigation from the St. Lawrence to Lake Champlain. Cost, \$550,000.

The Burlington connects Burlington Bay at Hamilton with Lake Ontario. Total cost, about \$310,000.

The Desjardins connects the town of Dundas with Burlington Bay. Total cost, about \$250,000.

3. *Railways of Canada.*—In 1850 there were only two short railways. There are now *fourteen*, with an aggregate length of nearly 2,000 miles, constructed at an estimated cost of over \$100,000,000. The two principal railways in Canada are the Grand Trunk and the Great Western. The Grand Trunk line extends to 1,092 miles, and includes the celebrated Victoria Tubular Bridge, of nearly two miles in length. (See *illustration, on page 198.*) The Suspension Bridge over the Niagara River connecting the New York Central and Great Western lines of railway, is a wonderful structure.

4. *Ocean Steamers.*—A Canadian mail-line of steamships, and four other lines, running to England, Ireland, and Scotland,

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Canals? Mention the names, cost and extent of the principal ones, viz. Welland; Rideau; St. Lawrence; Ottawa. Chambly; Burlington; the Railways. What chief places do they connect?

and thus  
ain trunk  
28 locks,  
are from  
ve 10 feet  
0.  
r Ottawa.  
an aggre-  
p to Lake  
awa. Its  
nitre-sills.  
r military  
  
n all 404  
Montreal,  
The 27  
to 16 feet

a City and  
aggregate

from St.  
rs lock, it  
to Lak:

ilton with

h Burling-

t two short  
ate length  
ost of over  
la are the  
nd Trunk  
rated Vie-  
gth. (See  
e over the  
and Great

ships, and  
Scotland,

cost and ex  
ce; Ottawa  
they connect?



Part of the Falls of Niagara, and the Great Western Railway Suspension Bridge.

from Montreal and Quebec in summer, and from Portland (Maine, in the United States) in winter, have been established.

5. *The Telegraph* was introduced in 1847, and extends to all the principal places in Canada, the Eastern Provinces, &c.

6. *Post Offices* are established in above 2,000 places in Canada. The post routes extend to an aggregate of 16,000 miles, and the number of miles actually travelled is about 6,000,000. In 1766, when the celebrated Benjamin Franklin was deputy postmaster-general of British North America, there were only three post-offices in Canada, and 170 miles of post-route, from Montreal to Quebec. In 1791 there were ten post-offices, and 600 miles of post-route; in 1830 there were 150 post offices, and 2,500 miles of post-route; in 1840 the number of offices had been increased to 405, and miles of post-route to 5,737; and in 1850 the number of offices was 600, and miles of post-route 7,600. The number of letters carried in 1850 was about 3,500,000, revenue \$230,000; while in 1866 this number had increased to 11,500,000, revenue \$800,000. This is doubtless due to the uniform postage-rate of five cents introduced in 1851.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the railways of Canada? What is said of the Canadian lines of ocean steamers? When was the telegraph introduced? How many post-offices are there, and what is said of the subject?

## PART V.

### Historical Sketches of the other British Possessions.

#### INTRODUCTORY.

1. *Maritime British Provinces.*—The maritime provinces of British North America, which lie to the east and south-east of Canada, are:

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. NOVA SCOTIA & CAPE BRETON. | 3. PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.   |
| 2. NEW BRUNSWICK.             | 4. ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND. |

Their united area is about 106,500 square miles, and their population about 1,150,000, or nearly one half that of Canada.

2. *Other British Possessions.*—The remaining British possessions in North America are:

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 5. { HUDSON BAY TERRITORY. | 6. { BRITISH COLUMBIA. |
| RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.      | VANCOUVER ISLAND.      |

These possessions stretch from Hudson Bay to the Pacific Ocean, and are ultimately destined to become important portions of the British Empire.

### CHAPTER XXVI.

#### I. General Introductory Sketch of the Eastern Provinces

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

##### *Present Extent and Condition of the Eastern Provinces.*

1. *Acadie divided into two Provinces.*—What are at present the Provinces of Nova Scotia (including Cape Breton) and New Brunswick (with part of the State of Maine), was formerly that outlying portion of New France which was known as Acadie. The boundaries and extent of these outskirts of New France were, to a late date in colonial history, left indefinite; and many a fierce dispute, ending in deadly strife, took place in the efforts which were made by the rival French and English colonists to define these boundaries. Although nomi-

---

QUESTIONS.—Point out on the map the several Maritime Provinces. What is their area and population? Name the other B. N. A. Possessions. Give the principal subjects of Chapter XXVI. What is said of Acadie?

essions.  
vinces of  
south-east  
BLAND.  
UNDLAND.  
and their  
of Canada.  
ritish pos-  
A.  
ND.  
he Pacific  
ortant por-  
Provinces  
vinces.  
at present  
reton) and  
s formerly  
known as  
arts of New  
indefinite;  
took place  
n and Eng-  
ugh nom-  
e Provinces.  
Possessions.  
of Acadie?



QUESTIONS.—Point out the relative position of each of the B. N. A. Provinces.

nally under French dominion, Acadie was, for a long time after its discovery, too vast a wilderness to be of any practical value either as a place of colonization or of trade, except at some points on the sea-coast. These places were, however, selected for settlement with the usual sagacity of the early French explorers; and they are to this day important central points of trade and commerce in the respective provinces. As the trading-posts of France and England in those early times gradually expanded themselves into colonial settlements, particular places in these settlements, often distant from each other, were selected either for purposes of trade or for military objects. Thus Port Royal (Annapolis), and Ste Croix,—on the opposite shores of la baie Française (Fundy), with undefined boundaries running between them,—from being originally in the same French colony of Acadie, came, in after-times, to be separate settlements, in the two after provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Physical causes, no less than the absence of easy modes of communication between outlying portions of Acadie, determined no doubt, from time to time, the political divisions of this part of New France.

2. *Communication between the Provinces.*—At present the principal mode of communication between the provinces is by water. And this must necessarily continue to be so, as between the islands themselves and the main land. Railroads exist within two of the provinces; but as yet only part of the intercolonial railroad has been constructed. The surveyed railroad distance between Halifax and Quebec is 635 miles: of this distance 205 miles have already been constructed, viz., 114 by Canada, from Quebec to Rivière du Loup; 30 by New Brunswick, (being part of the line of 107 miles from Shediac to St. John); and 61 by Nova Scotia, from Truro to Halifax. The cost of the remaining 430 miles has been estimated at

---

QUESTIONS.—How were these eastern provinces first settled? At what two places were trading-posts established? What is said of communication between the provinces? Mention the railroads already constructed

about  
propo  
expec

3.

or Ma

Secti

Princ

the o

by Si

Eliza

(now

Great

Breto

after

also c

to No

vince

but i

provi

Ec

to the

(Nova

Sc

an

Size,

1.

Qu

to be

How

long time  
any prac-  
of trade,  
es were,  
ity of the  
important  
ective pro-  
in those  
al settle-  
a distant  
trade or  
and Ste  
Fundy),  
m being  
ame, in  
o after  
Physical  
mmuni-  
ined no  
part of

about \$40,000 per mile, or about \$18,000,000. Should the proposed Confederation of the Provinces take place, it is expected that this intercolonial railroad will be built.

3. *Historical Sketch of the Maritime Provinces.*—The Eastern or Maritime Provinces of British North America include Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the Islands of Newfoundland and Prince Edward (formerly called St. Jean). Newfoundland is the oldest British colony in America, having been discovered by Sir John Cabot in 1497, and taken possession of, in Queen Elizabeth's name, by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, in 1583. Acadia (now Nova Scotia and New Brunswick) was first ceded to Great Britain in 1713, and again, finally, in 1748. Cape Breton Island (formerly called Isle du Cap and Isle Royale), after the capture of the fortress of Louisbourg, its capital, was also ceded to Great Britain in 1748. In 1763 it was annexed to Nova Scotia, and in 1765 formed into a county of that province. In 1770, however, it was separated from Nova Scotia; but in 1820 it was again united to the government of that province, and has so remained up to the present time.

For size, general area, and statistical information in regard to these Provinces, see pages 32 and 33.)

ent the  
es is by  
between  
ds exist  
of the  
urveyed  
iles: of  
d, viz.,  
by New  
Shediac  
Halifax.  
ated at

## PART VI

### CHAPTER XXVII.

#### History of Nova Scotia, including Cape Breton.

(Nova Scotia was so called by the first settlers, who originally came from Scotland; and "Breton" from Brittany,—Breton being the name of an inhabitant of Bretagne, or Brittany, in France.)

Size, one fourth less than New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 140 m.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. Noted For.—2. Position and Extent.—3. Physical Features.

1. *Noted For.*—Nova Scotia is noted for its coal, iron, gold,

At what  
munica-  
ructed

QUESTIONS.—What part of the proposed Intercolonial Railroad remains to be constructed? Give a historical sketch of the Maritime Provinces. How did Nova Scotia obtain its name? Give its size? For what is it noted?



and other minerals; its fisheries; and its extensive line of sea-coast and good harbours.

2. *Position and Extent.*—The Province of Nova Scotia includes the peninsula of Nova Scotia and the Island of Cape Breton, which lie to the south-east of New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island. They have since 1820 been united under one government and legislature.

3. *Physical Features.*—The peninsula of Nova Scotia is somewhat triangular in shape, and is connected with New



Appearance of Nova Scotia, &c., from a Balloon.

by a short isthmus sixteen miles in length. Its surface is undulating and picturesque, and is dotted over with many small but beautiful lakes. In the interior are several ranges of hills, of which the Co-bequid are the most important. On the coast, the capes, bays, and harbours are numerous. No part of Nova Scotia is more than thirty miles from the sea. A belt of rugged rocks, averaging 400 feet in height, and from twenty to sixty miles in width, extends along the Atlantic coast from Cape Canso to Cape Sable, and along the Bay of Fundy coast.—The island of Cape Breton is nearly severed in two by Bras d'Or lake and St. Peter's bay. The island is rich in minerals, well wooded, and fertile. The surface is undulating, and the scenery generally beautiful. Sydney is the capital of the island.

**QUESTIONS.**—Point out the position and extent of the Province of Nova Scotia. Describe its appearance and physical features. What is peculiar about the coast-line of Nova Scotia? What is said of Cape Breton Island?

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

## 1. HISTORY OF ACADIE, (OR ACADIA) FROM ITS DISCOVERY UNTIL ITS FINAL CESSION TO THE BRITISH CROWN, IN 1748.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery—Settlement—Intercolonial Wars—Louisbourg.*

1. *Indian Tribes.*—When first discovered, Nova Scotia was inhabited by a tribe of Indians called the Micmacs, which was scattered over Acadie, from Port Royal (Annapolis) to Miramichi. The Micmacs belong to the great Algonquin family, and were called Souriquois (or salt-water men) by the French. They greatly harassed the English colonies during the intercolonial contests; but, in 1761, when the government was firmly established, they finally submitted. In that year they were reduced to 3,000. They are not now more than about half that number.

2. *Discovery.*—Nova Scotia—or Acadie,\* as it was called by the French—originally included New Brunswick, and part of the present state of Maine. The name, however, is now confined to the peninsula alone. It was supposed to have been visited by the Cabots, during their first voyage to America, in 1497. As early as 1504–6, some fishermen, from Basque and Bretagne in France, while engaged in the cod-fishery off Newfoundland, reached the promontory of an island to the south-west of that island, to which they gave the name of Cape Breton,—after their own people in France. The name was subsequently extended to the whole island. In 1518, Baron de La Roche proposed to found a French settlement in Acadie; but, on account of adverse circumstances, the expedition was abandoned. In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert took formal possession of Newfoundland and the adjacent countries, in the name of England;

\* In regard to this name, see note on page 86.

QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter XXVIII relate? Mention its principal subjects. Name the Indians inhabiting Nova Scotia on its discovery. What was the French name of Nova Scotia. When was it first discovered?

and, in 1590, Cape Breton was resorted to by the English. In 1598 an attempt was made to colonize Nova Scotia by the French, under Marquis de la Roche. His settlers being convicts, he feared they might be lawless, if set free on the main land. He therefore left forty of them on Sable Island, an inhospitable spot off the coast. Returning from the main land to the island, his ship was driven off the coast by a storm. He then sailed for France. Here, on landing, he was imprisoned by a partisan in the then civil war, and was not able for five years to apprise Henri IV of his unfinished effort in founding the colony. The King, on learning the facts of the case, at once sent Chetodel, de la Roche's pilot, to the island to bring back the convicts to France. On their return, the King, being touched with the miserable condition of the twelve survivors, pardoned them, and gave each of them fifty crowns.

3. *Settlement of Port Royal.*—The traffic in furs having attracted the attention of traders, Sieur Dupont-Gravé,\* and Chauvin, a master-mariner, they succeeded to the rights of the Marquis de la Roche, and dispatched an expedition to the new world. Chauvin having died, Dupont-Gravé induced de Chaste, governor of Dieppe, to join him in the enterprise. With his aid, a company of Rouen merchants was formed; and in 1603 an expedition was fitted out and sent to New France under command of Champlain. On de Chaste's death, Sieur de Monts, governor of Pons, and a Huguenot, succeeded him. On the return of the expedition, Henri IV, being interested in the scheme, extended the privileges of the company, and another expedition was sent out in 1604. Part of the expedition went to Tadoussac; but de Monts preferred to stop at Acadie. He landed at a place on the south-east side of the coast, where he found a Frenchman, named Rosignol, trading for furs with the Indians without license. The harbour is now called Liver

\* Or Pontgravé. He was a rich merchant of St. Malo.

QUESTIONS.—Who first attempted the settlement of Nova Scotia? What was done by Sir H. Gilbert and by Marquis de la Roche? Describe the settlement of Port Royal? Who was Dupont-Gravé? What did he do?

English.  
by the  
being con-  
the mair  
an inhos  
a land to  
He then  
oned by a  
ive years  
ding the  
, at once  
ing back  
g, being  
urvivors,

s having  
vé,\* and  
ts of the  
n to the  
duced de  
terprise.  
ed; and  
y France  
h, Sieur  
led him.  
rested in  
and an-  
pedition  
Acadie.  
t, where  
rs with  
d Liver

pool. Having confiscated Rosignol's ship, de Monts coasted in a south-westerly direction; he then turned to the north, and entered a large sheet of water, which he named *La Baie Française*.<sup>\*</sup> Having reached a fine basin on the inland coast, Baron de Poutrincourt, a companion of de Monts, and also a Huguenot, was so pleased with the scenery that he obtained a grant of the place,—the first ever made in America,—which was afterwards confirmed by the king. He at once formed a settlement, which he named Port Royal. De Monts continued his voyage round the bay, and, on the festival of St. John the Baptist, discovered the fine river known to the Indians as *Ou-an-gon-dy*, but which he named St. John. Further on he came to an eligible rocky islet, which he named Ste. Croix, at the mouth of another river. This spot he selected as the place of his new settlement. He and his companions, Champlain, d'Orville, &c., remained here for the winter, and suffered great privations. In the meantime, Poutrincourt set sail for France. Dupont Gravé returned, however, early next spring with emigrants and supplies. During the winter Champlain coasted along in a pinnace and reached the river Penobscot, which he named *Pen-to-go-ët*, but which had been previously known as *Nu-rem-bega*. In June he pursued his explorations along the coast in a small bark, passing in succession the Kennebec river, Saco, the Isle of Shoals, the *Mer-ri-mac* (which he named *Rivière du Guast*), Cape Ann, and Cape Cod (which he named Cape Blanc). A harbour full of shoals and sandbars, which they entered, he named Malabar, (but which in 1602 had received the name of Cape Cod, from Gosnold, an English mariner). Here an ill-starred dispute with the Indians, and a failure of provisions, induced them to return to Ste. Croix. Tired of this place, and having found no other suitable spot for settlement, de Monts determined to remove

\* Now Fundy,—from the words *Fond de la Baie*, in old French maps.

a? What  
cribe the  
he do?

QUESTIONS.—Describe the voyage of De Monts. What land-grant was first made in America? Mention the settlement of Port Royal and Ste. Croix. By what name was the Bay of Fundy known?

the whole colony to Port Royal, which he did without delay. Receiving disagreeable news from home, he left Dupont Grévé in charge of the colony with Champlain, and at once proceeded to France.

4. *Vicissitudes of Port Royal.*—Under the guidance of the celebrated Lescarbot,\* and of Poutrincourt, who acted as governor, the colonists set about consolidating their little settlement. De Monts and Dupont-Grévé shortly afterwards returned to France; Poutrincourt and Champlain visited Ste. Croix, and coasted as far as Cape Cod; while Lescarbot explored the coast mountains along the Bay of Fundy. Shortly afterwards a marauding party of Dutchmen from the New Netherlands, hearing, through a traitor colonist, of the stores of peltry at Acadie, suddenly appeared, and rifled even the graves in search of beaver-skins. Scarcely had they recovered from this intrusion, when the intrigues of the merchants of St. Malo so far succeeded as virtually to destroy the protection in the fur-traffic which the Rouen company had enjoyed. News soon arrived at Port Royal that the de Monts' charter had been rescinded, and that the company refused any longer to bear the great expenses of the colony. There was, therefore, no alternative but to abandon it; and much to the grief of Membertou (the venerable Indian sagamore of Annapolis, who had been their fast friend since their arrival), Poutrincourt, Champlain, Lescarbot, and the other colonists, quitted the settlement and returned to France. This they did in 1607. Nothing daunted, however, and with the help of some Dieppe traders, Poutrincourt collected a number of new colonists, and, in 1610, returned to Port Royal. Here he found everything untouched by the

\*Marc Lescarbot was a French lawyer and poet, and a friend of Poutrincourt. He was the author of a History of New France,

QUESTIONS.—Where was the colony removed to, and who was left in charge? Who was Lescarbot? Mention the vicissitudes which these original colonies underwent. What did Poutrincourt do?

natives,  
violent  
dissensi  
nots an  
of ruin.  
own; an  
They re  
Jesuit f  
la Saus  
Port Ro  
Proceed  
weather  
island o  
was for  
Capt. (C  
French.  
Argall  
Dale,\*  
closed t  
determin  
under A  
took it,  
Thus w  
totally  
discover  
claimed  
Samuel  
occurre  
of Ame  
J. E  
Port R

\*Sir T  
in 1611.

QUES  
founded  
the Fre

natives, as he had gained their confidence and regard. The violent death of Henri IV shortly afterwards, and the religious dissensions about the colony which followed between the Huguenots and the Jesuits, brought it a second time to the verge of ruin. The Jesuits determined to found a colony of their own; and Pères Biard and Masse left France for that purpose. They reached Port Royal in 1611. In 1612 du Thet, another Jesuit father, arrived, but returned soon afterwards. In 1613, la Saussage, a cavalier, and Pères Quentin and du Thet reached Port Royal, and took on board the two Jesuit fathers there. Proceeding towards the river Pentagoet (Penobscot), misty weather compelled la Saussage, the leader, to land at the island of Monte-Desert. Here the colony of St. Sauveur was formed. The English, who claimed all this region, sent Capt. (Sir Samuel) Argall from Virginia to dispossess the French. This was soon done, as the colony was defenceless. Argall returned to Virginia, and, having shown to Sir Thomas Dale,\* the governor, la Saussage's commission, which disclosed the colonizing intentions of the French, Sir Thomas determined to drive them out of Acadie. Three armed vessels under Argall were sent against Port Royal in 1613. He soon took it, destroyed the settlement, and dispersed the colonists. Thus was Port Royal, after a three-fold disaster, for the time totally destroyed; and thus, by virtue of Cabot's visit and discovery, and Gilbert's act of possession, Nova Scotia was claimed and conquered by the Virginia colonists, under Sir Samuel Argall, in 1613. This was the first hostile act which occurred between the French and the English on the Continent of America.

*J. English Efforts to Settle Acadie.*—After the capture of Port Royal, the English forces left Acadie, although laying

---

\* Sir Thomas Dale succeeded Lord Delaware as Governor of Virginia in 1611. Sir Samuel Argall was appointed Deputy-Governor in 1617.

---

QUESTIONS.—Under what circumstances was the colony of St. Sauveur founded? What befel it? Who was Sir T. Dale? Why did Argall expel the French from Acadie? What is said of it?



claim to it nominally. By virtue of this claim, King James I, in 1621, granted a patent to Sir William Alexander (afterwards the Earl of Stirling) authorizing him to settle the colony, and for that purpose conveyed to him that part of French Acadie which lay to the eastwards of a line drawn from the river Ste. Croix to the St. Lawrence. In the patent the name Acadie was changed to Nova Scotia. In order to promote its settlement, the king founded in 1624 the order of (150) Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia. Each baronet was to receive 16,000 acres of land, and was required to fit out and send thither six settlers, or in default to pay 2,000 marks. In 1625, Charles I renewed the patent, and even included in the grant the whole of the country stretching from the St. Lawrence to California.

6. *Capture from, and Cession to, France.*—In 1627 a large fleet of transports, with cannon for Port Royal, was captured by the English in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Next year, 1628, Port Royal itself was taken by Sir David Kertk, as well as a fleet of French transports in the St. Lawrence. In 1629, Quebec was captured by him; but the French, having lost it for a time, still held possession of Cape Sable, as well as other places in the south of Acadie. In 1629–30, Sir William Alexander conveyed part of his territory to Claude (afterwards Sir Claudius) de la Tour, who had been taken prisoner on board the transports, and brought to England, where he married an English lady. About the same time Captain Daniel captured an English fort on Cape Breton. De la Tour was sent to take Acadie from the French; but his son, who held one of the forts, refused to give it up, although entreated to do so by his father. He then used force to effect its capture, but without effect. Finally de la Tour desisted in his attack, but remained in Acadie in a house erected outside of the fort by his son. At length, in 1632, Charles I, by the treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, through the influence of Cardinal Richelieu, ceded the entire

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the efforts made by the English to settle Acadia. How did Claude de la Tour obtain part of Acadie? What led to the unnatural contest between father and son for the possession of Acadie?

colony to the French. They divided it into three provinces, and placed them under as many proprietary governors, viz., de Razillai, young de la Tour, and M. Denys. On De Razillai's death at La Hève, in 1635, Charles de Menou, lord of Aunlay and Charnizay, succeeded him; and soon afterwards Razillai's brothers ceded their rights to him. Charnizay came out from France to take possession of his province, and removed the colony of his predecessor from la Hève, or la Have, to Penobscot, in order to be nearer the rival colonies of New England. In the territorial disputes which now arose between himself and young de la Tour, Louis XIII at length interfered, and in 1638 defined the boundaries of each disputant. To de la Tour was given the whole of Acadie lying west of a line drawn from the centre of the Bay of Fundy to Canseau; to Charnizay was given the country east of that line, including la Hève, Port Royal, Penobscot and the coast of the Etchemins, in New France. De la Tour, who had already erected a fort on the St. John river, refused to accept these boundaries, and Charnizay was ordered to arrest him. De la Tour applied to Governor Winthrop for succour, which was granted. Charnizay was compelled to retreat, and was even pursued by de la Tour as far as Port Royal, where he bravely defended himself. Charnizay objected to this interference, and seized some New England vessels. At length Winthrop, on behalf of New England offered to make a friendly treaty, and to enter into trading relations with him. This was done; and the treaty took effect in October, 1644. Charnizay now felt himself relieved from English interference, and, in the absence of young de la Tour, commenced his attack on de la Tour's fort. De la Tour's wife, with great spirit, made an heroic defence. Being betrayed by a Swiss on Easter Day, 1645, Madame de la Tour, took refuge in the works, where she resisted Charnizay so bravely, that he offered to agree to her terms. Mortified to find

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the three provinces, of Charnizay, of de la Tour, of Louis XIII, and of Governor Winthrop? What is said of Madame de la Tour? Where was her husband?

her force so small, he dishonourably repudiated his word, and with ineffable cowardice hung all but one of Madame de la Tour's brave defenders. He even compelled this noble woman, with a halter round her neck, to witness his own breach of faith. She did not long survive this inhuman act, but sank under its infliction, and died soon after. Charnizay was, however, applauded by the King and Queen for the capture of the fort, and was in 1647 appointed Governor of the whole country. He exerted himself to advance the colony, but died in 1650. De la Tour (then engaged in the fur-trade in Hudson Bay), on Charnizay's death returned to Nova Scotia in 1651, and, shortly afterwards, married Charnizay's widow. \*Charnizay's sister also bequeathed her claim to de la Tour. On the strength of this triple title, young de la Tour claimed Nova Scotia as his right.

7. *Cromwell's Expedition against Acadie.*—Under these circumstances, Cardinal Mazarin, who had no confidence in De la Tour, instigated a creditor of Charnizay, named La Borgne, to dispossess him and the other proprietary governors. M. Denys, of Chedabucto, was surprised; the settlement of La Hève was burnt; and at the time when La Borgne thought he had De la Tour in his power, suddenly a new antagonist appeared upon the scene, who settled the quarrel by driving both disputants off the field, and possessing himself of the entire colony. Oliver Cromwell, then Lord High Protector of England,\* taking advantage of the strife among the French colonists of Acadie, despatched a force from England, under Colonel Sedgewick,

\* Oliver Cromwell was born in England in 1599. He entered Parliament 1628. While there he acquired great influence with the puritan party, and when the contest against the arbitrary conduct of Charles I. arose, he espoused the puritan and parliamentary cause. As a military leader and general of cavalry, he inflicted great loss on the royalist army, and finally in 1653, reached the position of Lord High Protector of England. He died in 1659, aged 60 years.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the disgraceful conduct of Charnizay. What did de la Tour do after Charnizay's death? What expedition was sent against Acadie by Cromwell. Sketch his career.

who in 1654 defeated de la Tour at the St. John, and la Borgne at Port Royal, and re-took the colony. Charnizay's fort at Pentagoet (Penobscot) was also taken without difficulty. De la Tour then went to England to appeal to Cromwell. The English, in the meantime, only held possession of Port Royal, and the French continued their settlements in the interior. In 1656, Cromwell confirmed Charles de la Tour's claim, and granted to him, as well as to Sir Thomas Temple and William Crowne, the chief part of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.



Oliver Cromwell.

Temple and Crowne purchased de la Tour's share, and expended \$80,000 in repairing the defences of the fort. In 1667, England again ceded the colony to France, by the treaty of Breda.

8. *New England Expedition.*—The French, having concerted a plan to attack and capture several places in the English colonies, these colonies united in a scheme of vigorous retaliation upon the French settlements. In doing so, Sir Wm. Phipps was sent from Massachusetts, in 1690. He took Port Royal (which he dismantled), Chedabucto, and L'isle Percée, and then returned to Boston. Villebon, the French governor of Acadie, soon recaptured them; and from his fort at Natchwack, on the St. John, the Indians were supplied with arms to attack the colonists of New England. D'Iberville having arrived from Quebec, it was resolved to effect the reduction of Pemaquid. Having taken an English vessel, Villebon and d'Iberville were joined at Penobscot by Baron de St. Castine\* and

\* Baron de St. Castin, or Castine, of Oberon in Berne, was a veteran officer of the Royal Carignan regiment, which was sent out to New France. He lived among the Abenakis Indians for twenty years. He married a

QUESTIONS.—How did Cromwell settle de la Tour's claim to Nova Scotia? Who purchased de la Tour's share? What led to an attack from New England? Give an account of it. What is said of the Baron St. Castine?

two hundred Indians. Fear of the Indians induced the commandant of the fort to capitulate; but that did not save them from the fury of the Indians. Villebon was afterwards taken and sent to Boston. Massachusetts retaliated, and sent Col. Church, who took all the forts in Acadie, with the exception of that of Villebon on the St. John. By the treaty of Ryswick, in 1696, however, England again restored Nova Scotia to France. Massachusetts having soon afterwards suffered from the attacks of the Acadian French, another New England expedition, under Colonel Marck, sailed from Nantucket for Port Royal, in 1707, but failed to do more than destroy property of considerable value outside the fort. Again, in 1710, an armament, under General Nicholson, left Boston for Port Royal. He captured the place, and changed its name to Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne. In 1713, by the Treaty of Utrecht, Acadie including the Island of Canceaux or Canceau (Canso) was finally ceded to England by Louis xiv,\* and

the name Nova Scotia confirmed. Cape Breton was ceded to the French.



Louis XIV.

9. *Indian Hostilities and Reprisals.*—The Indians, who were fast friends of the French, waged a continual predatory war against the English settlements. They refused to be bound by the treaty of Utrecht, as they had not been parties to it. Vaudreuil, the Governor of New France, encouraged them in this

quaw, and adopted the Indian habits. He had great influence with the aborigines, and was looked upon as their tutelary deity.

\* Louis xiv (de Bourbon), King of France, was born in 1638. He succeeded to the throne with his mother (Anne of Austria) as Queen regent, in 1643. His reign was long and memorable; and his court was noted for its gaily and extravagance. He died in 1715, aged 77 years.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Penobscot; Villebon; Col. Church; the Treaty of Ryswick; Col. Marck; Gen. Nicholson; Queen Anne; Louis xiv. Sketch his career; Treaty of Utrecht; Indian hostilities and reprisals.



and the com-  
t save them  
wards taken  
and sent Col.  
e exception  
of Ryswick,  
a Scotia to  
ffered from  
w England  
ntucket for  
destroy pro-  
n, in 1710,  
on for Port  
s name to  
the Treaty  
ux or Can-  
s xiv,\* and  
confirmed.  
the French.  
and Repri-  
were fast  
aged a con-  
against the  
they refused  
of Utrecht,  
rties to it.  
r of New  
m in this  
nce with the

1733. He suc-  
neen regent,  
was noted for

Church; the  
Anne; Louis  
and reprise's

view, and declared that they were not mentioned in the treaty, but that they were an independent people. In 1720, they attacked an English fishing station at Canseau, killed some of the settlers, and destroyed property to the amount of \$100,000. They also boarded ships and plundered them, and even attacked the fort at Annapolis. At length an expedition was sent from Massachusetts up the Kennebec against their principal village at Norridge-wo-ack. The village was destroyed, and many of the Indians were killed, as well as their missionary, father Rasles, or Rallé, who had been forty years among them, but who had been accused of instigating them against the English.

10. *First Capture of Louisbourg.*—Cape Breton, called Isle du Cape by Verrazzani, and Isle Royale by the French, was, although frequented by French fishermen, not taken possession of by the French government until 1714, when Gen. Nicholson was appointed Governor of Nova Scotia. He was in 1719 succeeded by Governor Philips, who received instructions to form a Council of the principal inhabitants, until a House of Assembly could be elected. In the meantime, he was directed to regulate himself by instructions from the Governor of Virginia. Having lost Nova Scotia, the French turned their attention to this island as a great fishing-station, and in 1720 commenced the fortifications of Louisbourg. These they were completed at a cost of \$5,500,000. From this stronghold the French harassed the English settlements of Nova Scotia and New England. At length France declared war against England, in 1744. Louisbourg being a strong naval arsenal, French privateers against the fisheries of Nova Scotia and the commerce of New England were fitted out and took refuge there. Du Quesnel, the Governor of Cape Breton, captured the garrison on Canseau island, and burned the houses there. Unsuccessful attacks were also made upon Annapolis and Placentia (Newfoundland). This led to active

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Nova Scotia Indians; of Annapolis; of father Rallé? Trace the chief events leading to the first capture of Louisbourg. What did the fortifications cost? What did du Quesnel do?



measures against Cape Breton; and, in 1745, Shirley,\* the Governor of Massachusetts, proposed the capture of Louisbourg, but he only carried the measure in the Legislature by a majority of one vote. The colonies of Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Connecticut joined and furnished troops and transports; Clinton, the Governor of New York, sent artillery; and Pennsylvania, provisions. The colonies of Rhode Island and New York did nothing until after the capture of Cape Breton. The command of the expedition (4,000 strong) was entrusted to General Pepperell. The celebrated Whitfield gave as a motto for the flag of the expedition, the words "*Nil desperandum Christo duce.*" Colonial cruisers were also sent to watch Louisbourg. At Canseau, the rendezvous, they were joined by some English ships, under the command of Admiral Sir Peter Warren, (uncle of Sir William Johnson), with 800 men. They reached Chapeau Rouge (contracted to Gabarus [roose]) Bay on the 9th May, and landed to the rear of the town. Their encampment extended in a curved line, outside the fortress. Col. Vaughan of New Hampshire, an active and intrepid officer soon captured the outposts and with only thirteen men surprised the Loyal battery, taking 400 men prisoners of war. (See engraving.) Admiral Warren also captured the *Vigilante*, a 74-gun ship, with 500 men, money, and military stores. To reach the fort, cannon had to be dragged on sledges across the marsh, and, on the 21st of May, the siege was commenced. Other ships soon afterwards arrived, and it was then decided to attack the

\* General William Shirley, an English lawyer, emigrated to Massachusetts in 1733. He was appointed royal governor in 1741, and remained until 1756, when he was succeeded in that office by General Abercrombie. In 1745 he took part in the expedition against Niagara; and in 1755 projected the scheme for the capture of Louisbourg. He was sent to Paris as a boundary commissioner under the Treaty of Aix la Chapelle. He was a most able officer. He died in Massachusetts in 1771.

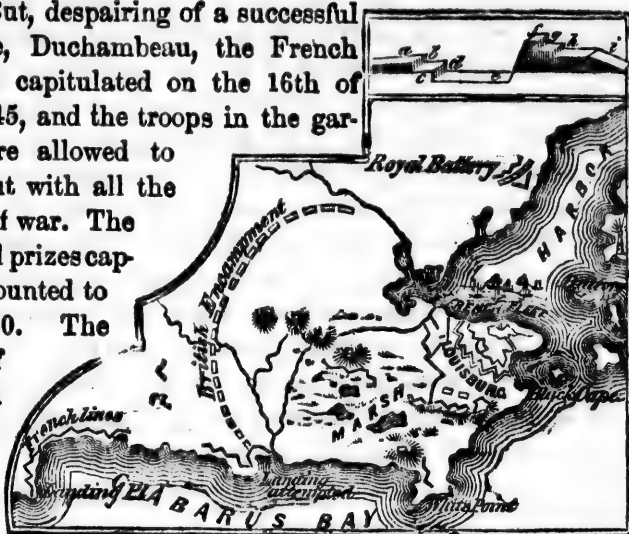
QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Gen. William Shirley. What is said of Sir William Pepperell; Whitfield; Sir P. Warren; Col. Vaughan. Give an account of the siege of Louisbourg. Mention how it was conducted?

Shirley,\* the  
of Louis-  
islature by  
achusetts,  
shed troops  
York, sent  
colonies of  
he capture  
ion (4,000  
celebrated  
dition, the  
al cruisers  
he rendez-  
under the  
le of Sir  
l Chapeau  
9th May,  
campment  
Vaughan  
n captured  
the Loyal  
ngravng.)  
gun ship,  
h the fort,  
arsh, and,  
her ships  
attack the

o Massachu-  
d remained  
percrombie.  
In 1755 pro-  
ent to Paris  
le. He was

t is add of  
han. Give  
cond eted?

place. But, despairing of a successful resistance, Duchambreau, the French governor, capitulated on the 16th of June, 1745, and the troops in the gar- rison were allowed to march out with all the honours of war. The stores and prizes cap- tured amounted to \$5,000,000. The island of St. Jean (now Prince Edward) was also at the



Capture of Louisbourg in 1745.\*

same time claimed by the victors. To mark his sense of the importance of the capture, the King rewarded Admiral War- ren, Governors Shirley and Wentworth, and conferred upon Gen. Pepperrell a baronetcy. In 1746, the Duke d'Anville was sent with a French fleet to retake the island, as well as Annapolis, Boston, and other New England cities. De Ramzay with French Indians and Canadians, was prepared to co-operate with him against Annapolis. When it was known that d'Anville was upon the coasts, the English colonists assembled in the churches, and prayed fervently that the impending

\* EXPLANATION OF THE UPPER PART OF THE MAP.—a, Glacis, or extreme outside slope of the defences; b, Banquette, or step, upon which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet (f); c, Covered way into the fort, under the banquette; d, Counterscarp, a bank or wall, outside the ditch (e); e, The ditch or trench; f, The parapet, or protection for men and guns inside; g, The inner banquette; h, Ramparts, or most solid embankments of the fort; i, Talus, or last slope inside the fort.]

QUESTIONS.—Point out in the engraving the position of the opposing forces. Explain the principal terms relating to the upper part of the sketch? How were the victors rewarded? What did the French do to retake it?

invasion might be prevented. Their prayers were heard; for storms and disease wasted his forces, and the enterprise was abandoned. De Ramzay, however, maintained himself against the English colonists who were sent to dislodge him from Annapolis. The duke died of chagrin; and Jonquière, the governor of Canada, being on board, became his successor. He insisted that d'Estournelle, the vice admiral, should prosecute the enterprise; but d'Estournelle refused, and put an end to his life in despair. In 1748, the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle restored Cape Breton to the French, against the wish of the New England captors (whose expenses, of upwards of a million of dollars, were, however, repaid by England in 1749); but the same treaty confirmed the cession of Nova Scotia to the British Crown.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA FROM ITS CESSION, IN 1748, UNTIL  
FIRST UNION WITH CAPE BRETON, IN 1820.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Halifax—Old French War—Settled Government—Political  
and Social Progress—Governors.*

1. *Frontier Commission—Exodus of Acadians.*—Soon after the treaty was signed, disputes arose as to the new boundaries of French and British America, especially in the valley of the Ohio river and in Acadie. Colonel Mascarene,\* the British

\* John Paul Mascarene was born in France in 1684. At the revocation of Henri IV's Edict of Nantes by Louis XIV, Mascarene's father, who was a Huguenot, had to fly. Young Mascarene at the age of 12, went to Geneva, and thence to England, where he was naturalised, in 1706. Having received a lieutenant's commission, he came to America in 1711, and was employed in Nova Scotia. In 1720 he became a member of Governor Phillips' Council. From 1740 to 1749, he was lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia, and after-

QUESTIONS.—How did the English colonists act at this crisis? To what does Chapter XXIX relate? Give the principal subjects of it. What occurred after the treaty? Give a sketch of Colonel Mascarene.

governor of Nova Scotia, maintained that the boundaries of Nova Scotia, or Acadie, as ceded to Britain, extended as far south-westward as the mouth of the Penobscot river, thence north to the St. Lawrence, including the peninsula of Gaspé, and the whole of the Nova Scotian peninsula. La Galissonnière, the French governor of New France, or Canada, insisted that Acadie only extended to the Bay of Fundy (Française) and Minas Basin, and did not include either the isthmus, or the Cobequid-Chiegnecto peninsula. In order to support his views, and to prevent further encroachments upon New France, he induced about three thousand Acadian French to migrate from the south to the north shore of the Bay of Fundy, and to the isle St. Jean (Prince Edward). La Jonquière, who succeeded La Galissonnière, hesitated to adopt the policy of his predecessor; but he sent an expedition against Minas, and the French government directed la Corne, a military adventurer, to erect forts on the disputed territory. The British governor Cornwallis despatched Major Lawrence to resist la Corne, and also to erect forts on the same territory. La Corne burned Chiegnecto, and defied Lawrence to attack him there. Major Lawrence declined to do so, and returned to Halifax. Next year, however, Chiegnecto was taken. Previously to this, in 1749, a joint commission was appointed to define the respective boundaries of both colonies.

2. *Halifax Founded.*—In the meantime, at the urgent request of the New England colonies, the British government offered free grants of land to such of the military as might choose to settle in Nova Scotia. A free passage was also offered, as well as tools, arms, and rations for a year. In consequence of this liberality, nearly 4,000 disbanded soldiers,

wards served as a member of the council of his successor, Governor Cornwallis. He was made a colonel in 1750, and returned to Boston, his wife's birth place, where he died in 1760, aged 76 years.

---

QUESTIONS.—What disputes occurred about the Acadian boundary, and with what result? How did la Galissonnière seek to promote the French view of the treaty? Give the particulars of the founding of Halifax.

under Governor Cornwallis, arrived in Chebucto Harbour on the 21st of June, 1749, and on its shores commenced the settlement of a town. In honour of the Lord Halifax, then Lord President of the English Board of Trade and Plantations, (who had taken an active interest in the project of settlement), they named the new town "Halifax."

3. *Colonial Government established.*—On the 14th of July, 1749, Cornwallis established the government of the colony, and appointed six members of council to aid him. In 1752, Cornwallis returned to England, and was succeeded by Governor Thomas Hobson. In the following year, nearly 1,500 Germans joined the colony, and settled in the county of Lunenburg.

4. *Old French War.*—The great war of 1755–63, called the old French and Indian war, which ended in the cession of Canada, originated chiefly in the territorial disputes between the French and English colonists on the banks of the Ohio to which we have referred (see page 91), but it was also doubtless hastened by the harsh treatment and unfeeling expulsion of the Acadians in the previous year.

5. *Expedition against Nova Scotia.*—At the conference of British governors held at Alexandria, Virginia, in April, 1754 (see page 94), one of the four expeditions planned was the reduction of Louisbourg by Governor Lawrence. In 1755 the first blow was struck in this memorable seven years' war. In



Fort Beauséjour.

May of that year, a force under Col. Winslow was despatched from Boston to attack the French forts in the disputed territory on the north shore of the Bay of Fundy. Here he was joined by Col. Monckton with regular troops and artillery. They soon invested Fort Beauséjour, which was command-

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was a settled government established in Nova Scotia? What disputes led to the old French and Indian war? Give an account of the expedition against Nova Scotia and the forts there.



Harbour on  
ced the set-  
t, then Lord  
ations, (who  
ment), they

th of July,  
colony, and  
1762, Corn-  
y Governor  
0 Germans  
enburg.

, called the  
cession of  
es between  
of the Ohio  
t was also  
unfeeling

ference of  
April, 1758  
d was the  
n 1755 the  
' war. In  
orce under  
ched from  
ench forts  
ry on the  
of Fundy.  
l. Monck-  
and artil-  
sted Fort  
command-

established  
ndian war?  
forts there.

ed by de Verger, captured it and changed its name to Fort Cumberland. They also took a small fort on the Gaspereau. The fort on the St. John was abandoned and burnt.

6. *Expulsion of the Acadians.*—In the harassing disputes which arose between the French and English in regard to the boundaries of Nova Scotia, the Acadian French, although called neutrals, incited the Indians, and took part with them against the English colonists. They also assisted la Corne in his attack on Bay Verte in 1750. Fearing that they would aid their countrymen in invading Nova Scotia, Cols. Winslow and Monckton, on the 10th of September, 1755, collected the Acadian population at various points, on pretence of conferring with them, and then cruelly forced them, young and old, innocent and guilty, on board several ships, which conveyed them to New England, New York, Virginia, and Georgia. About 7,000 were thus exiled, and their lands and cattle were confiscated. Their places were chiefly filled by New England colonists. After the peace of 1763, many of the exiles returned to Nova Scotia, and settled in the interior.

5. *Final Capture of Louisbourg.*—In 1756, an unsuccessful attempt was made against Louisbourg; but in 1758, after a vigorous defence for two months, it was finally taken from the French, by a force of nearly 40,000 men, under Gens. Amherst, Wolfe, and Admiral Boscawen. Its fortifications were destroyed, and the inhabitants sent to France.

8. *System of Government from the Conquest.*—The government of Nova Scotia was, from its conquest in 1713 until 1719, vested solely in the governor as commander-in-chief. In that year a council of twelve, appointed by the crown, was associated with him in the administration of public affairs. In cases of emergency, the governor was required to place himself under the direction of the governor of Virginia. Thus the governor and council within themselves exercised the three-fold

---

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the expulsion from Nova Scotia of the French Acadians. What gave rise to the old Indian and French war? Give an account of the final capture of Louisbourg. What became of it?



functions and powers of legislature, judiciary, and executive. This system continued until 1749, when the seat of government was removed from Annapolis Royal to the new town of Halifax; and Governor Cornwallis was directed to establish three courts of law in the colony.

9. *Settled System of Government.*—In 1758, a constitution was granted to Nova Scotia by England; and, on the second of October in that year, its first Provincial Parliament was convened, under the auspices of Governor Lawrence. The Legislature consisted of the Governor, and of an Executive and Legislative Council combined, of twelve members, appointed by the Crown, together with a House of Assembly of twenty-two members, elected by the rate-payers. Although a want of harmony existed between the House of Assembly and the Executive Council, many good laws were nevertheless passed during the first session. In order to promote the settlement of the colony, liberal grants of land were authorized to be made to settlers in the colony; and a promise was made to them of military protection. The Legislature was prorogued in April, 1759; and, in October of that year, the colony sustained a great loss in the death of Governor Lawrence. He was deeply lamented; and a monument was erected to his memory in Halifax. In the same month George II died; and a re-election of a House of Representatives became necessary. In July, 1761, the new Legislature met at Halifax; and while it was in session, the Indians of the colony entered into a formal treaty of peace with the Governor, and their chief solemnly buried the hatchet in the presence of the Governor and Legislature. In 1763, Cape Breton was annexed to Nova Scotia, and in 1765 it was formed into a county. In 1770, Prince Edward Island was separated from the government of Nova Scotia. In 1775–76 much sympathy was expressed in some parts of Nova Scotia with the American revolutionists; in

---

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the system of government in Nova Scotia from its conquest to 1719 and 1749. What change then took place? Trace the events occurring from 1758 to 1760. What two noted deaths took place in 1759?

conse  
fected  
Hous

10.

After

Frenc

1764,

magi

Halif

of Ca

Amer

and

large

separ

was

mem

John

Scoti

Scoti

were

Willi

IV,

Asse

1806

Mar

hara

to N

peop

four

181

Win

Leg

182

suff

Q

Rev

1814

d executive.  
t of govern-  
new town of  
to establish

constitution  
the second  
liament was  
rence. The  
ecutive and  
, appointed  
y of twenty-  
ugh 'a want  
bly and the  
less passed  
settlement  
rized to be  
as made to  
prorogued  
colony sus-  
rence. He  
cted to his  
died; and  
necessary.  
and while it  
to a formal  
f solemnly  
and Legis-  
ova Scotia,  
70, Prince  
t of Nova  
d in some  
onists; in

otia from its  
e the events  
ace in 1760!

consequence of which, the members representing the disaffected districts were not permitted to take their seats in the House of Assembly.

10. *Various Interesting Facts—Loyalists—Maroons, &c.—*

After the peace of 1763, many of the disaffected Acadian French who were exiled in 1755 returned to Nova Scotia. In 1764, captains of the King's ships in Halifax were appointed magistrates *ex officio*. In 1765, contributions were made at Halifax, at the request of General Murray, Governor-General of Canada, to aid the sufferers by fire in Montreal. After the American revolution, about 20,000 of the Royalists were exiled and settled in Nova Scotia. In 1784, in consequence of the large influx of the loyalists, Cape Breton was erected into a separate government, with a capital at Sydney; but in 1820 it was again reunited to Nova Scotia, and authorized to send two members to the Legislature. In 1784 New Brunswick and St. John's Island (Prince Edward), were also detached from Nova Scotia and made separate governments. In that year, the Nova Scotia House of Assembly consisted of thirty-six members, who were returned from eight counties and one city. In 1787, Prince William Henry (then serving in the navy), afterwards William IV, was entertained by the Executive Council and House of Assembly. In 1792, the great Pictou road was opened. In 1806 the militia was organized. In 1796 about 600 of the Maroons of Jamaica (who as a race had, for forty years, harassed the English settlements of that island), were removed to Nova Scotia, with a view to their settlement there as a free people. After trying the costly experiment unsuccessfully for four years they were transferred to Sierra Leone in 1800. In 1816 a stage-coach line was established between Halifax and Windsor. In 1814, \$10,000 were granted by the Nova Scotia Legislature to aid the sufferers by the war in Canada, and in 1827 nearly \$20,000 were collected in Nova Scotia to aid the sufferers by the great fire in Miramichi, New Brunswick.

QUESTIONS.—What was the state of feeling in respect to the American Revolution? Give a sketch of the most interesting facts from 1763 to 1814. What did the Nova Scotia Legislature do in 1814, and in 1827?

## CHAPTER XXX.

## HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA AND CAPE BRETON, FROM THEIR UNION, IN 1820, UNTIL 1866.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Political and Commercial Progress—Present Period—Governors.*

1. *Political and Commercial Progress.*—In 1820, efforts were first formally made to protect the English fisheries on the coast. In 1823 the Roman Catholics were admitted to the full enjoyment of equal civil privileges with other denominations. In 1824, an act was passed authorizing the construction of the Shubenacadie canal, designed to connect Halifax with Cobequid Bay. In 1828, \$1,500 per annum were granted to establish a line of stages between Halifax and Annapolis.

2. *Present Period.*—In 1838, the Executive-Legislative Council was dissolved. An Executive Council of nine members, and a Legislative Council of nineteen members, appointed by the Crown, was substituted in its place. In the same year, a deputation from Nova Scotia was sent to confer with Lord Durham (Governor-General of British North America), at Quebec, on a proposed change in the constitution. A confederation of the provinces was also a subject of consideration at that time, as it was with the Duke of Kent in 1814; in Canada in 1849, and between all the provinces in 1854-6. In 1848, a system of government, responsible to the Legislature, as in Canada, was introduced. In 1851 the public statutes were revised and consolidated. In the same year further efforts were made to protect the fisheries; and, in 1852, a Provincial force, auxiliary to the Imperial, was placed under the direction of the British Admiral for that purpose. Afterwards a fishing and reciprocity treaty was made with the United States, but it was abrogated by that country in 1866. In 1860

**QUESTIONS.**—Mention the principal subjects of chapter XXX. Give a sketch of the political and commercial progress made from 1820 to 1828—and from 1833 to 1852? What was done in 1852 to protect the fisheries?

His R  
and w  
tants.

discov  
other

federal  
one go

each p  
Resolu

Nova  
it is st

the Ho

3. G  
cillors  
or dea

and E

M. de F  
Isaac de  
Charles  
Charles

A. Mar

2.

Col. Ve  
Francis  
Richard

Edward

Peregrin

Charles

Hon. R

Jenath

Montag

Michael

Lord V

Francis

Mariot

Richard

Sir A

John H

QUE

portan

and th

OM THEIR

Governors.

20, efforts

fisheries on

admitted to

er denomi-

e construc

et Halifax

re granted

anapolis.

ative Coun-

members,

ointed by

ame year,

with Lord

erica), at

. A con-

sideration

4; in Ca-

In 1848,

ture, as in

utes were

her efforts

Provincial

the direc-

afterwards

the United

In 1860

x. Give a

20 to 1828—

e fisheries?

His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales visited Nova Scotia, and was enthusiastically received by all classes of the inhabitants. In addition to the other valuable minerals, gold was discovered in 1861. In 1864 Nova Scotia united with the other colonies in the consideration of a scheme for the confederation of all the provinces of British North America under one government. With that view, a meeting of delegates from each province was held at Charlottetown, Halifax, and Quebec. Resolutions approving of confederation were passed by the Nova Scotia Legislature in 1866; and the feeling in favour of it is strong in Nova Scotia, although the scheme is opposed by the Hon. Joseph Howe, who is her leading statesman.

3. *Governors of Nova Scotia.*—Not including Senior Councillors who acted as Lieutenant-Governors during the absence or death of that officer, the following is a list of the French and English Governors of Acadie, or Nova Scotia:

1. FRENCH GOVERNORS OF ACADIE AT PORT ROYAL.

M. de Poutrincourt.....	1604	M. de Villebon .....	1687
Isaac de Razillai.....	1633	M. de Brouillon .....	1700
Charles de Charnizay.....	1647	M. de Subercase .....	1706
Charles de la Tour.....	1652	Baron St. Castine.....	1710
M. Manival.....	1685		

2. ENGLISH GOVERNORS OF NOVA SCOTIA AT PORT ROYAL.

Col. Vetch.....	1710	Lawrence Armstrong, Esq.....	1729
Francis Nicholson, Esq.....	1714	Paul Mascarene, Esq.....	1747
Richard Philips, Esq.....	1719		

3. ENGLISH GOVERNORS OF NOVA SCOTIA AT HALIFAX.

Edward Cornwallis, Esq ....	1749	Edward Fanning, Esq.....	1783
Peregrine T. Hobson, Esq ...	1752	John Wentworth, Esq.....	1792
Charles Lawrence, Esq.....	1754	Sir George Prevost.....	1808
Hon. Robert Monckton .....	1756	Sir John Coape Sherbrooke..	1811
Jonathan Belcher, Esq.....	1761	Earl of Dalhousie.....	1819
Montague Wilmot, Esq.....	1763	Sir John Kempt .....	1820
Michael Francklin, Esq. 1722 & 1766		Sir Peregrine Maitland.....	1828
Lord William Campbell 1766 & 1772		Sir Colin Campbell.....	1834
Francis Legge, Esq.....	1773	Lord Falkland.....	1840
Mariot Arbuthnot, Esq.. ....	1776	Sir John Harvey.....	1846
Richard Hughes, Esq.....	1778	Sir J. G. LeMarchant.....	1852
Sir Andrew S. Hammond.....	1781	The Earl of Mulgrave.....	1856
John Parr, Esq.....	1782	Sir Richard Graves Macdonell	1864

QUESTIONS.—Name the notable event which occurred in 1860. What important political step was taken in 1864? What is said of the confederation and the Hon. J. Howe? Name the governors of Acadie, and Nova Scotia

## CHAPTER XXXI.

## SKETCH OF THE CIVIL INSTITUTIONS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Civil Government—Judiciary—Municipal System.*

1. *The Constitution* is founded upon Treaties. Orders in Council, Royal Instructions, and Imperial and Colonial Acts. Nova Scotia, then called Acadie,\* was settled by the French, under De Monts, in 1604; ceded to England in 1713; colonized in 1748-9; a Constitution was granted in 1758; in 1784 it was modified; Responsible Government (as in Canada) was introduced in 1848; and the public statutes were revised and consolidated in 1851. Cape Breton was taken from France by England in 1758; ceded in 1763; annexed to Nova Scotia in the same year; separated from it in 1784, and re-annexed again in 1819.

2. *The System of Government* is, like that in Canada and the other provinces, monarchical in its most popular form, and is modelled after that of Great Britain. The Governor-in-Chief is nominally subordinate to the Governor-General of Canada, and is the special representative of the Queen in the province. He is assisted in his duties of government by an Executive Council, consisting of nine members, who must have seats in either branch of the Legislature, and who form the heads of the various executive departments of the government.

3. *The Legislature* consists (1) of the Governor-in-Chief; (2) of the Legislative Council, of twenty-one members, appointed by the Queen for life; and (3) of the House of Assembly, or Representatives, of fifty-five members, elected every four years. The powers of the Legislature are identical with those of the Legislature of Canada,—which see, pages 202-210.

---

\* So called from the first settlers, who were from La Cadie in France.

**QUESTIONS.**—To what does chapter xxxi relate? Mention the principal subjects of it. Give a sketch of the constitution of Nova Scotia. Describe the system of government established in Nova Scotia. Sketch the Legislature.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

## SKETCH OF THE EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Education—Colleges—Grammar and Common Schools.*

1. *First Educational Efforts.*—The earliest public effort made in Nova Scotia on behalf of education was in 1780, when a grant of \$6,000 was made by the Legislature to erect a building for a Superior School at Halifax, with a further grant of \$400 per annum for a master, and \$200 for an usher, whenever the number of scholars should exceed forty.

2. *King's College, Windsor.*—In 1787, George III directed the Governor to recommend the House of Assembly "to make due provision for erecting and maintaining schools, where youths may be educated in competent learning, and in the knowledge of the Christian religion." The House, in compliance with this recommendation, provided for the establishment of an academy at Windsor, and recommended the erection of a college there. In the following year (1788), the House made a grant of nearly \$2,000 to the Academy. In 1789, the College at Windsor having been projected, the House of Assembly made a grant to it of about \$1,800 per annum. Next year (1790), the Imperial Parliament made a grant of £1,000 sterling, or about \$4,800, towards the erection of the Church of England College, and, in 1795, a further grant of \$2,225, to complete it. In 1802, the College was incorporated by Royal Charter. In 1803, the College was formally opened, and the Imperial Parliament endowed it with a grant of £1,000 sterling per annum. In 1813, the College was further endowed by a grant of 20,000 acres of land in Nova Scotia. In 1833, the Imperial endowment of £1,000 sterling was reduced to £500, and in a few years it ceased altogether. In 1851, the Provincial endowment of £400 sterling per annum (first made in 1788) was reduced to \$1,000, which sum it has continued to receive up to the present time. It still remains under the control of the Church of England, and has in connection with it a Collegiate School.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—What are the principal subjects referred to in chap. XXXII? What is said of the first educational efforts in Nova Scotia? Give an historical sketch of King's College, Windsor. What is its present condition?



3. *Dalhousie College, Halifax.*—In 1817, the Legislature, on the recommendation of the Governor (the Earl of Dalhousie), granted \$39,000, out of the Baron de Castine fund, for the endowment of a college at Halifax, in connection with the Church of Scotland, but open to all denominations.\* In 1818, part of the Parade-ground was given as a site for the proposed college. In 1819, the Legislature made a grant of \$8,000 for the erection of the new institution on the Parade, to be named Dalhousie College. In 1820, the college was incorporated, and, in 1821, the Legislature made a further grant of \$4,000 towards the erection of the building. Owing to various causes, but chiefly to the existence of several rival institutions in Nova Scotia, Dalhousie College was not successfully put into operation until 1863, when various denominations united to support it, as a literary institution. In the meantime, the Castine endowment fund, created in 1817, had by skilful management increased to \$60,000, which enabled the governors to appoint six professors to the various chairs in the institution.

4. *Other Colleges and Academies.*—In 1815 the trustees of an Academy established by the Presbyterians at Pictou, were incorporated. In 1837, the House of Assembly granted \$800 to an Academy at Annapolis. In the public accounts of this year the cost of the new Academy at Windsor is set down at about \$20,000. The Academy was first opened in 1819. In 1840, Acadia College, established by the Baptists at Wolfville, was incorporated. The Horton male and female Academies are in connection with this College. In 1841, St. Mary's College, established by the Roman Catholics at Halifax, was incorporated. In 1847, the Free Presbyterian Church established a Theological College at Halifax, and attached to it an Academy. They had also a Classical College at Truro, which is now incorporated with the College at Halifax. Goreham Congregational College, which was established by Mr. Goreham at Liverpool (Queen's County), having been burned, has not been revived. The remaining Colleges and Academies in Nova Scotia are: St. Xavier's Roman Catholic College at Antigonish, Cape Breton; Arichat Roman Catholic Academy at Isle Madame, C. B.; and the New Glasgow Academy in the County of Pictou, besides a Ladies' Academy and other

\* Out of the same fund the Legislature also appropriated \$4,000 for the establishment of a public library in the same city.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Dalhousie College founded? Mention the names of the other colleges and academies of Nova Scotia. Give a brief account of them. With what religious persuasions are they connected?

Legislature, on  
(Dalhousie),  
for the endow-  
ment of the Church  
in 1818, part of  
the college.  
The erection  
of Dalhousie  
College, in 1821,  
towards the  
west, but chiefly  
for Nova Scotia,  
continued until  
1827, as a  
endowment  
increased  
at six pro-

trustees of  
the school, were  
granted \$800  
of this  
set down at  
1819. In  
Wolfville,  
Academies are  
the College,  
incorporated  
published a  
Academy.  
is now in-  
Congrega-  
tion at  
has not  
Academies in  
College at  
Academy  
Academy in  
and other  
00 for the

ed? Men-  
Give a  
connected?

female schools in Halifax. In addition to the Academies named, the Legislature has appropriated \$600 to each of the remaining counties for the establishment of a County Academy. The Legislature of Nova Scotia also pays \$1,000 a year to the Wesleyan Academy at Sackville, New Brunswick.

5. *Grammar Schools.*—In addition to the Grammar School and the Royal Acadian School at Halifax, and the Collegiate School at Windsor, there are forty-five others in the Province, attended by nearly 2,000 pupils—1,000 of which are in the classics and mathematics. The cost of these schools is about \$14,000 per annum, including nearly \$10,000 granted by the Legislature for their support.

6. *Common Schools.*—In 1811, an Act was passed by the Legislature of Nova Scotia, providing for the payment of \$100 in aid of a school or schools in any settlement of not less than thirty families in which \$200 were raised by assessment for school purposes. In 1826, the Province was divided into school districts, and the rate-payers were authorised to appoint trustees for the establishment and maintenance of Common Schools, under the control of Boards of Commissioners. Various subsequent School Acts were passed up to the year 1849, when Dr. Dawson (now Principal of McGill University, Montreal) was appointed Superintendent of Education for the Province. Under his management the character of the schools was greatly improved, and the numbers increased. On the retirement of Dr. Dawson in 1854, another School Act was passed, and a Normal School was established at Truro. In 1855, Rev. Dr. Forrester was appointed Superintendent of Education and Principal of the Normal and Model Schools. He was succeeded by Mr. Rand. The establishment of the Normal School, which trains about 60 teachers a year, has given a great impetus to education, and has very materially elevated the character of the schools and the profession of teaching in the Province. In 1864, the School Act was revised, and many of the provisions of the Upper Canada School Act incorporated in it, including the substitution of school sections for school districts, and vesting in the rate-payers the right to determine annually how the schools should be supported during the year, &c. The number of schools, as well as the attendance of pupils, has nearly doubled since 1840. At present there are about 1,400 Common Schools, attended by nearly 40,000 pupils, and

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Grammar and Common Schools? What has been done for the establishment of public schools in the province? Who have been superintendents? What is said of the Normal School?

supported at a cost of nearly \$200,000, including a legislative grant of about \$50,000. The total number of Educational institutions of all grades in the Province is about 1,500, attended by upwards of 43,000 students and pupils, and supported at a cost of nearly \$230,000 per annum, including a legislative grant of about \$62,000.

7. *A Deaf and Dumb Institution* has been established in Halifax since 1858. It has been highly successful, and is attended by about fifty pupils from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Its total cost is only about \$4,000 per annum, part of which is granted by the Legislature of Nova Scotia, and part by that of New Brunswick, in proportion to the number of pupils attending the school from each Province.

8. *Private Schools*.—There are several private schools of an excellent description for both boys and girls in various parts of the Province. They receive no aid from the Legislature.

### CHAPTER XXXIII.

#### SKETCH OF THE CLIMATE AND NATURAL PRODUCTS AND COMMERCE OF NOVA SCOTIA.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

##### *Climate—Products—Railways—Commerce.*

1. *Climate*.—Nova Scotia, being in nearly the same latitude as Canada, has a climate somewhat similar to it. Within the influence of the Mexican gulf-stream, and being nearly surrounded by water, the climate of Nova Scotia is more equable, and less liable to the extremes of heat and cold, than that of Canada. Halifax harbour is very rarely closed in winter. The autumn is an agreeable period of the year.

2. *Products*.—The Province is rich in coal, iron, gold, and gypsum. In Nova Scotia there are three principal coal-fields, and in Cape Breton about the same. The agricultural products and fisheries of Nova Scotia are abundant. At the head of the Bay of Fundy, the alluvial deposits, thrown up by the high tides and enclosed by dykes, render the soil very productive.

3. *Railways, Canals, &c.*—A railway runs from Halifax to Truro, with a branch to Windsor. The Shubenacadie Canal

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of the Deaf and Dumb Institution; Private Schools? Mention the principal subjects of chap. XXXIII. Give an account of the climate of N.S. What are its chief products? What is said of railways?

connects Halifax with Cobequid Bay. There are about 1,500 miles of electric telegraph in Nova Scotia, connecting every county with Halifax, and Halifax with the other Provinces and the United States. Post and Way offices, about 400.

4. *Manufactures* in domestic articles, as well as ship-building, are carried on to a considerable extent.

6. *Commerce* is greatly promoted by 1,200 miles of sea-coast, and about 50 ports of entry. The annual value of imports in 1763 was only about \$20,000; while a hundred years afterwards, in 1863, it was estimated at \$10,200,000; the exports in the same year at about \$8,500,000. The revenue, which in 1806 was only \$100,000, had increased in 1865 to about \$1,400,000; public debt in the same year \$5,000,000.

## PART VII.

### CHAPTER XXXIV.

#### PROVINCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

(So called from the German seat of the Royal House of Brunswick in Europe.)

Size, about the same as Bavaria, or equal to a square of 165 miles.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—New Brunswick is noted for its compact shape, its numerous rivers, its fine timber, and its extensive ship-building.

2. *Position and Boundaries.*—This Province (in shape an irregular square) lies south of the Gaspé peninsula, and is bounded on the north by the Bay of Chaleurs and Lower Canada, on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Nova Scotia, on the south by the Bay of Fundy, and on the west by the State of Maine.

3. *Physical Features.*—The surface of New Brunswick is agreeably diversified with hill and dale, mountain and valley, picturesque lakes and noble rivers. Its forests are well

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of canals; commerce and manufactures? From what place was New Brunswick named? Mention its size? For what is it noted? Give its position and boundaries. Describe its physical features.

wooded, and the soil along the rivers and in the valleys is rich and fertile. The fine bays are well adapted for commerce.

### HISTORY OF NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM ITS DISCOVERY UNTIL ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA, IN 1784.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Discovery and Settlement—Indian and Intercolonial Wars—Separation from Nova Scotia.*

[NOTE.—As New Brunswick formed a part of the French Province of Acadie, or the British Province of Nova Scotia, for 250 years, from its discovery in 1534 until its separation from Nova Scotia in 1784, its history is necessarily blended with that of the early French and English Acadian colonies of those times. We have, therefore, only inserted the following brief *resumé* of the preceding history of Acadie and Nova Scotia up to 1784, with some local references, as being also the history of New Brunswick up to that date. From 1784 New Brunswick has a separate history of its own, and as such we have given it in this chapter.]

1. *Aboriginal Indians*.—When Europeans first visited New Brunswick, three Algonquin nations occupied Acadie, then including New Brunswick and Maine, viz.: The Micmacs, or Souriquois (salt-water men), who occupied the country from Gaspé Bay to the river Ste. Croix; the Etchemins, or Malicetes (canoe-men), from the Ste. Croix to the Penobscot river; and the Abnaquis, or Kannibas, whose hunting-grounds extended from the Penobscot to the Kennebec river. These three nations became afterwards more closely united, and were known by the French under the name of the "Nations Abnaquises." The Malicetes frequented the river St. John, while the Micmacs kept to the sea-side. These Indians do not now number more than 1,500.

2. *Discovery*.—Jacques Cartier made his first voyage to the New World in 1534; and on the 9th of July entered a deep bay, which, from the intense heat he experienced there, he named the "Baie des Chaleurs." He was pleased with the

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter xxiv. What is said in the note about the early history of New Brunswick? Give the names of the Indian tribes of the country, and say where they were found.

country, and experienced kind treatment from the inhabitants. In 1604, De Monts was commissioned by Henri IV to make further discoveries; and after visiting Port Roignol (now Liverpool), Nova Scotia, he entered a bay which he named La Baie Française, since known as the Bay of Fundy. Coasting along this bay, with his companion, Poutrincourt, the latter selected a spot on a spacious basin for settlement, and named it Port Royal. De Monts hastened on, and, on the festival of St. John the Baptist (24th June), reached the grand river Ou-an-gou-dy, which he named St. John river. Entering another river, he erected a fort; and from the cross-shaped configuration of the stream and its tributaries, he named it Ste. Croix. This was abandoned, in 1605, for Port Royal, which, for three years, flourished greatly under the guidance of Poutrincourt and Lescarbot. (See Nova Scotia.)

3. *Extent of Acadie.*—At this time the entire country extending from New England to the Bay of Chaleurs, including the islands and peninsula, was called Acadie. The English claimed it by virtue of the discoveries of Cabot; and the French from actual possession. The chief French settlements were Port Royal (Annapolis) and Ste. Croix,—which last was afterwards abandoned for Port Royal, as above.

4. *Original Grants.*—In 1621, James I of England granted to Sir W. Alexander, afterwards the Earl of Stirling, the whole of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island. With this grant he instituted the order of the Baronets of Nova Scotia, on condition that these baronets would colonize the country. In 1625, Charles I renewed the grant, and included in it the whole of the country from the St. Lawrence to California.

5. *Disputes and Seizure.*—Failing to gain possession himself, Sir William, in 1627, despatched Sir David Ker and his brother forcibly to expel the French. They soon captured

---

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the discovery of New Brunswick. When and by whom was Ste. Croix discovered and settled? Mention the extent of Acadie. To whom was the original grant made? What disputes followed?



Port Royal, Ste. Croix, and Pem-a-quid, or Pen-ta-go-et (Penobscot). They also made a prisoner of Claude de la Tour, to whom the French king had made a grant of a tract of country on the St. John.

6. *Compromise of Claims.*—In England, de la Tour and Lord Stirling agreed to compromise their claims, each to receive a part. De la Tour was sent to Acadie to carry out this arrangement; but de la Tour's son (Charles), who was in command of a French fort at Cape Sable (about 75 miles from Sable Island), refused to give it up to his father, who acted as the representative of the English claimants; but in 1632, Charles I ceded the whole country to Louis XIII, and granted Lord Stirling £10,000 (about \$50,000) as indemnity.

7. *Madame De la Tour.*—Charles de la Tour, son of Claude, erected a fort at Gemsec, on the St. John river, after he had taken possession of his portion; but his success excited the jealousy of the French Governor, Charles de Menou, Lord of Charnizay and d'Aulnay. In 1638, Louis XIII defined the territory of the disputants. Nevertheless, the dispute continued; and Charnizay, having received orders from Louis XIII in 1644 to arrest de la Tour, laid siege to his fort. De la Tour, aided by Gov. Winthrop of Massachusetts, compelled Charnizay to raise the siege. Afterwards, in 1645, in the absence of Charles de la Tour, he again laid siege to Fort de la Tour, near the site of the present city of St. John. Madame de la Tour, an heroic lady, gallantly defended the Fort, and thrice repulsed him. Again he made the attempt; and Madame de la Tour, being betrayed by a Swiss, capitulated. Charnizay, mortified to find that he had been so long resisted by so small a force, had the barbarity to hang all the survivors, and even compelled this noble lady, with a halter round her neck, to witness their execution. She did not long survive the mental agony to which she had been thus exposed.

---

QUESTIONS.—How were the claims compromised? Who was Charles de la Tour? What dispute had he with Charnizay? Give an account of the heroic conduct of Madame de la Tour in the defence of the fort.

Charnizay was in 1647 made Governor of the Colony, and died in 1650.

8. *Indian Inroads*.—In 1639, French settlements were made on the Bay of Chaleurs; and in 1672, on the river Miramichi, and at other places on the eastern coast. The English colonists who settled in the colony after the successive conquests or partial conquests, suffered much from the Indians, and were involved in the contests between the Mohawks and the Micmacs. The Mohawks were victorious; but in 1692, the Micmacs, under their chief, Halion, attacked the whites, burned their houses, and compelled them to fly. To allay this enmity, bounties were offered to such colonists as would marry Indian wives,—but this plan did not succeed.

9. *Capture and Cession*.—In 1652, Chas. de la Tour married Charnizay's widow, and succeeded to his estates. Le Borgne, a creditor of Charnizay, attacked de la Tour in St. John; but Cromwell having directed Colonel Sedgewick in 1654 to recover Nova Scotia from the French, he defeated de la Tour at St. John, and le Borgne at Port Royal, and took the whole of Acadie. (See also History of Nova Scotia.) In 1667, the colony was again ceded to France, by Charles II. In 1690, Sir Wm. Phipps took Port Royal and other places. Villebon, the French governor, however, soon recaptured them; and from Fort Villebon, or Natchwack (near the site of Fredericton), on the river St. John, the Indians were supplied with arms to attack the English colonies in New England. The people of Massachusetts retaliated; and Col. Church took some posts in Acadie, and then returned to Boston. In 1696, the country was again ceded to France, by the Treaty of Ryswick. In 1704, Col. Church attacked St. John, Minas, and two other posts, but failed. In 1704 another unsuccessful expedition, under Col. Marck, was sent against Acadie. In 1710, however, Gen. Nicholson captured Port Royal, the chief port in Nova Scotia,

---

QUESTIONS.—What Indian contests took place? Give a further account of Charnizay's dispute with de la Tour. How was it ended? Mention the provisions of the treaty of Ryswick. What expedition was undertaken?

which he named Annapolis; and in 1713, by the Treaty of Utrecht, the whole of Nova Scotia, including what is now New Brunswick, was ceded to Great Britain. In 1758 the first Parliament of the Colony met at Halifax.

13. *Local Contests.*—From 1713 until 1763, contests with the Micmac Indians and attacks from the French, who endeavoured to regain the country colonized by their countrymen, harassed the English settlements. But by the treaty of 1763, which followed the capture of Louisbourg and Quebec, France renounced all claim to either Acadie or Canada.

14. *Settlement and Early Privations.*—In 1761, some settlers in the county of Essex, Massachusetts, obtained a grant of an area of country about twelve miles square on the St. John river. Next year they left Essex, and after some delay settled at Manguerville, in Sunbury; others settled near Carlow, at the head of the Bay of Fundy. Justices of the peace were appointed for the first time, and a court held there. In 1764, emigration from Great Britain flowed into New Brunswick; and during the American revolution many settlers came in from the adjoining colonies. William Davidson, from Scotland, formed a settlement at Miramichi, which in 1777 was nearly destroyed by the Indians, who had declared in favour of the American revolutionists. Privateers also pillaged the settlement. In 1783, peace was proclaimed; and great numbers of the disbanded troops and of the United Empire Loyalists settled in New Brunswick. In this year also a newspaper was first published in the Province. The loyalists had to seek shelter in log and bark huts; and, from having left comfortable houses, they had, for a length of time, to suffer more than the usual hardships and privations incident to a settler's life in the wilderness. For the first year the British government liberally supplied these devoted loyalists with provisions, clothing, and some farming implements.

---

QUESTIONS.—What local contests took place? What is said of settlements and early privations? What settlements were made in New Brunswick? Where did the colonists come from? Give an account of the U. E. loyalists

## CHAPTER XXXV.

NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA  
IN 1784, UNTIL 1866.

**Principal Subjects of this Chapter.**

*Civil Government Established—Fires—Ashburton Treaty—  
Responsible Government—Governors.*

1. *A Separate Province.*—In 1784-5, New Brunswick (then the County of Sunbury) was detached from Nova Scotia and became a separate Province. A town was built at the mouth of the St. John (now the important commercial city of St. John), and another at St. Anne's Point, called Fredericton. This last place became the capital of the new Province. Two military posts were established up the St. John,—one at



Grand Falls, on the St. John River.

**QUESTIONS.**—Name the principal subjects of chapter xxxv. When did New Brunswick become a separate Province? What towns were soon after built? What place became the capital of the Province?

Presqu'Isle, eighty miles from Fredericton, and the other at the Grand Falls, a hundred and thirty-two miles from Fredericton. A constitution was also granted to New Brunswick by royal charter, and Thomas Carleton, Esq., appointed governor. During his administration, of nearly twenty years, the country prospered greatly. From a rude, uncultivated wilderness, peopled chiefly by warlike Indians, he left it with many comfortable settlements, and with a regular government and local courts established, together with other evidences of permanent growth and stability. After he had departed for England, the government was administered, until 1817, by officers styled Presidents. In 1809, the British Parliament imposed a duty upon timber coming from the Baltic into England, while that from New Brunswick and other colonies was admitted free. This continued to give a great impulse to the timber-trade of the country, until, in 1825, from over-trading, a reaction took place. It again recovered, and, although subject to fluctuation, the timber-trade and commerce of New Brunswick has continued to flourish. At the close of the American war, in 1815, New Brunswick received a large number of military colonists, disbanded from the British army then in America. In 1817, Major-General G. S. Smyth was appointed to succeed Governor Carleton. He died in 1823; and in 1824, Major-General Sir Howard Douglas was appointed Governor.

2. *Fire in Miramichi Woods.*—In 1825, an exceedingly hot summer occurred, and a great fire devastated the entire east coast of Miramichi, covering an area of 6,000 square miles. 500 lives were lost, and property to the amount of a million of dollars destroyed. \$200,000 were collected in various places for the sufferers. In 1831, Sir Howard Douglas, who had successfully governed the Province for fourteen years, retired, and was succeeded by Sir Archibald Campbell, in 1832.

3. *Fire in St. John.*—In 1837 a destructive fire visited the

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Gov. Carleton's administration of affairs? What title had the early governors? How was the timber-trade fostered? Did prosperity last? Name the governors. What calamities occurred?

the other at  
from Fred-  
unswick by  
governor.  
the country  
wilderness,  
many com-  
and local  
permanent  
England, the  
pers styled  
sed a duty  
while that  
itted free.  
er-trade of  
ction took  
uctuation  
k has con-  
r, in 1815,  
colonists,  
In 1817,  
ceed Gov-  
or-General

lingly hot  
ntire east  
are miles.  
a million  
n various  
glas, who  
en years,  
l, in 1832.  
visited the

a of affairs?  
e fostered?  
occurred?

city of St. John. 115 houses, and property to the value of \$1,000,000, were destroyed.

4. *Revenue Surrendered*.—In 1837, the revenues of the Province were surrendered to the local government on condition that the payment of the salaries of certain civil officers, amounting to \$58,000 per annum, should be granted to Her Majesty. In 1838, Sir Archibald Campbell retired (the House of Assembly having requested his recall), and Sir John Harvey was appointed in his place.

5. *Ashburton Treaty, &c.*—In 1842, the Ashburton Treaty between Great Britain and the United States was negotiated by Lord Ashburton. By it the disputed boundary between Maine and New Brunswick was settled. This territory contained 12,000 square miles, or 7,700,000 acres. Maine received 4,500,000 acres, and New Brunswick 3,200,000. Before the boundary dispute was settled, great discontent was felt by the inhabitants in the disputed territory, and collisions took place between them. The boundary-line between Canada and New Brunswick was afterwards peaceably settled. Reciprocity treaties and arrangements with the United States and Canada and other Provinces, have since been effected. In 1845, commissioners were appointed to survey a railway-route from Halifax to Quebec across New Brunswick; and in 1862–4 the project of this great Intercolonial railway was again revived.

6. *Responsible Government*, similar to that of Canada, was introduced in 1848. Since then the Province has increased in wealth, population, and importance; and now equally with the other North American colonies enjoys the protection of Great Britain, and the fullest exercise of political freedom compatible with the maintenance of that cordial and happy connection which subsists between New Brunswick and the mother country. In 1860 His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales visited New Brunswick, and was very cordially re-

---

QUESTIONS.—What revenue change was made in 1837? Mention the divisions made of the disputed territory under the Ashburton Treaty. What state of feeling existed on the subject? What events occurred in 1842 & 1860?



ceived by the inhabitants. In 1864 delegates from the Province united with the delegates of the other Provinces to consider a scheme of Confederation for the whole of the British North American Provinces. It was agreed to by a vote of the legislature in 1866.

7. *The Governors and Presidents* of New Brunswick have been as follows:

Thomas Carleton, Esq., Gov.	1784	Hon. Ward Chipman, Pres....	1823
Hon. G. G. Ludlow, President.	1786	Hon. J. M. Bliss, Preside *...	1826
Hon. E. Winslow, President..	1803	Gen. Sir Howard Douglas....	1829
Col. G. Johnston, President...	1808	Hon. W. Black, President....	1829
Gen. M. Hunter, Governor....	1809	Gen. Sir A. Campbell, Gov....	1832
Gen. W. Balfour, President...	1811	Gen. Sir John Harvey, Gov...	1837
Gen. G. S. Smyth, President..	1812	Sir W. M. G. Colebrooke, Gov.	1841
Gen. Sir J. Saumarez, Pres....	1813	Sir E. Walker Head, Governor	1850
Col. H. W. Hailes, President..	1816	Hon. J. H. T. Manners Sutton,	1854
Gen. G. S. Smyth Governor..	1817	Hon. A. Gordon, Governor...	1863

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

### SKETCH OF THE CIVIL INSTITUTIONS OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Civil Government—Judiciary—Municipal System.*

1. *The Constitution*, as in Canada, is founded upon treaties, acts of Imperial Parliament, and acts of the local Legislature. In 1713, the Province, being part of the French colony of Acadie, was, by treaty, ceded to the British Crown. This treaty was finally confirmed by another treaty with France in 1763. In 1785, New Brunswick was, by an act of the Imperial Parliament, separated from Nova Scotia, and erected into a distinct Province. It was named New Brunswick, after Brunswick in Lower Saxony, in Germany, the original place of residence, up to 1714, of the present royal family of England, when George I, Elector of Hanover and Duke of Brunswick, ascended the British throne.

2. *The System of Government* is monarchical in its most popular form, and is modelled after that of Great Britain. The Governor-in-Chief is nominally subordinate to the Gover-

QUESTIONS.—Who were governors, &c. of New Brunswick? To what does chapter xxxvi relate? Mention the principal subjects of it. What is said of the constitution and system of government?

from the Pro-  
vinces to con-  
of the British  
a vote of the

nswick have

n, Pres.... 1823  
reside \*... 1826  
uglas..... 1829  
sident.... 1829  
ell, Gov.... 1832  
ey, Gov... 1837  
rooke, Gov. 1841  
, Governor 1850  
ers Sutton, 1854  
governor... 1863

BRUNSWICK.

System.

upon treaties,  
al Legislature.  
ch colony of  
Crown. This  
ith France in  
of the Impe-  
d erected into  
nswick, after  
original place  
y of England,  
f Brunswick,  
l in its most  
Great Britain.  
to the Gover-

nor-General of Canada, and is the special representative of the Queen in the Province. He is assisted in his duties of government by an Executive Council, consisting of nine members, who must have seats in either branch of the Legislature, and who form the heads of the various executive departments of the government.

3. *The Legislature* consists (1) of the Governor-in-Chief; (2) the Legislative Council, of twenty-one members, appointed by the Crown for life; and (3) of the House of Assembly, of forty-one members, elected every four years. Its powers are identical with those of the Legislature of Canada,—which see, pages 202–208.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### SKETCH OF THE EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Efforts and Progress—Parish and Grammar Schools—Colleges and Academies—Educational Department.*

1. *Educational Efforts and Progress.*—In New Brunswick, as in Canada, the efforts to provide education were for many years spasmodic, and took nearly the same direction.

2. *Common or Parish Schools.*—Little was permanently done in early times for elementary education. In 1833, a general School Act was passed, authorizing the rate-payers to appoint three trustees in each parish for the purpose of dividing it into school sections or districts, and to examine and employ teachers. Provided the inhabitants contributed £20 for a male, and £10 for a female teacher, with board, and the schools were kept open for at least six months in each year, the Legislature contributed an equal sum to aid in supporting the schools. In 1837 another more comprehensive act was passed, providing for the establishment of a County Board of Education for the examination of teachers. In 1840 this act was supplemented by one which raised the stipend of teachers. In 1847 the whole of the preceding acts were, with some modifications, embraced in one statute. In 1837 the entire system of public instruction was under revision and improvement. A new act

swick? To what  
cts of it. What

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Legislature of N. Brunswick. What was the nature of the early educational efforts in New Brunswick? What is said about the early establishment of the common or parish schools there?

was passed, and provincial and local superintendents or inspectors were appointed to give it effect. A normal or training and model schools were also established at St. John. In 1854 this act was supplemented by one which raised the salaries of teachers. There were about 900 common schools in operation in New Brunswick in 1865, besides about 25 superior schools (a grade between common and grammar schools), and 20 denominational and Madras schools.

3. *Grammar Schools* have been established in nearly all the counties of New Brunswick. Each grammar school receives £100 per annum from the Legislature, and, in addition, is supported by fees and subscriptions. King's College Collegiate School is the Grammar School for York County.

4. *New Brunswick University*.—In 1800 the Legislature passed an Act incorporating an Educational Institution for the Province, under the name of the College of New Brunswick, at Fredericton. In 1828, this name was changed to that of King's College by royal charter, and endowed with \$800 yearly, and a grant of 6,000 acres of land. Its income is now about \$13,500 per annum. In 1854 a commissioner from Canada (Rev. Dr. Ryerson, Chief Superintendent of Education), one from Nova Scotia (J. W. Dawson, Esq., LL.D., now Principal of McGill University, Montreal), and three from New Brunswick (Hon. Messrs. Gray, Saunders, and Brown), were appointed by the Lieutenant-Governor to devise a scheme for increasing the usefulness of the institution. In 1860, an Act was passed by the Legislature reorganising the institution in the manner suggested by the commissioners. Each county in the Province is entitled to a yearly scholarship for one student, valued at sixty dollars, besides gratuitous instruction.

5. *Other Colleges and Academies*.—In 1836 the Baptists of the Province established a seminary for higher education, in Fredericton. This institution receives a grant of \$1,000 per annum from the Legislature. In 1843 the Wesleyan Methodists, partly by the liberality of C. F. Allison, Esq., erected the Allison Academy for higher education, at Sackville. It was burned in 1866. In 1854 the Wesleyans also established a Female Academy at Sackville. These institutions receive an annual grant of \$2,400 from the Legislature of New Brunswick, and \$1,000 from the Legislature of Nova Scotia. The Presbyterians have a college at Woodstock, and an aca-

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Normal and Model schools; of grammar schools? Give a sketch of the history of the New Brunswick University. What is said of the other colleges and academies?

demy at Chatham; the Roman Catholics have also an academy at Chatham, as well as St. Basil's Academy, which receive grants from the Legislature. There are also other academies. The total of the Parliamentary grant in aid of education in New Brunswick is nearly \$150,000 per annum.

6. *The Educational Department*, at Fredericton, is presided over by a Chief Superintendent of Education, aided by a Board of Education for the Province. This officer administers the school laws, receives reports, apportions the legislative grant, and makes an annual educational visit to the various counties. The present chief superintendent is J. Bennett, Esq.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### SKETCH OF THE CLIMATE, NATURAL PRODUCTS, AND COMMERCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Climate—Products—Commerce—Railways—Manufactures.*

1. *The Climate*, though subject to great extremes of heat and cold, is less severe than that of Lower Canada, and is very healthy. Fogs come from the Bay of Fundy, but rarely extend any distance inland. Autumn is generally a beautiful season of the year.

2. *The Chief Products* are agricultural; but coal, iron, asphalt, lead, granite, marble, and other valuable minerals are abundant.

3. *Commerce*.—The fine rivers, bays, and extent of sea-coast give New Brunswick great commercial facilities. There are about 1,000 vessels, large and small, engaged in trade, fishing, &c. New Brunswick has now, like Canada, a decimal currency and a silver coinage.

4. *The Principal Exports* are timber, ships, grain, fish, iron, coal, lime, and gypsum; annual value in 1863 nearly \$9,000,000, including \$3,000,000 for ships alone; revenue \$1,000,000; debt about \$6,000,000. The imports in 1863 were valued at about \$7,800,000.

5. *Railways* extend (1) from St. John to Shediac, 108 miles; (2) from St. Andrews to Woodstock, 90 miles. Others

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Educational Department of N. B.? Mention the principal subjects of chapter XXXVII. Give an account of the climate—the chief products—commerce—principal exports of N. B.

are projected, including the intercolonial railroad. A great turnpike road extends from St. John to Canada; another extends from the State of Maine, through St. John, to Nova Scotia, Shediac, and Restigouche.

6. *Telegraphs*.—There are at present nearly eight hundred miles of telegraph lines in New Brunswick, extending from Sackville to Calais, and from St. John to Fredericton and Woodstock. The first line was built in 1848.

7. *The Post-Offices* of New Brunswick first came under the control of its Legislature in 1850. There are now about 400 offices, with a mail-route of nearly 3,000 miles, maintained at a cost of about \$75,000 per annum.

8. *The Manufactures* include articles for domestic use. About 150 ships are built annually. The first vessel launched in New Brunswick, the schooner *Moneguash*, was built by Mr. Jonathan Leavitt in 1770. Another, the *Miramichi*, was built on the Miramichi river, in 1773, by Mr. William Davidson, the first British settler on that river. There are upwards of 600 saw-mills, and nearly 300 grist-mills.

## PART VIII.

### CHAPTER XXXIX.

#### THE ISLAND OF PRINCE EDWARD.

(So called from Prince Edward, Duke of Kent, Queen Victoria's father.)

Size, about equal to a square of 46 miles.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For*.—Prince Edward Island is noted for its fertility, and for its comparatively salubrious climate.

2. *Position and Extent*.—This crescent-shaped island, 130 miles long by about 34 wide, occupies the southern portion of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is 30 miles from Cape Breton, 15 from Nova Scotia, and 9 from New Brunswick, and follows the curve of their coast-line. The Northumberland Straits separate it from the mainland.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of railway lines—telegraphs—post-offices—manufactures and ship-building? How did Prince Edward Island receive its name? For what is it noted? Mention its size—its position—extent

3. *Physical Features.*—The surface is slightly undulating. A chain of hills extends nearly westward of Richmond Bay, but in no place do they reach a high elevation. The land is very level. The indentations along the coast are numerous; the chief of which are Hillsborough and Richmond Bays. These penetrate the island from opposite directions, and divide it into three separate peninsulas.

HISTORY OF ST. JEAN, OR PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, 1497–1770.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery—Original Grants—Survey and Settlement.*

4. *Discovery.*—Sebastian Cabot, in his voyage from Bristol to the New World, is believed to have discovered this island on St. John's day, 1497. From this circumstance it was called by Champlain (the founder of Quebec), in his sketch of New France, Isle St. Jean, or St. John,—a name which it retained until 1800. Verazzani is also supposed to have visited the island in 1524.

5. *Original Grant.*—The Indians found on the island belonged to the Micmac and Abenaki tribes of Acadie and New England. They were left in undisturbed possession of it for nearly two centuries after Cabot's visit; although, with Cape Breton, the island had long been included in that part of the territory of New France called Acadie. At length, in 1663, with the Magdalen Islands, it was granted by the French king to Sieur Doublet, a French naval captain, for fishing purposes. In 1715, two years after the Treaty of Utrecht, many French families removed to the island from Nova Scotia, and a few from Cape Breton.

6. *Captures.*—In 1745 Louisbourg, Cape Breton, was taken by the New Englanders; and they also laid claim to this island; but it was restored to the French, in 1748, by the

---

QUESTIONS.—Describe the physical features of Prince Edward Island. Mention the principal subjects of chapter XXXIX. Give an account of the discovery of P. E. I. When and to whom was the island originally granted?



treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. In 1758, it was again captured; and Col. Lord Rollo, with a detachment of troops, took possession of it, by Lord Amherst's directions. Many of the French inhabitants, fearing expulsion, left the island shortly afterwards. At length, by the treaty of 1763, it was, with Cape Breton, finally ceded to the British Crown, and attached to the government of Nova Scotia.

7. *Survey and Settlement.*—In 1764–6, the island was surveyed by Capt. Holland. Lord Egmont's plan, among others, to erect it into feudal baronies, was not approved; but, as advised by the Board of Trade and Plantations, it was, by order of King George III, divided into townlands (or townships), of about 20,000 acres, and in 1767 distributed, by Lord Wm. Campbell, the governor, by lottery, among army and navy officers, and others who had claims upon the government, on certain prescribed conditions of settlement, and the payment of a quit-rent. Only a small portion of the island (6,000 acres) was reserved for the king, and 100 acres in each township for a minister, with 30 acres for a school-master, besides a breadth of 500 feet running along the coast for the purposes of free fishery. The settlement of the island progressed very slowly under this mortmain system.

---

## CHAPTER XL.

### HISTORY OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, FROM ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA UNTIL THE PRESENT TIME, 1770–1866.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Constitution—Quit Rents—Immigration—Political Progress.*

1. *Separate Government.*—The proprietors having petitioned the King, and promised to bear part of the necessary expenses, His Majesty, in 1770, erected St. John (or Prince Edward)

---

QUESTIONS.—What noted captures were made on the island in 1745 and 1758? When and by whom was the island surveyed? What plan of settlement was adopted? Mention the principal subjects of chapter xi

Island into a separate government, and appointed Walter Paterson, Esq., the first governor.

2. *Constitution Granted.* In 1773, a constitution, similar to those of the other North American Provinces, was granted; and in that year the first meeting of the legislature took place. The government consisted of a Lieutenant-Governor, aided by a combined Executive and Legislative Council, and a House of Assembly of 18 members. Of the Executive Council, three were members of the Legislative Council, and one of the House of Assembly. This constitution was modified in 1851.

3. *Washington and the Islanders.*—In 1775, two American cruisers, taking advantage of the defenceless state of the island, attacked and plundered Charlottetown, carrying off the acting governor and two other civil officers. The matter having been reported to General Washington, he reprimanded and dismissed the captains of the cruisers, restored the plundered property, and set the governor and his officers free, with many courteous expressions of regret for their sufferings.

4. *Duke of Kent and the Islanders.*—The Duke of Kent (father to the Queen), who for ten years resided, at different times, at Halifax, as commander-in-chief, paid great attention to the state of its defences. He had batteries erected for the protection of Charlottetown; and organised the militia for the protection of the island during the revolutionary war. He returned to England in 1800; and, as a mark of esteem for their protector, the House of Assembly changed the name of the island from St. John to Prince Edward.

5. *Quit-Rents Composition.*—In 1797, the proportion of rents paid by the proprietors not being sufficient to defray the expenses of government, the British Parliament, upon the representation of the House of Assembly, made an annual grant for that purpose. In 1802, the arrears of quit-rents amounted to \$300,000. To relieve the proprietors of this

---

QUESTIONS.—When was a constitution granted? Give a sketch of the government. What is said of Washington and the islanders? How did the Duke of Kent act? Mention the financial changes made in 1797.

heavy burthen, the Imperial government accepted a liberal composition for the debt.

6. *Increased Immigration.*—The effect of this generous step was at once perceptible in the increased prosperity of the island. In 1803, the Earl of Selkirk (who afterwards colonised Red River settlement), took over 800 Highlanders: their numbers were afterwards increased to 4,000.

7. *Progress of Events from 1770 to 1833.*—Governor Patterson, being accused of impeding by monopoly the settlement and cultivation of the island, was succeeded by Governor Fanning; who, during his nineteen years' service, did little to promote the interests of the island. He was succeeded by Governor Desbarres, who was more successful during his eight years' stay. A brother of Sir Sidney Smith became governor in 1813. His tyrannical conduct, however, in refusing to call the Legislature together for four years, and in seeking the arrest of Mr. Stewart, who had been sent to England to represent the grievances of the colony to the king, caused so much agitation, that he was recalled in 1824, and Colonel Ready appointed in his place. During his administration, a census of the inhabitants was taken, and the Roman Catholic disabilities removed. By his excellent qualities he endeared himself to the inhabitants. He was succeeded by Col. Young, who was appointed in 1830. During his administration the agitation for a separation of the Executive and Legislative Councils, and for responsible government, commenced.

8. *Progress of Events from 1834 to 1850.*—Governor Young, having died in 1835, was succeeded by Sir John Harvey in 1836. Sir John, having been transferred to New Brunswick, was succeeded by Sir Charles Fitzroy in 1837. During his administration, the Legislative Council was remodelled. A separate Executive Council, of nine members, was formed, and a Legislative Council of twelve appointed, exclusive of the Chief Justice,

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of immigration? Give a sketch of the progress of the principal events which took place from 1770 to 1833—and also from 1834 to 1850. Who were the island governors during those years?

who retired from it. Sir Charles having been appointed to the West Indies, Sir H. V. Huntley succeeded him in 1841. In that year a census was taken. In 1842, education was greatly promoted. In 1834 the Colonial Building was commenced; and in 1846 a geological survey of the island was made. Governor Huntley having retired, Sir Donald Campbell was appointed in 1847. In that year the House of Assembly passed an address to Her Majesty, praying for the introduction into the Province of Responsible Government. In 1848 a census was taken. Further contests took place with the Legislature on the subject of responsible government, in the midst of which Governor Campbell died, and was succeeded by Sir Alexander Bannerman in 1850.

9. *Progress of Events from 1850 to 1864.*—In 1851, during Governor Bannerman's administration, responsible government was fully introduced into the island. In 1852 an important Act establishing free education was passed. In 1853, an act establishing universal suffrage was passed. Governor Bannerman having been removed to the Bahamas, he was succeeded by Sir Dominick Daly (formerly Secretary of Canada) in 1854. In that year an Act was passed to give effect to Lord Elgin's Reciprocity Treaty with the United States. In the same year the members of the House of Assembly were increased from twenty-four to thirty members. In 1856 a Normal school was established. In 1857 an agitation commenced on the question (which was decided in the affirmative in 1860) of regulating the introduction of the Bible into common schools. Governor Daly having retired, he was succeeded by Governor Dundas in 1859. In 1860, the members of the Legislative Council were also increased from twelve to seventeen. Three acts were passed during this year for improving education in the island. The memorable visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales also took place in 1860,

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the progress of the principal events which occurred in Prince Edward Island from 1834 to 1850—and from 1850 to 1860. What occurred in 1857, and what event took place in 1860?









and he was everywhere greeted with demonstrations of joy. An important Commission was appointed this year to inquire into the state of the land-question, with a view to suggest a fair and equitable mode of converting the leaseholds into freeholds. In 1861, the Commissioners presented a minute and valuable report on the subject. In the meantime, general prosperity has since prevailed, and every effort is now made to develop the intellectual and physical resources of the island. In 1864, a meeting of delegates from each of the several British Provinces was held at Charlottetown to consider the expediency of uniting all the Provinces under one Confederation. Great unanimity on the subject prevailed. Subsequent meetings were held by the delegates at Halifax and Quebec in the same year. The feeling in favour of Confederation is not, however, strong in Prince Edward Island.

10. *The Governors of Prince Edward Island have been:*

<i>While part of Nova Scotia.</i>		Col. J. Ready .....	1824
Mortague Wilmot, Esq. ....	1783	Sir A. W. Young .....	1831
Lord William Campbell .....	1785	Sir John Harvey .....	1836
<i>As a separate Province.</i>		Sir C. A. Fitzroy .....	1837
Walter Patterson, Esq. ....	1770	Sir H. V. Huntley .....	1841
Gen. E. Fanning .....	1786	Sir Donald Campbell .....	1847
Col. J. F. W. Desbarres .....	1805	Sir Alexander Bannerman .....	1851
Charles D. Smith, Esq. ....	1813	Sir Dominick Daly .....	1854
		George Dundas, Esq. ....	1859

## CHAPTER XLI.

### SKETCH OF THE CIVIL GOVERNMENT AND EDUCATION OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Civil Government—Education—Climate, etc.*

1. *Civil Government.*—While attached to Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island was under the government of that Province. After its separation from Nova Scotia, in 1770, it had a government of its own. The Governor was appointed by, and represented the Sovereign. He was aided in his administration by an Executive and Legislative Council of six members, ap-

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of the progress of events from 1860 to 1866. What commission was appointed? Mention the names of the principal governors of Prince Edward Island. To what does chapter XLI relate?

pointed by the Crown for life, and by a House of Assembly (first elected for seven years in 1773) of 18 members. In 1833 the term for which members of the House of Assembly were elected was reduced from seven to four years. In 1839 the Executive and Legislative Council ceased to be one body. From this time the Executive Council appointed to aid the Governor in the execution of the laws consisted of not more than nine members, and the Legislative Council of twelve, exclusive of the Chief Justice, who now ceased to hold a seat in the Council. In 1851, Responsible Government was introduced. Under this system the members of the Executive Council became responsible to the Legislature in which they had seats, on the official acts of the Governor. They also administered the affairs of the various departments of the government under his direction. In 1856 the members in the House of Assembly were increased from twenty-four to thirty, and in 1859 the members of the Legislative Council were increased from twelve to seventeen.

2. *Education.*—On the first distribution of the lands in the island, thirty acres were reserved in each township for a schoolmaster. No public school was, however, opened until 1821, when a National School was opened in Charlottetown. Some years afterwards the Board of Education was appointed for the island, and in 1836 a central academy was also opened in Charlottetown. In the following year (1837) a visitor or superintendent of schools was appointed for the island. In 1848 a visitor was appointed for each county; and in 1852 a free education Act was passed, and gave a great stimulus to education in the island. In 1853 a visitor for the schools of the whole island was again appointed. In 1856 a normal school was established at Charlottetown, and in 1857 an agitation arose as to the use of the Bible in the public schools. In 1860 the Legislature passed an Act to improve the condition of public schools, and to authorise the use of the Bible in them. It also passed an

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Give an account of the Civil Government of Prince Edward Island. What efforts were first made to introduce education into the island? Give a sketch of the educational progress from 1866 to 1868.

Act to establish the Prince of Wales' College in honour of His Royal Highness' visit to Prince Edward, in that year.

3. *Climate*.—The climate is remarkably healthy, and milder than that of the adjoining continent. The air is dry and bracing. Fogs are rare; and winter, though cold, is agreeable. Summer, owing to the insular character of the country, is tempered by the sea-breezes. The autumn is beautiful.

4. *Products*.—The soil is free from rock, easy of tillage, and very productive. Agriculture is the chief occupation of the inhabitants. The fisheries are productive.

5. *Commerce*.—The Commerce of the island consists in the exchange of its agricultural produce, timber, ships, and fish, for British and American products. Annual value of exports nearly \$7,100,000; imports \$1,500,000; annual revenue about \$200,000; public debt about \$250,000.

6. *Manufactures*.—The manufactures are chiefly for domestic use. Ship-building is prosecuted with considerable enterprise. The fisheries are very valuable.

7. *Post Offices*.—The island is 130 miles long by about 34 wide, and there are about ninety post-offices established. The inland rate of postage is two pence sterling; revenue about \$10,000. There are about fifty miles of telegraph,—connecting the island with New Brunswick and Newfoundland.

## PART IX.

### CHAPTER XLII.

#### THE PROVINCE OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

(So called from being the first land "found" in the New World by Sir John Cabot.)

Size, less than one-third that of Upper Canada, or equal to a sq. of 245 m.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For*.—Newfoundland is noted for its fisheries, and for being the first British colony established in America.

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of the climate—products—and commerce of the island. What is said of the manufactures and post-offices of P. E. I.? To what does Part IX relate? How did Newfoundland receive its name?

2. P  
can see  
lies at  
trance  
Gulf  
Lawren  
is tria  
in shap  
is about  
m. in c  
ference  
length  
m., its  
est wid  
3. P  
fine ba  
numere  
rocky

Indi

4. 2  
or Beth  
of New  
food t  
of the  
lessly  
who v  
havin  
island  
of cap

QU  
cribe  
What

2. *Position.*—This island is the largest in the North American seas, and lies at the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is triangular in shape, and is about 1,200 m. in circumference. Its length is 400 m., its greatest width 300.



Appearance of Newfoundland from a Balloon.

3. *Physical Features.*—The coast-line is pierced by many fine bays and harbours. The surface is much diversified by numerous hills, rivers, lakes, mossy marshes, and barren rocky ridges, especially along the western coast.

#### HISTORY OF THE ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

##### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Indians—Discovery—Fishes—Expedition—Settlement—Government—Wars.*

4. *The Red Indians.*—An Algonquin tribe, called Bæothic, or Bethuck, with some Esquimaux Indians, occupied the Island of Newfoundland when Sebastian Cabot first visited it. Their food then was raw flesh. They resided chiefly in the vicinity of the Exploits river, but are now extinct. They were ruthlessly exterminated by the Micmac Indians and the whites, who waged perpetual warfare against them. The Micmacs having painted their persons with the red ochre found in the island, received the name of the "Red Indians." Their mode of capturing deer was ingenious. They cut down trees on

---

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the position and shape of Newfoundland? Describe its physical features. Mention the principal subjects of chap. XLII. What is said of the Bæothic, Esquimaux, and Micmac, or Red Indians?

either bank of a river, so as to form a brush fence, leaving openings, at intervals, through which the deer must pass—in doing which, these unsuspecting animals became an easy prey to the hunter. There are now very few Indians, if any, on the island.

5. *Northern Discovery.*—It is supposed that Newfoundland, or Helluland, was originally discovered by Biarne, son of Heriulf Bardson, a follower of Eric the Red, Earl of Norway, who, in the year 986, emigrated from Iceland to Greenland. Leif, son of the Earl, is said to have made a second visit in the year 1000, and to have gone as far south as Vinland (Massachusetts), “a place of grapes.” Thorwold, brother of Leif, reached Vinland in 1002, but, returning home, fell in with the Skrelling, or Esquimaux Indians, and was killed. His brother Thorstein sought to recover his body, but failed. In 1004, Thorfinn, a person of illustrious lineage, is also said to have made a voyage to Helluland, Markland (Nova Scotia), and Vinland. These statements are disputed; but they are supported by various authorities.

6. *Spanish Discovery.*—Columbus, having in vain applied to King Henry VII of England to become the patron of his great enterprise, was compelled at length to seek the aid of the King, and especially of the Queen, of Spain. After his famous discovery was known, Henry was chagrined at his own supineness, and he then resolved to retrieve his error. He therefore in May, 1497, despatched John Cabot and his sons on a voyage of discovery to the west. On the 24th June, they reached a point on the American coast, either Labrador, or more probably Newfoundland, to which, as the land first seen, they gave the name of Prima Vista. Owing to the quantities of cod-fish on the coast, they called the place Bac-ca-la-os (which was the local, as well as the Breton, name for cod-fish). (See page 23.) This name is still given to a small island off

QUESTIONS.—Who first discovered Newfoundland in 986? Mention the discoveries of the Northmen. What led to Cabot's voyage? Give an account of his discovery of Newfoundland. What places were visited?

the north seem to be In the m “privy resting o hym the who beca and saile

7. Cor tereal, a ception His acco the Por have sin Spaniard 50 vesse had incre to visit t the Fren

8. Ve island, a coast. claim to

9. Can around and so he first bears. through

10. Queen actively the que

QUEST followed visits ma



the northern point of the Avalon peninsula, which would seem to indicate the precise spot "first seen" by the Cabots. In the manuscript records of the payments out of Henry VII's "privy purse," preserved in the British Museum, is the interesting one of "£10," paid on the 10th of August, 1497, "to hym that found the New Isle." In 1498, Sebastian Cabot, who became a celebrated navigator, again visited the island, and sailed as far north as Hudson Bay.

7. *Cortereal's Visit—First Fisheries.*—In 1500, Gaspard Cortereal, a Portuguese, visited the island. He gave to Conception Bay and Portugal Cove the names they still bear. His account of the abundance of fish on the banks, induced the Portuguese, in 1502, to establish the fisheries, which have since become so famous and productive. The French, Spaniards, and English soon followed; and in 1517, there were 50 vessels engaged in the enterprise. In 1578 this number had increased to 400. The Portuguese soon after ceased to visit the coast, leaving the fisheries chiefly in the hands of the French and the English.

8. *Verazzani's Visit.*—In 1525, John Verazzani visited the island, and carefully examined 2,000 miles of the adjacent coast. Upon his examination and report, the French laid claim to the whole country, as forming part of New France.

9. *Cartier's Visit.*—In 1534, Jacques Cartier went partially around the island of Newfoundland, on his way to Canada; and so pleased was he with the scenery of the cape which he first saw, that he called it "Bonavista,"—a name it still bears. Sailing northwards of Newfoundland, he passed through the Strait of Belle Isle into the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

10. *Gilbert's Expedition.*—During the memorable reign of Queen Elizabeth, London, Bristol, and other English ports actively engaged in the Newfoundland fisheries. At this time the question of a north-west passage to India occupied public

---

QUESTIONS.—Mention the historical records of the discovery. Who followed Cabot? What nations engaged in the fisheries? Were other visits made to the island. What led to Sir Humphrey Gilbert's expedition?

attention. Colonization too, had its ardent promoters. Among the most distinguished friends to this scheme in England was Sir Walter Raleigh,\* whose name is so memorable in the early



Sir Walter Raleigh.

history of the State of Virginia. With his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, he obtained a charter of colonization from the Queen. The first expedition which sailed met with disaster, and returned. Sir Walter was to have accompanied the second, but sickness in his ship prevented him. It sailed, however, for Newfoundland; and in August 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert landed, after a slight opposition, at St. Johns, and took formal possession of the island in the name of Queen Elizabeth. Collecting the masters, merchants, and artisans whom he had brought with him, he read his commission, and afterwards promulgated several laws. On his return home, he was unfortunately shipwrecked and lost his life near the Azores.†

\* Sir Walter Raleigh was born in Devonshire in 1552. He was distinguished as a courtier, soldier, diplomatist, literary man, and traveller. He was a favourite with Queen Elizabeth, who knighted him. After her death, he was accused of high treason, and, by the king's orders, confined in the Tower of London for fifteen years. Here he wrote "The History of the World" and other books. At length, in 1616, he was released, and appointed to command an expedition to South America. Being unsuccessful, James I cruelly had him executed under his old sentence. He is said to have introduced tobacco and potatoes into Europe.

† The story of his death is a very touching one: He had transferred his flag to the "Squirrel," a little vessel of only ten tons. As he neared the Azores, a violent storm arose, which engulfed his vessel. When last seen by those on board his companion ship, he was sitting on the deck with a book before him. His last words heard were, "Cheer up, boys: we are as near to heaven by sea as by land!"

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of Sir Walter Raleigh's career. Give an account of Sir H. Gilbert's expedition? What did he do on his arrival in Newfoundland? Mention the incident connected with his death

In 1575  
Labrador,  
Sir Franc  
tured som  
fish, oil, a

11. Gu  
Bacon and  
sent John  
Conception  
'eld friend  
while sick  
up the pro

12. W  
dwelling-h  
1615 Capt  
Admiralty  
disputes.  
at a place

13. Bal  
wards Lon  
patent fro  
which is f  
extensive  
the name  
tonbury, v  
He appoin  
dence at  
some time  
the Frenc  
but not li  
Here, after  
issued to

\* Cecil, S

**QUESTION**  
In 1614?  
connection

In 1575 Martin Frobisher, the noted Arctic explorer, visited Labrador, and it is supposed Newfoundland also. In 1585, Sir Francis Drake made a voyage to Newfoundland, and captured some Portuguese ships there, which were laden with fish, oil, and furs.

11. *Guy's Expedition*.—In 1610, James I granted to Lord Bacon and forty others, a patent to colonize the island. They sent John Guy, from Bristol, who established a colony at Conception Bay. He undertook a survey of the coast, and held friendly intercourse with the Red Indians; but after a while sickness compelled Guy and some of his party to give up the project and return to England.

12. *Whitbourne's Admiralty Courts*.—In 1614, permanent dwelling-houses were first erected in Newfoundland; and in 1615 Capt. Whitbourne was despatched to the island, by the Admiralty, to hold courts, empanel juries, and settle fishery disputes. Whitbourne also, in 1617, planted a Welsh colony at a place named Cambriol, now called Little Britain.

13. *Baltimore's Colony*.—In 1622, Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, while Secretary of State, obtained letters patent from James I, granting to him the entire peninsula which is formed by the Bays of Placentia and Trinity. This extensive peninsula he erected into a province, and gave to it the name of Avalon—which was the ancient name of Glastonbury, where Christianity was first introduced into England. He appointed Capt. Wynne local governor, who fixed his residence at Ferryland. Lord Baltimore also resided there for some time; but finding the soil and climate unfavourable, and the French inhabitants hostile, he went, in 1628, to Virginia; but not liking it, he selected a spot nearer to the sea-coast. Here, after his death, in 1632, a patent (from Charles I) was issued to his son, Cecil, second Lord Baltimore,\* under which

\* Cecil, Second Lord Baltimore, succeeded to his father's title in 1632.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Guy's expedition in 1610? What occurred in 1614? What did Whitbourne do in 1615 and 1617? Mention the connection which Lord Baltimore had with the history of Newfoundland.

was founded the colony of Maryland. In this Roman Catholic colony, the utmost toleration was allowed to the inhabitants in religious matters, while in the New England colonies it was denied at the same time to all but the dominant party. The name Baltimore was given to the capital of the new colony.\* Having abandoned his estates in Newfoundland during the Protectorate of Crom-



Cecil, second Lord Baltimore. well, they were restored to him in 1660. In 1754 (nearly a century afterwards) his heirs claimed the peninsula, but the claim was disallowed.

14. *French Tribute*.—In 1626, the French established a colony at Placentia, which led to many disputes; and in 1634, rather than relinquish the fisheries, they agreed, for the privilege of fishing, to pay five per cent. tribute on all the fish taken. The impost continued for forty years.

15. *Kertk's Settlement*.—In 1654, Sir David Kertk obtained a grant, and established a settlement. In 1663, there were fifteen British settlements, and about four hundred families on the island. They would have rapidly increased, but for the oppressive conduct of those who monopolized the fisheries.

16. *Substitute for Government*.—Newfoundland being regarded in early times as a mere fishing-station for various

He appointed his brother Leonard first governor of Maryland. He died in 1676. The colony remained in the possession of the Calvert family until the American revolution.

\* In 1763-65 the boundary-line between Maryland and Pennsylvania was laid down by Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon—two English astronomers.—Ever since, the phrase "Mason and Dixon's line" has indicated the boundary between the Northern and Southern States.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the second Lord Baltimore. Mention the contrast in religious liberty between Virginia and New England. What is said of Mason and Dixon's line—French tribute—and Kertk's settlement?

European even of 1633. Cl system of Rules we men; an authorise the island of convoy in each s culate the terised th inhabitan colony; ing to di tue coloni of a gov directed t farther, h emeroachn from being

17. Isl the merc formed in sent out t the island a human that the island wa

18.—T between determin each othe

QUESTIO made to est tempted de

European navigators and traders, no system of government, of even of police, was established on the island. At length, in 1633, Charles I gave directions for the introduction of some system of government, in regard to the fisheries, crime, &c. Rules were laid down for the guidance of the trading fishermen; and the mayors of some of the English seaports were authorised to take cognizance of certain crimes committed on the island. In 1669, "Fishing Admirals," or such masters of convoy or fishing vessels as should first arrive on the coast in each season, were to have the power in such places to execute the law; but ignorance and partiality generally characterised their decisions. Efforts were for a time made by the inhabitants to induce the King to appoint a governor for the colony; but the merchants connected with the fisheries, wishing to discourage settlement, steadily resisted this desire of the colonists. The contest for and against the appointment of a governor became at length so strong that the King directed that both parties should be heard by counsel. Nothing farther, however, was done; and the war with France and her encroachments in Newfoundland prevented any settled scheme from being adopted.

17. *Islanders Deported.*—In the meantime, the jealousy of the merchant fishing-traders against the settlements already formed in Newfoundland was so great, that orders were even sent out to break up the settlements on the island and remove the islanders; but Sir John Berry, one of the convoy captains, a humane man, remonstrated; and in 1676 the King ordered that the removals should cease. Further emigration to the island was, however, forbidden.

18.—*The War of 1692-8.*—The continued recriminations between the rival colonies at length resulted in a mutual determination on the part of England and France to contest each other's power to gain entire possession of the island

---

QUESTIONS.—How was government established? What efforts were made to establish a fixed government in the island. What is said of the attempted deportation of the islanders? What brought on the war of 1692-8?



and its fisheries. The French post at Placentia was attacked in 1692; but the Governor made a spirited and successful defence. In retaliation, the French under Iberville (from Canada) and Brouillon, made two attacks upon St. Johns, in 1696, and burned it to the ground. All the other British settlements were destroyed, except those at Bonavista and Carbonear, which made a successful resistance. An attempt was made to dislodge the invaders, but with little success. At length, by the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, the French restored all the places they had taken during the contest, and thus ended the war for a time.

19. *The War of the Succession* revived hostilities in Newfoundland. In 1702, Queen Anne sent out Sir John Leake, who made a successful attack upon the French settlements, and captured a number of vessels. In 1703, Admiral Graydon failed in his attacks upon the French. In 1705-8, Placentia having been reinforced from Canada, and further aid having arrived, the French retaliated with such vigour, that, with occasional reverses, they had acquired, in 1708, almost entire possession of the island. The brave fishermen of Carbonear (aided by Captain Underwood), and the fort at St. Johns, alone held out. St. Johns was, however, surprised and burnt; and the French held possession of it until 1713, when, by the treaty of Utrecht, Louis XIV ceded the whole of Newfoundland to England, retaining only the islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, off the southern coast.

## CHAPTER XLIII.

### HISTORY OF THE ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND FROM 1828 TO 1864.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Government Established—Seven Years' War—Revolution—Conspiracy—War Again—Progress.*

1. *Separate Province.*—In 1728, through the laudable exer-

---

**QUESTIONS.**—What of the treaty of 1697? Give a sketch of the progress of the contest from 1702 until the treaty of Utrecht in 1713. For what did that treaty provide? Mention the principal subjects of chapter XLIII.



tions of Lord Vere Beauclerk, commodore on the station, Newfoundland was separated from the nominal government of Nova Scotia and made a distinct province. Captain Osborne was appointed its first Governor, under the new constitution, with power to appoint magistrates and organize a government. He divided the island into districts, and introduced several salutary reforms into the administration of the laws; not, however, without strong opposition from the trading merchants, who upheld the authority of the "fishing admirals."

3. *Seven Years' War.*—So unprotected was the island left during this war, that in 1761 a merchant brig had to be equipped for its defence; and in 1762, a French fleet surprised and captured St. Johns. Capt. Graves, the new Governor, then on his way from England to Placentia, despatched a sloop to Admiral Lord Colville, at Halifax, for help. Lord Colville at once sailed from Halifax and recaptured St. Johns. The noble and patriotic conduct of Messrs. Carter and Garland, in provisioning, under great difficulties, the garrisons of Ferryland and Carbonear, and rendering other services during this war, was handsomely rewarded by the British Government. In 1763, the treaty of Paris, which confirmed the Utrecht treaty of 1713, again put an end to the war and its evils.

4. *Labrador Annexed.*—In 1763, the Labrador coast, from Hudson's Strait to the west end of Anticosti, including that island and the Magdalen Islands, were politically annexed to Newfoundland. They were, however, in 1773, restored to the government of Quebec; but, in 1809, re-annexed to Newfoundland. They are now attached to the government of Canada.\*

\* This interesting group of islands lies in about the middle of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Amherst, the most important island, is about 50 miles from Prince Edward Island, 60 from Cape Breton, 120 from Newfoundland, and 150 from Canada. The other principal islands are: Entry, Grindstone, Allright, Grosse Isle, and Byron. The Bird Rocks lie 50 miles north of Amherst Isle. The Magdalen Islands were ceded to England

QUESTIONS.—What events occurred in 1723? Mention the principal occurrences of the Seven Years' War. What is said of the annexation of Labrador to the Magdalen Islands? Give an account of these islands.

Cook, the celebrated navigator, took part, in 1762, in the re-capture of St. Johns from the French, and was afterwards employed until 1767 to survey the coasts of Newfoundland and Labrador.

5. *Palliser's Act*.—In 1764, Sir Hugh Palliser was appointed Governor. His administration was highly beneficial to the island, and his maritime regulations, with a little modification, were, in 1775, passed into a law. The British navigation laws were, in 1765, extended to Newfoundland, and a custom-house established on the island.

6. *American Revolution*.—In 1774, the Americans prohibited the exportation of food to Newfoundland, because the islanders would not aid their cause. By the greatest exertions on the part of England (then engaged in a war with France, Spain, and her revolted American colonies), the inhabitants were, however, saved from starvation. Being acquainted with the coast, the French and American privateers harassed the colonists and destroyed their property, when not protected by the English cruisers. But at length the treaty with the separated colonies, in 1783, restored peace to Newfoundland.

7. *Mutinous Conspiracy of 1800*.—For some time after the Irish rebellion of 1798, a spirit of lawless disaffection spread among the floating population of St. Johns, and extended even to a regiment of soldiers which had been raised in the island. Through the wise discretion of the Roman Catholic Bishop O'Donnell the plot was discovered and its ringleaders punished. So grateful were the principal inhabitants of the island to the good bishop for his loyal and successful efforts in aiding Gen.

by France in 1763, and granted to Admiral Sir Isaac Coffin (a native of Massachusetts) in 1798. They now belong to his nephew, Admiral J. T. Coffin. The population is nearly 8,000, made up chiefly of fishermen and their families. The annual value of the exports from the islands is nearly \$300,000. Schools have of late been established in the principal islands of the group.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Describe Palliser's Act. What occurred in the island during the American Revolution? Give the particulars of the mutinous conspiracy of 1800. How did Bishop O'Donnell seek to counteract it?

Skerret to frustrate the plot against their lives and property, that they united in a petition to the King to confer upon the bishop some act of royal favour. The petition was granted; and a pension of £50 sterling a year was conferred upon this excellent prelate during his life.

8. *Disasters.*—In 1775, the island was visited by a dreadful storm. The sea rose twenty feet; hundreds of vessels of all sizes were driven on shore, inland property was destroyed, and about 300 persons lost their lives. In 1812–13 a famine occurred, which was greatly mitigated by the arrival of wheat and flour from Canada; in 1816, St. Johns was nearly destroyed by fire; loss, \$500,000. In 1817, two other fires occurred in St. Johns, destroying property and provisions to the value of \$2,000,000. A great scarcity of food was the consequence. Many riots occurred. England sent relief, and the citizens of Boston freighted a ship with food for the sufferers, and thus almost wiped off the stain of 1774. In 1832, Harbour Grace was burned. In June, 1846, another destructive fire visited St. Johns, and about 2,000 houses were destroyed. England, as well as Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island, sent large contributions to relieve the suffering caused by this disastrous fire. In September, a furious hurricane ravaged the coast. Much property and many lives were lost.

9. *War again.*—In 1793, the French republic declared war against England, and, before it terminated, the American republic also declared war, in 1812. In 1796, the town at the Bay of Bulls was taken and destroyed by the French vice-admiral; but the energy of the Governor, Sir James Wallace, and the loyalty of the inhabitants, prevented any further captures being made by him. The war was in other respects advantageous to the trade of Newfoundland. It ended in 1814, when treaties of peace were signed. Depression in trade

---

QUESTIONS.—What was given to the Bishop? Give an account of the chief disasters related above—of the more important events which occurred from 1816 to 1846. How did the war of 1793 affect Newfoundland?

immediately followed; but it revived again in 1818. In 1819, a fishery convention was concluded with the United States.

10. *Social Progress.*—In 1803, charity and Sunday schools were introduced and benevolent societies established by Governor Waldegrave, aided by the Roman Catholic Bishop and the Protestant clergy. In 1805, a post office was established at St. Johns; in 1806, a newspaper was issued—now there are nine; in 1808, volunteer militia were enrolled; in 1808–11, efforts were made to establish friendly relations with the native tribes, but fear on their part prevented it; in 1810, Governor Duckworth made a tour as far as Labrador, with the same object; in 1822, an effort was made by W. E. Cormack, Esq., to explore the interior of the island. In 1824–6, an improved system of judiciary was introduced; in 1828, the St. Johns roads, first constructed by Governor Gower in 1806, were greatly improved; in 1830, a court-house and the government house were erected; in 1836, a banking-house was established; in 1839, a geological survey was undertaken; the Roman Catholic cathedral was commenced in 1841, and the Protestant Episcopal cathedral in 1843; in 1844, the first mail steam-packet entered the harbour of St. Johns; in 1845, gas-light was first used in the island; in 1846, an act required the houses on two principal streets, parallel to the harbour, to be built of brick or stone; in 1847, St. Johns was supplied with water, agriculture encouraged, a public library and mechanics' institutes founded; in 1858, the ocean telegraph with Europe was successfully opened; but in a few days afterwards, probably from injury to the submerged cable, it ceased to operate. Various improvements in the island have rapidly followed, and Newfoundland bids fair to enjoy peace and prosperity.

11. *Political Progress.*—In 1830, the civil disabilities of the Roman Catholics were removed. Want of harmony between the Council and the Assembly, established in 1832, as well as

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of the social progress of the island of Newfoundland from 1803 to 1810. Mention the principal events of interest which occurred in the island from 1822 to 1858. What telegraph was laid?

electio  
tween  
person  
tered  
eries.  
ferred  
The c  
cessio  
conve  
Newfo  
with  
tinctly  
the co  
govern  
of the  
to all  
High  
financ  
Colon  
Durin  
took  
Lives  
was fu  
a peri  
proted  
and so  
posed  
given

12.

neares  
as the  
naval  
ernor

QUE  
from 18  
tant fls

election contests, led to strong political dissensions, both between individuals and the local newspapers, and many acts of personal violence occurred in 1840. In 1856, England entered into a convention with France in regard to the fisheries. Before final ratification, the matter was, in 1857, referred to the Newfoundland Legislature for their consideration. The colonists having strongly objected to the proposed concessions to France, England declined to carry the fishery convention into effect. In communicating to the Governor of Newfoundland the articles of a proposed fishery convention with France in 1857, the British Government nobly and distinctly laid down the important principle, "that the consent of the community of Newfoundland is regarded by Her Majesty's government as the essential preliminary to any modification of their territorial or maritime rights." This principle applies to all the colonies alike. In 1860, after the visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales, a disagreement arose on a financial question, between Governor Bannerman and the Colonial Secretary, and a new Executive Council was formed. During the election under its auspices in 1861, serious rioting took place between the Roman Catholics and Protestants. Lives were lost and property destroyed; but at length peace was fully restored. Thus has Newfoundland happily reached a period in her history that, under the paternal and powerful protection of Great Britain, she may enjoy the highest political and social prosperity. It is to be hoped that under the proposed Confederation of the Provinces, Newfoundland (having given her consent to it) will continue to be a prosperous colony.

12. *Governors of Newfoundland.* — Newfoundland is the nearest to England of the North American Provinces, as well as the oldest of all her colonies. Many distinguished British naval captains have, from time to time, held the office of Governor of the island, as follows:

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the political progress of Newfoundland from 1830-60. Mention the events which occurred in 1860-61. What important fishery concession was made to Newf'd and the other colonies in 1857?



Captain Osborne.....	1729	Admiral Milbanks.....	1789
Captain Clinton.....	1729	Rear-Admiral Sir Rich'd King	1794
Captain Vanburgh.....	1737	Admiral Sir James Wallace..	1794
Captain Lord J. Graham.....	1740	Vice-Admiral Waldegrave	
Captain Hon. J. Byng.....	1741	(Lord Radstock).....	1797
Captain Sir C. Hardy.....	1744	Vice-Admiral Pole.....	1800
Captain Rodney.....	1749	Vice-Admiral Gambier.....	1802
Captain Drake.....	1750	Admiral Sir E. Gower.....	1804
Captain Bonfoy.....	1753	Admiral Holloway.....	1807
Captain Dorrell.....	1755	Vice-Adm'l Sir J. T. Duckworth	1810
Captain Edwards.....	1757	Vice-Admiral Sir R. G. Keats	1813
Captain Webb.....	1760	Vice-Admiral Sir F. Pickmore	1817
Captain Graves.....	1761	Vice-Admiral Sir C. Hamilton	1818
Captain Sir Hugh Palliser....	1764	Captain Sir T. J. Cochrane...	1825
Captain Hon. J. Byron.....	1769	Captain Prescott.....	1834
Com. Molyneux, Ld. Shuldharn	1772	Major-General Sir J. Harvey..	1841
Commodore Duff.....	1775	Sir J. G. Le Marchant.....	1847
Rear-Admiral Montague.....	1776	Ker B. Hamilton, Esq.....	1853
Rear-Admiral Edwards.....	1779	Charles H. Darling, Esq.....	1855
Vice-Admiral Campbell.....	1782	Sir Alexander Bannerman....	1857
Rear-Admiral Elliot.....	1786	Anthony Musgrave, Esq.....	1864

## CHAPTER XLIV.

### CIVIL INSTITUTIONS OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

#### *Civil Government—Education.*

1. *The Constitution.*—From the first settlement of Newfoundland until 1728-9, there was no system of government or even of police established on the island, with the exception of the local jurisdiction exercised in certain matters by the "Fishing Admirals." It was not until 1729 that a governor was appointed for the island, with very limited powers. In 1832, a Legislative Council of nine, and a representative Assembly of fifteen members, was granted, and the island divided into nine electoral districts. In 1842, the Assembly was incorporated with the Council, and an amalgamated Assembly of 25 members instituted; in 1849, the union was dissolved, and the two houses met separately; in 1854, the electoral districts were re-arranged, and the number of members of the Assembly increased; the Executive and Legislative Councils were also separated in 1854, and responsible government fully established. At present the House of Assembly consists of twenty-

**QUESTIONS.**—Give the names of the principal governors of the island. To what does chapter XLIV relate? Mention the principal subjects of it. Give a sketch of the civil constitution of the island of Newfoundland,



nine members, the Legislative Council of twelve, and the Executive Council of five.

2. *Educational Progress.*—In 1803, Governor Gambier, with the concurrence of the Roman Catholic bishop of the island and the Protestant clergy, established a system of Charity and Sunday Schools. In 1823, the Newfoundland and British North American School Society established “free” schools. In 1836 the number of schools in Newfoundland was only 79. In 1843, the first act was passed providing for the education of the people. The island was divided into school districts, and a board of seven members appointed in each district to manage the schools. A Protestant or Roman Catholic Board was appointed when the numbers of either prevailed in the district. To aid in carrying out the act, \$25,500 were granted for the promotion of education. In 1844, \$15,000 were granted to establish an academy and library, &c., at St. Johns. In 1845 the number of schools had increased to 209, attended by 10,300 pupils. In 1857 there were 280 schools, with an attendance of 14,200 pupils. In 1859 the legislative grant for education was \$56,000. At present the island is divided into forty-one school districts;—of these, twenty-five are under the control of a general Protestant Board of Education, and the remaining sixteen under a Roman Catholic Board. There is a school inspector in connection with each board. The Legislature aids in the erection of school houses by contributing one half their cost in each case.

## CHAPTER XLV.

### SKETCH OF THE CLIMATE, NATURAL PRODUCTS, AND COMMERCE OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

1. *The Climate*, though severe, is healthy. Winter is stormy, and later than in Canada. Snow does not lie long on the ground. Spring is late, and summer short and warm. In May and June, dense fogs prevail on the Banks. Thunder and lightning are rare. The longevity of the inhabitants is notable.

2. *Products.*—Coal, gypsum, copper, silver, lead, iron, and other minerals are abundant. The products of the coast-ishery are also abundant.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the educational progress of Newfoundland from 1803 to 1865. To what does chapter XLV relate? Mention the subjects of it. What is said of the climate and products of Newfoundland?

3. *Fisheries*.—The cod is the staple fish, and abounds on the adjacent banks; also herring, salmon, mullet, mackerel, and caplin. The number of men employed in the Newfoundland fisheries is 25,000; and the French employ 13,000 more. Nearly 12,000 ships and boats are engaged in the Colonial fisheries. The annual value of fish of all kinds, seals, &c., which they catch, is about \$6,500,000; and the value of the French and American catch, including the bounty, is each about the same. Annual value of various exports \$6,000,000; imports \$5,500,000; annual revenue about \$500,000.

4. *Telegraph—Post Offices*.—There are 450 miles of telegraph, including 90 of a submarine line; and about 35 post offices.

## PART X.

### CHAPTER XLVI.

#### HUDSON BAY TERRITORY.

(After Henry Hudson, who discovered the Bay, and perished there.)

Size, about half that of British N. America, or equal to a square of 1,340 m.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For*.—The Hudson Bay Territory is noted for its great extent, its fur-trade, and its great bay or inland sea.

2. *Position and Extent*.—This vast territory includes nominally the following divisions: 1. Labrador; 2. Prince Rupert Land, and 3. Red River, Swan River, and Saskatchewan, which were granted in 1670, by the charter of Charles II, to the Hudson Bay Company; 4. Mackenzie River; and 5. the Northwest Indian Territories, leased by the Company in 1821; 6. Oregon (abandoned), and British Columbia and Vancouver Island (lease expired and a separate govt. established).

#### LABRADOR PENINSULA SECTION.

(Called by the Spaniards *Tierra Labrador*, it being less barren than Greenland.)

3. *Noted For*.—The Labrador Peninsula is chiefly noted for its valuable coast-fisheries, and its severe climate.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of its products and fisheries? For what is Hudson Bay Territory noted? How did it get its name? Give the size, position, and extent of Hudson Bay Territory. What is said of Labrador?

4. *Position and Physical Features.*—This extensive peninsula is the most easterly part of British North America. The country gradually rises into mountain highlands as it recedes from the coast. Near the centre, a range called the Wot-chish Mountains forms a water-shed for the rivers.

PRINCE RUPERT LAND (AND EAST MAIN) SECTION.

5. *Extent.*—This portion of the Hudson Bay Territory includes the whole of the country east, west, and south of Hudson Bay itself.

MACKENZIE AND GREAT FISH RIVERS SECTION.

("Mackenzie," so called from Sir A. Mackenzie, who in 1789 discovered the river which is now so named.)

6. *Extent, &c.*—This section extends along the Arctic Ocean to the interior waters of the Great Bear, Great Slave, Athabasca, and Pelly Lakes, including the Mackenzie, Coppermine, and Great Fish Rivers.

THE NORTH-WEST INDIAN TERRITORIES SECTION.

(So named from being inhabited by various North-West Indian tribes.)

7. *Extent.*—The territories extended nominally from the Mackenzie River Section to the Northern Saskatchewan, and include the indefinite areas drained by the Peace, Athabasca, and northern branch of the Saskatchewan Rivers.

RED RIVER, SWAN, AND SASKATCHEWAN RIVERS SECTION.

8. *Extent.*—This section includes the valley of the Assiniboine, Qu'appelle, the southern branch of the Saskatchewan, the northern part of Red River, and the Winnipeg Region.

9. *Physical Features.*—The valley of the Saskatchewan is an extensive tract of country, diversified by beautiful scenery and fertile plains. The Red River Country is covered with rich prairies and fine lakes. From the Lake of the Woods, a fertile belt of land extends westward to the Rocky Mountains.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Prince Rupert Land section; of Mackenzie and Great Fish Rivers sections; and of the N. W. Indian Territories? Give the extent of the Red River, Swan, and Saskatchewan Rivers sections.

10. *The Red River Country* was settled by Lord Selkirk in 1811. It comprises a strip of land some miles in width on either side of the Red River, and a similar strip a few miles up the Assiniboine from Fort Garry.

11. *Climate*.—Winter at Red River lasts about five months. On the Lower Saskatchewan the winters are comparatively short and mild. To the north, it is much colder.

## CHAPTER XLVII.

### HISTORY OF THE HUDSON BAY TERRITORY.

#### Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery—Trade—Charter—Intercolonial Contests—North West Company—Divisions.*

1. *Discovery*.—The Hudson Bay (or Hudson Sea) is said to have been reached by Sebastian Cabot, in 1517. In 1523-4, Verazzani sailed up the coast as far as Davis Straits, which were reached by Davis, in 1585. Various other English navigators sailed northwards, in quest of a northwest passage to India; but it was not until 1610 that Henry Hudson reached the Straits and Bay now bearing his name.

2. *Other Voyages*.—Button, an English navigator, visited the Bay in 1612; Bylot and Baffin, in 1615; and Fox and James, in 1631. Baffin and James bays were traced out and examined by these navigators, and received their names.

3. *The Connection with Canada* was maintained by canoe, along the Saguenay river, and thence overland to the Bay, by the Quebec Fur Company, which was established by Cardinal Richelieu, in 1627. Tadoussac, at the mouth of the river, was their chief trading-post in Canada.

4. *English Trade*.—The treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, in 1632, confirmed the whole of the Hudson Bay territory to France; and De Grozellier and Radisson, two French Cana-

**QUESTIONS**—What is said of the Red River country and its climate? When and by whom was Hudson Bay discovered? What other voyages were made to the Bay? What is said of the Saguenay; English trade?

dians visited it. Having failed to induce their own governments to promote trade in it, they went to England. Prince Rupert entered warmly into their scheme, and despatched them to the Bay on a trading voyage.

5. *Charter to the Hudson Bay Company.*—They reached Nemisco, now called Rupert River, and their report being very favourable, Charles II was induced (though, by the St. Germain-en-Laye Treaty, he had relinquished his claim to the territory) to grant Prince Rupert and others a charter for traffic, in furs and peltry, in those extensive regions, then called Rupert Land. This was the origin of the famous Hudson Bay Company's charter, of 1670. This charter was, in 1690, confirmed by an act of the British Parliament, for seven years, but has never since been renewed.

6. *French and English Conflicts* in the territory were the consequences of this charter, as the French claimed that Hudson Bay was part of New France. In 1672, MM. Albanel and St. Simon, with the consent of the Indians of that region, planted the fleur-de-lis and the cross at several places, in token, for the third time, of the sovereignty of France over the territory. Having secured the services of De Grozellier, the French pilot, the new English Hudson Bay Company despatched its first expedition to Port Nelson, on the Bay, in 1673. De Grozellier, not having remained faithful to his engagement with the English, was dismissed, and returned to Europe. He was received with favour in France, and returned to Canada shortly after the French West India Company, which traded in Canada, &c., was dissolved. In 1676, another Franco-Canadian company was formed at Quebec, to promote trade at the northwest, and de Grozellier and Radisson were despatched by it to Hudson's Bay to open a traffic. In 1679, Louis Joliette was despatched by the Quebec Company to Hudson's Bay, "in the public interests." The intrusion of the English in these

---

QUESTIONS.—What led to the granting of the Hudson Bay charter of 1701? Give a sketch of the French and English conflicts in the Territory up to 1684. What is said of De Grozellier and Radisson?

territories was keenly felt during this time. In 1682, Radisson and de Grosellier were again despatched to Port Nelson, to counteract the trading designs of the English. In 1684, Radisson a second time deserted his fellow colonists and allied himself to the English. He went to London in 1684 and offered his services to the English Hudson Bay Company. They were accepted; and he was placed in command of an expedition, consisting of five vessels, which was despatched in that year to capture the French trading-posts at the Bay. This he did without difficulty. The destruction of the French factories at Port Nelson by Radisson, in 1684, led to spirited reprisals on the part of the company at Quebec; and Chevalier de Troyes and d'Iberville were despatched with troops from Quebec, and, in 1686, succeeded in capturing the principal forts of the company. In 1688, the English sent an expedition to retake their captured forts, but M. d'Iberville defeated them and took their ships. In 1689, they again endeavoured to accomplish their object, but were again repulsed. D'Iberville returned to France in 1691; but, in 1694, he was sent to the Bay with three ships of war, and completed the conquest of the English forts at that place. At the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, and even up to 1713, the English company had only Fort Albany left.

7. *Contest virtually closed—Treaties of Ryswick and Utrecht.*—At length the contests between the rival colonies in the Hudson Bay territory virtually ceased. By the treaty of Ryswick, entered into by France and England in 1697, both parties agreed to restore whatever places at the Bay they were possessed of before the war. Commissioners were appointed to determine this question; but they appear never to have met. At the time of the treaty, however, Fort Albany, on the River Albany, at the east side of James Bay, was the only place in the territory in possession of the English traders, and

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the trading-contests of the French and English at Hudson Bay. How did Radisson act in this matter? What is said of the close of the contest, and of the treaties of Ryswick and Utrecht?



it continued in their possession undisturbed until the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713. By this noted treaty, France transferred to England the whole of her rights to the Hudson Bay territory, and thus placed a bar on all the trading privileges of her Canadian subjects in that part of New France. The English company has since remained in possession of the territory.

8. *Northwest Company of Canada.*—In 1766, various traders, competitors of the company, engaged in the fur-trade. Their head-quarters were at Montreal; and they followed the old French routes into the interior. In 1784, these traders united, and formed the Northwest Company of Canada. This new company directed its trade chiefly to the northwest, *via* Lake Superior, towards the Pacific Ocean and Columbia River. They even sent trading-ships round Cape Horn.

9. *Northwest Company's Explorations.*—In 1793, Sir Alexander Mackenzie, a partner in the Northwest Company, made his famous journey from Canada, across the Rocky Mountains, to the Pacific Ocean (the first ever made north of Mexico), and discovered Fraser River. He afterwards discovered and explored the Mackenzie River. In 1811, Mr. Thompson, the astronomer, discovered the northern or main branches of the Columbia River, and descended its stream to the Pacific Ocean.

10. *Lord Selkirk's Colony.*—In 1811, the Earl of Selkirk purchased a tract of country from the Hudson Bay Company, lying between the United States boundary and lakes Winnipeg and Winnipegosis, since called the Red River Settlement. In 1821, he brought settlers from Scotland for his new colony. (Swiss were afterwards introduced; and in 1823, French Canadians.) Subsequently, he appointed Capt. Miles McDonell (who was governor of the Company's district of Assiniboine,) superintendent, who issued a proclamation forbidding the appropriation of provisions except to the use of the colonists.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Give a sketch of the Northwest Company of Canada. What explorations across the continent did the Co. undertake? Mention the particulars of Lord Selkirk's efforts to found a colony. To what did they lead?

This assumption of exclusive jurisdiction on the part of the Hudson Bay Company excited the bitterest feelings on the part of the North-Western Company, and gave rise to the fierce contest of—

11. *The Rival Companies* in the Indian territories; during the progress of which the colonists were twice expelled, and many lives lost, including that of Governor Semple. In 1816, Sir Gordon Drummond sent part of a regiment from Quebec to preserve order, and to restrain the violence of both companies. In 1821, the feud ceased, and the rival companies were amalgamated. When Lord Selkirk died, the company resumed the purchase, on condition of paying a certain quit rent. Most of the original settlers left the colony. The number of residents now amounts to about 7,000. It is a mixed population.

12. *Territorial Divisions*.—The Hudson Bay Territory is divided into numerous districts, which are embraced in several large departments. There are four depôts, and 112 forts or stations, in each of which there is a force of from four to forty men. There are also numerous smaller posts and outposts.

13. *The Exports* are chiefly the furs and skins of various wild animals.

14. *The Inhabitants* of the territory include the white traders and half-breeds, besides numerous tribes of Indians and Esquimaux.

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

### THE ISLAND OF VANCOUVER.

(So called from Vancouver, a Dutch navigator, who discovered it in 1729.) Size, one-fourth smaller than Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 127 m.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For*.—Vancouver Island is chiefly noted for its coal-mines, and for being the largest island on the Pacific coast.

**QUESTIONS.**—How was the dispute between the rival companies settled? Give the divisions of the Company's territory. What is said of the exports—and of the inhabitants? For what is Vancouver Island noted?

2. *Extent*.—This island is 378 miles long, and 50 or 60 wide. It is separated from British Columbia by the Gulf of Georgia and Queen Charlotte's Sound; and from Washington Territory (in the United States) by the Strait of Juan de Fuca.

3. *Physical Features*.—The surface is marked by mountain-ranges and extensive plains. The *Nimichish* is the chief river. The harbours are excellent; the principal of which are Esquimaux, Victoria, Nanaimo (or Noonooa) Inlet, Beecher Bay, and Barclay and Nootka Sounds. Haro Strait separates Vancouver Island from the San Juan Archipelago.

4. *The Climate* is considered to be healthy. There is little frost, and vegetation begins in February. The summer is hot, the autumn dry, and the winter stormy; fogs prevail, and the periodical rains fall heavily.

5. *Products*.—The agricultural capabilities of the island are very great. The principal products, in addition to those of the soil, are furs, obtained chiefly from the beaver, the raccoon, the land-otter, and the sea-otter. Fish of the most valuable kind abound on the coast. Gold has been discovered, and coal is found in large quantities.

## CHAPTER XLIX.

### BRITISH COLUMBIA.

(So called from Christopher Columbus.)

*Size*, with islands, the same as Lower Canada, or equal to a sq. of 450 m.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For*.—British Columbia is noted for its rich gold-mines, and for its comparatively mild climate.

2. *Extent*.—This new colony is bounded on the north by Russian America and the Finlay Branch of the Peace River, east by the main chain of the Rocky Mountains, south by the

**QUESTIONS.**—Give the size, extent, and position of Vancouver Island. Describe its physical features. What is said of its climate and products? Mention the principal subjects of ch. XLIX. For what is B. Columbia noted?

United States boundary-line (49° north latitude), and west by the Gulf of Georgia, Pacific Ocean. Without Queen Charlotte and other adjacent islands, it is about 450 miles long, and 250 wide.

3. *Physical Features.*—The scenery of the northern part is picturesque, being diversified with mountain, lake, and river. The southern part includes the rich gold-valley of the Fraser River, and is well adapted to agriculture and pasturage. In addition to the principal Rocky Mountain range along the eastern boundary, two other parallel ranges naturally divide the country into three sections; viz., (1) the Pacific slope, (2) the Fraser River basin, and (3) the valley of the Upper Columbia. The parallel ranges in British Columbia are the Blue and the Cascade Mountains. The principal peaks are Mounts Brown and Hooker; the former 16,000 feet, and the latter 15,690, above the sea-level. Between these two peaks there is a pass called the Athabaska Portage, the summit of which is elevated 7,300 feet above the sea. To the south is the Kootainie Pass, 6,000 feet above the sea-level.

4. *Climate.*—Between the Cascade range and the Pacific coast the climate is equable; but towards the Eastern Rocky Mountains it is very variable. Winter lasts from November till March; but snow seldom remains long on the ground. The prevailing winds are from the north in summer, and from the south and the west in winter. The soil is fertile.

5. *Commerce and Finances.*—The annual value of gold and other products exported from British Columbia and Vancouver Island is about \$10,000,000; imports of British Columbia in 1865 were about \$3,500,000; of Vancouver Island, \$4,500,000. The revenue of British Columbia for the same year was about \$550,000; of Vancouver Island, \$200,000.

---

**QUESTIONS.**—Give the size and extent of British Columbia. Describe its chief physical features. What is said of the climate, commerce, imports, exports and finances of British Columbia and Vancouver Island?

CHAP.

His

1. Pacific  
Ameri  
Mendo  
haens  
was n  
ten, a  
which  
reache  
southe  
2. I  
suppos  
Juan d  
discover  
tured a  
Juan d  
quently  
ries al  
reached  
his nar  
same o  
that C  
explores  
year so  
Sound  
trade.  
explore

QUEST  
the Paci  
discoveri

## CHAPTER L.

## HISTORY OF VANCOUVER ISLAND AND BRITISH COLUMBIA.

## Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Discovery of British Columbia and Vancouver Island.*

1. *Discovery of the Pacific Ocean.*—Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean in 1513. Cortes explored the Pacific coast of America, from Mexico, in 1536, almost as far north as Cape Mendocino (California), in latitude 40°. Although Magelhaens discovered the strait which bears his name in 1520, it was not until 1615 (nearly a century afterwards) that Schouten, a native of Hoorn in the Netherlands, doubled the Cape which he named Hoorn, or Horn, and thus for the first time reached the Pacific Ocean by sailing directly round the most southern part of the American continent.

2. *Discovery of Vancouver Island.*—Sir Francis Drake is supposed to have gone as far north on the Pacific coast as the Juan du Fu-ca Strait in 1578; and Cavendish also made some discoveries in the North Pacific in 1587. In that year he captured a Spanish ship off the coast, but put the crew on shore. Juan de Fu-ca, a Greek sailor, and one of the crew, was subsequently despatched by the Viceroy of Mexico to make discoveries along the coast northwards. He is reported to have reached, in one of his expeditions, the strait which now bears his name. The Spaniards made various discoveries along the same coast in subsequent years; but it was not until 1778 that Captain Cook, by direction of the British government, explored the coast as far north as Nootka Sound. In that year some London merchants made a settlement at Nootka Sound for the purpose of establishing a depot for Chinese trade. In 1779, Capt. Mears, R.N., named, and, in part, explored the Strait of Juan de Fu-ca. In 1792, Capt. Van-

---

QUESTIONS.—Give a brief summary of the history of the discovery of the Pacific Ocean, and of Vancouver Island. Give an account of the discoveries by Sir Francis Drake, Captains Cook, Mears, and Vancouver

couver, R.N., was despatched from England to the Pacific to meet Señor Quadra, a Spanish commissioner, and to settle with him matters of difference, as to territory, which had arisen on the coast between England and Spain. Vancouver was further directed to explore the adjacent coasts (with a view to determine the north-west passage), especially the Strait itself and Admiralty Inlet. He afterwards, following the course of an American captain, threaded his way through the islands of the Gulf of Georgia (named by him after George III), to Queen Charlotte's Sound. Out of compliment to the Spanish commissioner, Capt. Vancouver associated Quadra's name with his own in naming the island; but it now bears only the name of Vancouver,—that of Quadra having fallen into disuse.

3. *Discoveries across the Continent.*—In 1771, John Hearn, an employé of the Hudson Bay Company, was induced to explore "the far-off metal river" running northwards into the Arctic Ocean, and thus discovered the Coppermine River and Great Slave Lake. Another distinguished explorer, Sir Alex. Mackenzie, discovered, in his first expedition into the interior, the large river, since known as the Mackenzie River, which also falls into the Arctic Ocean. In 1792, while Vancouver was exploring the coast, Mackenzie, following up the course of the Peace River, crossed the Rocky Mountains into British Columbia. Here he reached the Tatouche Tesse, which he supposed to be the Columbia River, but which was afterwards known as the Fraser River. From this river he crossed the country towards the Pacific Ocean, which he reached by way of the Salmon River. In 1806, Simon Fraser, an employé of the North-West Fur Company of Canada, explored the country from Fort Chippewayan (Lake Athabaska), and, crossing the Rocky Mountains, formed a trading-post at Fraser Lake, on a tributary of the river to which we have referred, and which was also named after him.

---

QUESTIONS.—How did the island of Vancouver receive its name? Give a sketch of the discoveries across the continent which were made by Hearn, and by Sir A. Mackenzie. Give a sketch of Fraser's discoveries



4. *Boundary and Settlement.*—In 1843 Vancouver Island was first occupied by the Hudson Bay Company, and Victoria, the capital, founded. This capital was selected by James Douglas, Esq., the governor, on behalf of the Hudson Bay Company. In 1844, the boundary-line between the United States and what is now known as British Columbia, was determined. In 1849, Vancouver Island was conditionally granted by the Queen to the Company, for the purpose of settlement. Subsequently a dispute arose between the British and American Governments as to the construction of the boundary-treaty, both parties claiming the island of San Juan, which is situated in the Haro Archipelago, as within their territory. In 1856 a joint commission was appointed to settle the dispute, but as yet (1866) it remains unsettled.

5. *Discovery of Gold.*—In 1859 gold was first publicly known to exist in the valley of the Fraser River, and thousands immediately flocked thither. Mining regulations were issued by the Governor, and routes projected into the interior, where gold was chiefly found. The existence of gold in these regions was previously known to a few, and especially to the Indians. In 1862 it was discovered in Queen Charlotte's Island.

6. *Colonial Government established.*—In the year 1859 the occupation of Vancouver Island was resumed by the Queen; and it, together with British Columbia (now so noted for its gold mines), was erected into two British Crown Colonies, with separate boundaries, but under one government. James Douglas, Esq., the resident Hudson Bay Company's agent, or local governor, was invested with the same authority by Her Majesty, with jurisdiction over both colonies. Laws were first made by the Governor and his Executive Council and promulgated by royal proclamation, after which they were submitted to the Queen and both Houses of Parliament. In 1863, separate Governors were appointed for each of the two colonies; and the name New Westminster was given to the capital of British Columbia by the Queen, at the request of the inhabitants. The site of New Westminster was selected by Colonel

---

QUESTIONS.—Give also a detailed account of the boundary and settlement of British Columbia and Vancouver Island. What dispute arose? What is said of the discovery of gold? How are these colonies governed?

Moody, in preference to Fort Langley, which is on the American side of the Fraser River.

7. *Union and Confederation.*—It is proposed to unite the two colonies under one Governor and Legislature. Should the Eastern Provinces of British North America (Canada, &c.) be formed into a Confederation, and the North-West Territory (Red River, Saskatchewan, &c.) be opened up from Canada, it is possible that British Columbia and Vancouver Island will also join the Confederation. Such a union of all the colonies of British North America would greatly promote the construction of the great Pacific Railway, so long projected, through British territory. A route for this railway was explored by Captain Palliser in 1858-9. It extends from Fort Garry, at the confluence of the Red River and the Assiniboine, in the Red River settlement, to New Westminster, and follows, for a portion of the distance, the course of the Assiniboine and South Saskatchewan Rivers, crossing the Rocky Mountains at the Vermillion Pass. The distance from Portland, Maine, to Victoria, Vancouver Island, by this route, (by way of Chicago, St. Paul's, Pembina, Saskatchewan, and the Rocky Mountains,) is 3,200 miles.

8. *Executive Government*.—The Governor of each colony is at present aided in his administration by an Executive Council, a Legislative Council, and a House of Assembly. The island, as well as British Columbia, is divided into electoral districts for the purposes of representation, in a House of Assembly which meets at the seat of government in each colony.

9. *Education.*—Active efforts are being put forth to promote the establishment of a general system of education in the two Pacific Colonies, and the Legislatures have already taken some steps in that direction. In Vancouver Island a Committee of the House of Assembly have urged the establishment of a system of free schools, open to children of all classes of the people which it is likely will soon be done.

10. *Governors of Vancouver Island and British Columbia:*

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. OF VANCOUVER ISLAND AND BRITISH COLUMBIA UNITED. |                               |
| 1859. James Douglas, Esq., C.B.                     |                               |
| 2. OF VANCOUVER ISLAND,                             | 3. OF BRITISH COLUMBIA.       |
| 1863. Capt. A. Kennedy.                             | 1863. Frederick Seymour, Esq. |

**THE END.**

**QUESTIONS.**—What is said of Confederation with the Eastern Provinces; of the proposed route of the Pacific Railway? How is the administration of colonies conducted? What has been done for the establishment of schools?

[illegible]

# INDEX TO THIS HISTORY.

- I. BRIEF BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES.  
 II. BIOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES TO INDIVIDUALS  
 III. INDEX OF EVENTS, SUBJECTS, &C.  
 IV. GEOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES TO PLACES.

## I. Brief Biographical Sketches.

NOTE.—r. means reference to the name only, in the body of the History.

- Abercrombry, Gen., 99; *ref. to* 102, 3, 106, 173.  
 Amherst, Lord, 106; r. 107, 114, 15, 119, 182, 173.  
 Andros, Sir E., 72.  
 Arnold, Benedict, 136, 138.  
 Arthur, Sir George, 187; r. 189.  
 Bagot, Sir Charles, 192.  
 Baltimore, Lord, 287.  
 Baldwin, Robert, C.B., 196.  
 Bedard, Hon. E., 183.  
 Bigot, Intendant, 92; r. 133.  
 Braddock, Gen., 94; r. 110, 120, 173.  
 Bradstreet, Col., 100; r. 103, 119, 121, 170, 3.  
 Brant, Jos., chief, 139; r. 97, 130, 170.  
 Brook, Sir I., 154; r. 157, 160, 173, 5.  
 Burgoyne, Gen., 140; r. 169.  
 Cabot, Sebastian, 22, 275.  
 Cartier, Jacques, 24; r. 25, 168, 262.  
 Champlain, S., 34; r. 43, 45, 50, 209.  
 Colbert, 59; r. 61, 62, 71.  
 Colborne, Sir J., 180; r. 185, 7, 9.  
 Coligni, 66.  
 Columbus, 18; r. 19, 23.  
 Cornwallis, Lord, 141.  
 Cortereal, 23, r. 235.  
 Craig, Sir J. H., 155; r. 129.  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 241; r. 146, 248.  
 Dale, Sir T., 239.  
 D'Albousie, Lord, 177, 180.  
 De Beauharnois, 86; r. 209.  
 De Callières, 75; r. 79, 83.  
 De Courcelles, 60; r. 170.  
 De Denonville, 72; r. 76.  
 De Frontenac, 64, 82; r. 65, 70, 76, 79.  
 De la Castine, 243; r. 77.  
 De la Galissonnière, 89; r. 249.  
 De la Jonquière, 90; r. 92, 248, 9.  
 De la Salle, 68, 70, 89, 170, 209.  
 De la Tour, Mde., 241, 264.  
 De Laval, Bishop, 58; r. 71, 210, 12.  
 De Maisonneuve, P. C., 51; r. 168.  
 De Montmagny, 50; r. 52.  
 De Roberval, 23; r. 29.  
 De Salaberry, Col., 160; r. 163, 171, 3.  
 De Tracy, 60; r. 72.  
 De Vaudreuil, 84; r. 85, 88, 94, 99, 102, 110, 111, 168.  
 D'Iberville, 73, 80, 83, 243.  
 Dieskau, Gen., 95.  
 Dinwiddie, Gov., 92; r. 91, 94.  
 Dongan, Col. T., 72; r. 15.  
 Dorchester, Lord, (Sir G. Carleton,) 133; r. 137, 142, 151, 153, 169, 220.  
 Druillettes, Père, 66; r. 66.  
 Drummond, G., 182; r. 166, 172-3-6.  
 Du Quesne, 92; r. 9.  
 Durham, Lord, 187; r. 187.  
 Elgin, Earl of, 194.  
 Gilbert, Sir H., 286; r. 10, 233, 5.  
 Gosford, Lord, 183; r. 185.  
 Haldimand, Sir F., 106; r. 114, 141.  
 Harvey, Sir J., 161; r. 173.  
 Hennepin, Père, 68.  
 Henri IV, 35; r. 30, 34, 36, 40, 236, 239.  
 Hincks, Hon. F., C.B., 197.  
 Howe, Lord, 103.  
 Hudson, H., 42; r. 35.  
 Jogues, Père, 53; r. 87.  
 Johnson, Sir W., 97; r. 53, 87, 90, 94, 96, 99, 103, 115, 118, 120, 173.  
 Jollette, 67; r. 63, 209.  
 Kempt, Sir J., 180; r. 180.  
 Lafontaine, Sir L. H., 195.  
 Lescarbot, 37; r. 238, 263.  
 Londoun, Earl of, 98; r. 101, 102.  
 Louis XIV, 244; r. 63, 70, 73, 75, 121.  
 Mackenzie, W. L., 184; r. 180.  
 MacNab, Sir A. N., 186; r. 197.  
 Maitland, Sir P., 176.  
 Marquette, Père, 67; r. 56, 89, 209.  
 Mascarene, Col., 248.  
 Merritt, Hon. Wm. H., 179; r. 210.  
 Metcalfe, Lord, 193.  
 Monckton, Col., 97; r. 103, 116, 173, 250.  
 Montcalm, 98; r. 100, 102, 104, 108, 112, 168.  
 Montgomery, Gen. R., 136; r. 168.  
 Montmorency, Duke de, 46.  
 Morin, Hon. A. N., 183.  
 Mountain, Bishop, 213; r. 210.  
 Pepperrell, Sir Wm., 88; r. 246.  
 Perrot, Nicholas, 63.  
 Phipps, Sir W., 78; r. 84, 163.  
 Polo, Marco, 14.  
 Pontiac, 117; r. 53, 118, 9, 121, 123.

Prescott, Gen., 153; r.  
 Prevost, Gen., 155; r. 163, 173-6.  
 Proctor, Gen., 162, 172-3.  
 Raleigh, Sir W., 286.  
 Schuyler, Major, 79; r. 80, 137.  
 Sheaffe, Sir R. H., 160; r. 173, 5.  
 Sherbrooke, Sir J. C., 177.  
 Shirley, Gov., 246; r. 83, 98, 96.  
 Simcoe, Col. J. G., 152; r. 153, 210.  
 Stuart, Rev. Dr., 213.

Sydenham, Lord, 159; r. 187, 191.  
 Talon, Intendant, 60; r. 62, 71.  
 Tecumseh, 163; r. 172, 3.  
 Verrazzani, J.; r. 13, 28.  
 Vesputius, Americus, 21.  
 Washington, Gen., 93; r. 91, 104, 173, 277.  
 Whitfield, Rev. George, 246.  
 Wolfe, Gen., 106; r. 108-113, 163, 173.

## II. Biographical References to Individuals.

Albany, Duke of York, 61, 73.  
 Alexander, Sir W. See Stirling.  
 Alfred, King, 8.  
 Alfred, Prince, 199.  
 Allouez, Père, 66.  
 André, Major, 136.  
 Anderson (fugitive slave), 204.  
 Anne of Austria, 52.  
 Anne, Queen, 172, 244, 290.  
 Argall, Sir S., 239.  
 Aylmer, Lord, 133.  
 Beaujeu, 101.  
 Beauregard, Gen., 200.  
 Bedell, Col., 174.  
 Bishopp, Col., 173-4.  
 Boerstler, Col., 163, 171.  
 Bolingbroke, Lord, 203.  
 Bosquet, Col., 105, 119, 121.  
 Bourdon, Jean, 57.  
 Bourlemaque, 107, 114, 173.  
 Brébeuf, Père, 43, 54, 66.  
 Bruce, Robt., 9.  
 Brulé, Etienne, 145.  
 Burke, Edmund, 143.  
 Burnet, Gov., 86.  
 Burton, Col., 111.  
 Butler, Col., 104, 118.  
 Byng, Admiral, 89.  
 Cabot, Sir John, 10, 22, 33.  
 Cadillac, De la M., 83.  
 Cæsar, Julius, 7, 11.  
 Capet, Hugh, 12.  
 Carleton, Sir G. See "Dorchester."  
 Carroll, Bishop, 139.  
 Carroll, Charles, 139.  
 Case, Rev. Wm., 216.  
 Cathcart, Lord, 195.  
 Chabot, Admiral, 24.  
 Chandler, Gen., 161.  
 Charlemagne, 12.  
 Charles I., 83, 49, 204, 240.  
 Charles II., 64, 146, 204, 265.  
 Charles V (Spain), 24.  
 Charlevoix, 86.  
 Chase, Samuel, 189.  
 Chatham, Lord. See "Pitt."  
 Chaumonot, Père, 57, 66.  
 Chauvin, 34, 236.  
 Clarke, Gen., 251.

Clement VII., 43.  
 Clinton, Sir H., 133, 246.  
 Cooper, J. F., 87.  
 Corlear, Van., 53, 72.  
 Covington, Gen., 104, 5.  
 Cramahé, H. T., 134.  
 Dablon, Père, 57.  
 D'Ailleboust, 54, 56.  
 Dalhousie, Earl of, 113.  
 Daly, Sir D., 239.  
 Dalzell, Capt., 100.  
 Daniel, Père, 54.  
 D'Anville, Duke, 88, 247.  
 D'Argenson, 53.  
 Daulac, 53.  
 D'Aulnay. See De Charnizay.  
 D'Avaugour, 59.  
 D'Aiguillon, Duchess, 211.  
 D'Aubrey, 106.  
 Dearborn, Gen., 160.  
 De Bienville, C., 90, 241, 264.  
 De Beaujeu, 86.  
 De Bourgoinville, 93, 115.  
 De Bouteroue, 62.  
 De Caen, 47, 43, 49.  
 De Carignan, Prince, 61.  
 De Champigny, 74.  
 De Charnizay, d'Aulnay, 90, 241, 204.  
 De Chaste, 34, 236.  
 De Condé, Prince, 41, 43.  
 De Contrecoeur, 92.  
 De Fénelon, Abbé, 107.  
 De Lauzon, 51, 56.  
 De Léry, Baron, 24, 235.  
 De Lévis, 98, 101, 113, 4, 163.  
 De Longueuil, 86, 92.  
 De Mesy, 59.  
 De Meules, 71, 74.  
 De Monte, 35, 41, 236.  
 De Poutrancourt, 36, 237, 3.  
 De Quesne, Père, 66.  
 De Ramzay, 113, 243.  
 De Razillat, 241.  
 De Rottenburg, 176.  
 De Sillery, Noël, B., 51, 211.  
 De Soissons, 41.  
 De Tonti, 68.  
 De Troyes, 73.  
 De Villiers, 99.

De Grozeller, 63, 300.  
 De Jumonville, 93.  
 De la Barre, 70, 71, 72.  
 De la Roche, 30, 236.  
 De la Tour, Sir C., 240, 234.  
 Denys, 24, 241, 2.  
 Dixon and Mason's line, 233.  
 Dow, Lorenzo, 216.  
 Drake, Sir F.  
 Drew, Lieut. R. N., 183.  
 Duchesneau, 71, 82.  
 Dunn, Hon. T., 164-5.  
 Dupont, Gaudais, 59.  
 Edward the Confessor, 9.  
 Edward I, 9, 204.  
 Edward III, 204.  
 Egbert, King, 8.  
 Elliot, Rev. John, 56.  
 Elizabeth of York, 10.  
 Elizabeth, Queen, 10.  
 Fenelon, Abbe, 71, 132.  
 Fitzgibbon, Col., 162, 171-3.  
 Forbes, Gen., 104, 173.  
 Fox, C. J., 143.  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 139.  
 Francis I, 12, 24, 25.  
 Gage, Gen., 121, 132, 133.  
 Generals (various), 173.  
 Genghis Khan, 14, 15.  
 George II, 98, 252.  
 " III, 127, 133, 139, 204, 220.  
 Gibbs, Sir James, 183.  
 Gladwin, Major, 119.  
 Gore, Sir F., 155, 175.  
 Governors of Canada, 201.  
 " Nova Scotia, 255.  
 " New Brunswick, 270.  
 " P. E. Island, 230.  
 " Newfoundland, 236.  
 " Vancouver Isl., 310.  
 " British Col., 310.  
 Gravy, Dupont, 84, 85, 47, 236.  
 Grenville, Lord, 142.  
 Grey, Sir Charles, 183.  
 Guy, John, 237.  
 Halifax, Lord, 250.  
 Hamilton, Gov., 141.  
 Hampton, Gen., 163-5, 171.  
 Hancock, John, and the rest, 133.  
 Harold II, 9.  
 Harrison, Gen., 172.  
 Hawks, Sergeant, 83.  
 Head, Sir F. B., 135-7.  
 Head, Sir Edmund, 127.  
 Henry, Capt., 153.  
 " II, 9.  
 " III, 9, 203, 4.  
 " IV, 10.  
 " VII, 10, 13, 22.  
 Hope, Col., 141.  
 Hull, Gen., 153.  
 Hunter, Hon. S., 173.

Indian Chiefs:  
 Black Kettle, 79.  
 Brant, Joseph, 97.  
 " John, 140.  
 Donnacona, 25, 27.  
 Durantal, 43.  
 Guacanagari, 21.  
 Halion, 265.  
 Huron *agokanna*, 23.  
 Jones, Rev. P., 217.  
 Kondiaronk, 75.  
 Merberton, 40.  
 Minavana, 119.  
 Pontiac, 52, 117.  
 Red Head, 104.  
 Tecumseh, 164, 172.  
 Isabella, Queen, 13.  
 Jackson, " Stonewall," 200.  
 James II, 77.  
 John, King, 9, 11, 203, 207.  
 Keith, Family, 83.  
 Kent, Duke of, 153, 254, 277.  
 Kerk, Sir L., 49, 240, 263, 238.  
 Le Jeune, Père, 211, 222.  
 Lalemant, Père, 43, 54.  
 Lamberville, Père, 74, 5.  
 La Saussaye, 239.  
 La Verandrye, 87, 209.  
 Lawrence, Gov., 94, 219, 252.  
 Lebaron, Père, 44, 46.  
 Lee, Gen. R. E., 200.  
 Lincoln, President, 200.  
 Logan, Sir W., 223.  
 Le Moynes, Père, 57, 59.  
 Louis IX, 13, 15.  
 " XIII, 35, 52, 241, 264.  
 " XV, 31, 83.  
 Lount and Mathews, 137.  
 Macaulay, Lord, 35.  
 MacDonell, Col., 160.  
 " Major, 161.  
 Mackay, Col., 161.  
 Madison, President, 153.  
 Manchester, Duke of, 155.  
 Martel, Carlos, 12.  
 Masse, Père Mathews, 43, 239.  
 Mazarin, Cardinal, 242.  
 Membertou, Sagamore, 87, 238.  
 Mesnard, Père, 57, 58, 63.  
 Michel, Capt., 49, 50.  
 Milnes, Sir R. S., 154.  
 Molson, Hon. J., 223.  
 Monck, Lord, 199.  
 Morrison, Col., 173.  
 Munro, Col., 101-2.  
 Murray, Gen., 103, 113, 4, 132-3, 163.  
 Napoleon Bonaparte, 154.  
 Nicholson, Gen., 75, 244.  
 O'Donnell, Bishop, 292-3.  
 Osgoode, Chief Justice, 153.  
 Papineau, Hon. L. J., 184.  
 Perrot, Gov., 71.  
 Peter the Hermit, 3.

Pinzon (brothers), 18.  
 Pike, Gen., 174.  
 Pitt, Wm., 102, 114.  
 Plessis, Bishop, 158.  
 Polo, Marco, 14, 17, 20.  
 Pontgravé. See Dupont Gravé.  
 Priccaux, Gen., 97, 103.  
 Proctor, Col., 161, 173.  
 Queen Victoria, 190.  
 Quentin, Père, 239.  
 Radisson, 64.  
 Raleigh, Sir W., 10.  
 Riall, Gen., 166, 171.  
 Richelieu, Cardinal, 80, 48, 52, 240.  
 Richmond, Duke of, 177.  
 Roberts, Capt., 157, 173.  
 Robinson, Sir F. P., 178.  
 Rodgers, Capt., 97, 99, 103, 107, 116.  
 Roquemont, 44.  
 Ross, Gen., 178.  
 Rosinol, 238.  
 Rouillé, 90.  
 Rupe, Prince, 64.  
 Ryerson, Col. J., 147.  
 Ryerson, Rev. Dr., 147, 220.  
 Sabine, L., 136, 142, 3, 146.  
 Secord, Mrs., 161, 171.  
 Sedgwick, Col., 242, 205.  
 Slaughter, Col., 79.  
 Smyth, Sir J. C., 110, 153.  
 " Gen., 160.

Somers, Lord, 203.  
 St. Valler, Mgr., 212.  
 Stanwix, Gen., 104, 107.  
 Stark, Capt., 103.  
 Stewart, Bishop, 214.  
 Stirling, Earl of, 240, 263.  
 Strachan, Bishop, 214.  
 Sully, Duc de, 36.  
 Townshend, Gen., 108, 112.  
 Turenne, 41.  
 Vancouver, 35, 266, 8.  
 Van Rensselaer, Gen., 155, 184.  
 Vaughan, Col., 246.  
 Vignau, 42, 43.  
 Villebon, Gov., 243.  
 Vincent, Gen., 162, 173.  
 Voltaire, 81.  
 Von Schoultz, 183.  
 Wales, Prince of, 198, 255.  
 Walker, Sir H., 85, 168.  
 Warren, Sir P., 97, 246, 7.  
 Whitbourne, Capt., 237.  
 Wilkinson, Gen., 162, 4, 5, 171.  
 William I, 8, 9.  
 " III, 77.  
 " IV, 170, 253.  
 Williams, Col., 95, 6, 173.  
 Winthrop, Gov., 55, 78, 241, 204.  
 Wycliffe, John, 80.  
 Yeo, Commodore, 174.

### III. Index of Events, Subjects, &c.

Academies in Canada, 221, 2.  
 Acadie, History of, 235.  
 " Name of, 83, 254.  
 Acadians exiled, 251.  
 " Exodus of, 89, 249.  
 Agricultural products, 210, 224, 5, 273, 282, 297.  
 America, British, 30.  
 Addresses to Canadians, Amer. 136, 7.  
 American Commissioners, 139.  
 " disaffection, 135, 252.  
 Anglo-Saxon, 8.  
 Arabs and Saracens, 15.  
 Army bills voted, 156.  
 Assembly, House of, 152, 178, 191, 6, 206, 7.  
 Assessment, first act of, 211.  
 Baptists, 145, 217.  
 Baronets of Nova Scotia, 49, 240.  
 Basque traders, 37, 49.  
 Battle-fields of Canada, 163.  
 Bible Society, U.C., 211.  
 Bishops, R.C., 212.  
 " C. of E., 213, 4, 220.  
 " Methodist, 213.  
 Bouquet's relief of Fort Pitt, 119.  
 Braddock's defeat, 96.

Bradstreet's capture of Fort Frontenac, 104.  
 British American growth, 30.  
 " rule in Canada, 132.  
 Britons, Ancient, 7.  
 Burgoyne's defeat, 141.  
 Cabot's discoveries, 10, 22, 33, 234.  
 Catholic emancipation, 205.  
 Caesar's conquest, 7, 11.  
 Calumet, 126.  
 Canaanites of Scripture, 13.  
 Canada in 1763, 182.  
 " intrigues in, 135.  
 " name of, 27.  
 " History of, 34.  
 Canals of Canada, 179, 210, 227-8.  
 Capitulation, Treaty of, 115.  
 Capetian dynasty, 12.  
 Carolingian, 12.  
 Caroline steamer, 186.  
 Cartier's discoveries, 24, 235.  
 Charta de Foresta, 203.  
 Carignan regiment, 39, 61, 243.  
 Charter, Hudson Bay, 64, 301.  
 Champlain's discoveries, 34.  
 Churches in Canada, 178, 211, 18.  
 Church of England, 178, 212, 4.



Civil law introduced, 158.  
 " code, L.C., 200.  
 Clergy Reserve, 31, 42, 177, 197, 205.  
 Climate of British Columbia, 308.  
 " Canada, 223, 4.  
 " New Brunswick, 273.  
 " Newfoundland, 297.  
 " Nova Scotia, 280.  
 " Prince Edward Isl., 282.  
 " Vancouver Island, 305.  
 Columbus, discoveries of, 16, 21.  
 Colleges of Canada, 221-2.  
 " New Brunswick, 272.  
 " Nova Scotia, 257.  
 Colonial Systems compared, 122.  
 Common Law of England, 203.  
 Commerce of British Columbia, 306.  
 " Canada, 225, 6.  
 " Hudson Bay, 304.  
 " New Brunswick, 273.  
 " Newfoundland, 296.  
 " Nova Scotia, 281.  
 " Prince Edw. Isl., 282.  
 " Vancouver Isl., 305.  
 Commercial enterprise, 13, 16, 226.  
 Commission of inquiry, imperial, 183.  
 Compact Family, 177.  
 Confederacy, Iroquois, 131.  
 Confederation of British North America, 200, 254, 280.  
 Congress, Insurgent, 133, 139, 142.  
 Congregationalists, 218.  
 Conservative party described, 181.  
 Constitution, British, 202, 4.  
 " of Br. Columbia, 268.  
 " Canada, 134, 142, 152, 205.  
 " N. Brunswick, 270.  
 " Newfoundland, 296.  
 " Nova Scotia, 256.  
 " Prince Ed. Isl., 280.  
 " Vancouver I., 310.  
 Conspiracy of Pontiac, 118.  
 Cornwallis, surrender of, 141.  
 Cortereal's discoveries, 23, 235.  
 Council, Sovereign, established, 59.  
 Council, special, 185, 9, 190.  
 Coureurs de bois, 81.  
 Court of Law, 203.  
 Coutume de Paris, 60, 133, 4, 205.  
 Criminal law, 134, 153, 205.  
 Crisis of 1837.  
 Crusades, 9, 14.  
 Danes in England, 8.  
 Decimal currency, 197, 226.  
 Decrees of Napoleon I., 154.  
 Deskau's defeat, 98.  
 Disasters in Newfoundland, 293.  
 Discovery, French, 12, 24, 235.  
 " of Br. N. Am., 83.  
 Dispersion of U. E. Loyalists, 147.  
 District divisions, 85, 152.  
 Domestic habits of the Indians, 124.

Doric volunteers, 135.  
 Dutch traders, 62.  
 Earthquake in Canada, 51.  
 East Indian Company, 135.  
 Education in Canada, 198, 206, 220.  
 " New Brunswick, 271.  
 " Newfoundland, 297.  
 " Nova Scotia, 257.  
 " Prince Edward I., 281.  
 Enterprise, early, in Canada, 209.  
 Executive Government, 206.  
 Exhibitions of 1851, 1855, 1861, and 1865, 197.  
 Expeditions against Canada, 136, 140, 156.  
 Exports of British Columbia, 306.  
 " Canada, 227.  
 " Hudson Bay, 304.  
 " New Brunswick, 273.  
 " Newfoundland, 298.  
 " Nova Scotia, 261.  
 " Prince Edw. Isl., 282.  
 Family compact, 177.  
 Feudal excitement, 200.  
 Feudal union, early, 55, 98.  
 Feudal system, 29, 49.  
 Fires in New Brunswick, 253, 268.  
 Fisheries of Canada, 227.  
 " New Brunswick, 273.  
 " Nova Scotia, 280.  
 " Newfoundland, 298.  
 " Prince Edward Isl., 282.  
 " Vancouver Isl., 305.  
 France, ancient, 11.  
 Franchise Act, 205.  
 Franciscans, 43, 210.  
 Free Church disruption, 215.  
 French discoveries, 12, 84, 66, 209.  
 Frontenac, administration of, 82.  
 " destruction of fort, 104.  
 Frontier commission, 248.  
 Fur trade, 62, 73, 81, 210.  
 Geology of Canada, 149.  
 Gilbert's expedition, 235.  
 Glengarry cairn, 189.  
 Gold in British Columbia, 309.  
 Goths and Vandals, 7.  
 Government, British, 202.  
 " of Br. Columbia, 310.  
 " Canada, 132-134, 151.  
 " New Brunsw., 270.  
 " Newfoundland, 296.  
 " Nova Scotia, 250.  
 " Pr. Edw. Isl., 280.  
 " Vancouver I., 310.  
 Governor General, 133, 175, 206, 7.  
 Governors of the Provinces, 201.  
 Grammar Schools, 221.  
 Grand Trunk Railway, 197.  
 Great Western " 228.  
 Griffon vessel, 69.  
 Habeas Corpus, 204, 3.  
 Half-Pay Loyalists, 147.

- Heroism of Mme. La Tour, 241, 264.  
 " Mrs. Secord, 161, 171.  
 Hieroglyphics, Indian, 125.  
 History of British Columbia, 307.  
 " Canada, 34.  
 " England, 7.  
 " European countries, 13.  
 " France, 11.  
 " Hudson Bay, 300.  
 " New Brunswick, 262.  
 " Newfoundland, 283.  
 " Nova Scotia, 235.  
 " Pr. Edward Island, 276.  
 " Vancouver Island, 307.  
 Horses introduced, 62.  
 Hudson Bay Charter, 64.  
 Hundred Associates. See "Partners"  
 Huron-Iroquois, 124, 127.  
 Hurons destroyed, 64.  
 Imports of Canada, 227.  
 " New Brunswick, 273.  
 " Newfoundland, 298.  
 " Nova Scotia, 261.  
 " Prince Edward Isl., 282.  
 Independence, American, 141.  
 " of Parliament, 205.  
 Indian Tribes in B. N. A., 123.  
 Abenakis, 56, 243, 275.  
 Adirondacks, 127, 129, 181.  
 Algonquins, 27, 39, 53, 56, 124,  
 127, 181.  
 Assiniboins, 130.  
 Andastes, 129, 132.  
 Caughnawagas, 118, 141.  
 Cayugas, 57.  
 Chippewas, 128.  
 Chippewayans, 124, 5, 123.  
 Crees, 124.  
 Delawares, 117, 119, 121, 130.  
 Eries, 45, 129.  
 Etcheminus, 262.  
 Five Nations. See Iroquois.  
 Hurons, 28, 39, 44, 48, 53, 54,  
 119, 129, 211.  
 Illinois, 68.  
 Iroquois, 39, 45, 47, 52, 54, 57,  
 61, 74, 80, 85, 98, 100, 115, 130,  
 139.  
 Loups, 131.  
 Micmacs, 235, 262, 5, 275.  
 Mingoes, 131.  
 Miamis, 67, 69.  
 Missasaugas, 125.  
 Mohawks, 53, 57, 61, 79, 100,  
 181, 265.  
 Montagnais, 44, 56, 123, 211.  
 Neutre Nation, 129, 182.  
 Nipissings, 130.  
 Nebereini, 44.  
 Ojibwas, 55, 118, 124, 128, 9.  
 Oneidas, 68, 61.  
 Onondagas, 57, 74, 80, 90.  
 Ottawas, 39, 77, 118, 128.  
 Indian Tribes (continued).  
 Petuns, 129, 182.  
 Red, 233.  
 Senecas, 45, 57, 75, 91, 118, 126,  
 181.  
 St. Francis, 86, 98, 107, 118.  
 Six Nations. See "Iroquois."  
 Souriquois, 232.  
 Tuscaroras, 85, 130, 1.  
 Wyandots, 129.  
 Indian war, first fatal, 39.  
 Intercolonial contests, 72, 81, 86.  
 " railway, 201, 232.  
 Intendant first sent out, 61.  
 Invasion of Canada, 136.  
 Ireland, conquest of, 9.  
 Iroquois confederacy. See "Indians"  
 Jesuits estates, 105, 154, 212.  
 " missionaries, 48, 212, 239.  
 Judges in the Legislature, 155.  
 Jury, trial by, 203.  
 Law consolidated,  
 Law courts: Canada, 208.  
 Nova Scotia, 257.  
 Legislative Council, 151, 176, 191,  
 205, 206, 7.  
 Liberty, civil, 65.  
 " Sons of, 185.  
 Loyalists, United Empire, 142, 144-  
 148, 151, 233.  
 Magna Charta, 9, 203, 4.  
 Mariner's Compass, 23.  
 Maritime Provinces, 232.  
 Maroons in Nova Scotia, 253.  
 Marriage, Queen's, 190.  
 Map of the British Provinces, 231.  
 Massacre, year of the, 76.  
 " first in Canada, 44.  
 Manufactures of Canada, 227.  
 " New Bruns., 274.  
 " Nova Scotia, 261.  
 " Pr. Ed. Island, 282.  
 Merovingian dynasty, 12.  
 Merchants Company, 84, 40, 42, 47.  
 Methodists, 145, 216, 27.  
 Military and militia, 175.  
 " schools, 175.  
 Mineral products, 228, 4.  
 Missionaries, first, 43, 48, 143, 210, 18.  
 Mississippi, discoveries of the, 69.  
 Monument to Wolfe, 111-113, 137.  
 " Montcalm, 112, 3, 187.  
 " Brook, 159.  
 " at Ste. Foye, 168, 9.  
 Montreal founded, 51.  
 " expeditions against, 79, 84,  
 114, 137.  
 Municipal institutions, 206, 211, 18.  
 Naval captures, 1812-4, 174.  
 New England Alliance, 55.  
 " expedition, 243, 4.  
 Newspapers, old, 210, 11, 266.  
 Normal School corner stone, 196.

Normans and Northmen, 8, 234.  
 North-West Company, 303.  
 Nova Scotia, History of, 233.  
 Ocean steamers, 197.  
 Palitser's Act, 292.  
 Parliament House burned, 190.  
     " buildings, Ottawa, 199.  
     " of England, 207.  
 Parliamentary government, 151, 2.  
 Partners, the, 100, 49, 50, 53, 56, 59.  
 Patriotic Fund, 198.  
 Pepperrell's expedition, 68.  
 Petition of Right, 204.  
 Phœnicians or Canaanites, 13.  
 Picts and Scots, 7.  
 Plantagenets, 9.  
 Political divisions of B. N. A., 231.  
     " discussions, 176, 180, 182.  
 Population of Canada, 82, 133, 157.  
 Pontiac's conspiracy, 118.  
 Post office, Canada, 177, 196, 226, 9.  
     " New Brunswick, 274.  
     " Newfoundland, 298.  
     " Nova Scotia, 261.  
     " Prince Edward Isl., 282.  
 Presbyterians, 145, 178, 214, 5.  
 Primogeniture, law of, 206.  
 Printing, art of, 10.  
 Protestant missionaries, 143, 212-13.  
 Public Works Board, 192.  
 Quebec Act of 1774, 184, 205.  
 Quebec, expedition against, 49, 78,  
     108, 137.  
 Quit rents composition, 276, 7.  
 Railways of Canada, 210, 228.  
     " New Brunswick, 273.  
     " Nova Scotia, 260.  
 Rebellion, Canadian, of 1837, 185.  
     " Losses Bill, 196.  
 Recollets Fathers, 43, 48, 145, 210, 11,  
     215.  
 Reciprocity Treaty, 196.  
 Rectories, fifty-seven, 178, 184.  
 Reformation, 10.  
 Religion in Canada, spread of, 144.  
 Reform parts described, 181.  
 Religion of the Indians, 127.  
 Representation Act, 205.  
 Resolutions, Ninety-two, 182.  
 Resources, latent, of Canada, 209.  
 Responsible government in the Pro-  
     vinces, 191, 4, 269.  
 Revenue of Canada, 151, 227.  
 Revolution in England, 204.  
 Revolution, American, 135, 152, 292.  
 Right of Search, 154.  
 Rights, Bill of, 204.  
 Roberval's voyages, 28.  
 Roman Catholic religion, 116, 184,  
     182, 211, 2.  
 Roman Catholic emancipation, 205.  
 Romans in England, 7.  
 Roses, wars of the, 9.

Royal government, 58.  
     " Institution, L. C., 154.  
 Sachem, Indian, 127.  
 Saxons in England, 7.  
 Schools, military, of Canada, 175.  
 Seal of Canada, 205.  
 Seat of government, 191, 6, 8.  
 Seigniorial tenure, 80, 49, 50, 152,  
     190, 7, 206, 210.  
 Selkirk's colony, 303.  
 Settlement of Upper Canada, 152.  
 Shipping of Canada, 226.  
 Slave, fugitive, 204.  
 Slavery abolished, 153, 205, 217.  
 Slave trade, origin of, 16.  
 Southern States, war with, 200.  
 Stamp Act, resistance to, 135.  
 Steamers, first Canadian, 226.  
 Sulpiciens, 212.  
 Survey of Prince Edward Isl., 276.  
 Suspension Bridge, Niagara, 229.  
 Tea riot in Boston, reasons for, 136.  
 Telegraphs in Canada, 229.  
     " New Brunswick, 274.  
     " Newfoundland, 298.  
     " Nova Scotia, 261.  
 Totems, Indian, 125.  
 Trade and commerce, 225.  
 Trading disputes in New France,  
     12, 73, 81, 86, 91, 123, 301.  
 Trappers, white, 81.  
 Treasons, statute of, 204.  
 Treaty, Aix la Chapelle, 89, 172, 248.  
     " Ashburton, Lord, 134, 269.  
     " Ghent, 187, 172.  
     " Paris, 122, 172, 205.  
     " Reciprocity, 162, 187.  
     " Ryswick, 82, 172, 244, 302.  
     " St. Germain en Laye, 50, 240.  
     " Utrecht, 85, 88, 172, 190, 244.  
 "Trent," seizure of the, 199.  
 Trial by Jury, 205.  
 Tudors, the, 10.  
 Union, colonial, 55, 205, 246.  
     " of the provinces, 179, 189, 191.  
 Universities, 198, 214, 221, 257, 272.  
 Ursulines, 211, 222.  
 Verazzani's discoveries, 285.  
 Victoria Bridge, 197, 8, 228.  
 Volunteers, Canadian, 175, 200.  
 Wales, conquest of, 10.  
 Wales, Prince of, 199.  
 Wampum, Indian, 40, 126.  
 War party, Indian, 126.  
 Warriors Indian, 124.  
 War of 1812, 153, 172, 3.  
     " Queen Anne's, 85.  
     " King George's, 172.  
     " " William's, 172.  
     " Revolutions, 172.  
     " Seven Years, 91, 97, 172, 3, 260,  
         291.  
 Wars affecting Canada, 172.

# 318 GEOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES TO PLACES.

Wars in France, 12.  
 " " Scotland, 9.  
 " of the Roses, 9.  
 Wesleyans. See Methodists.

West India Company, 60, 65  
 William and Mary, 204.  
 Wittenagemot Saxon, 207.  
 Wyandots. See Indians.

## IV. Geographical References to Places.

Abraham, Plains of, 109.  
 Acadie, name of, 86, 256; 26, 85, 89,  
 230, 256.  
 Agincourt, 11.  
 Aix la Chapelle. See Treaty.  
 Alexandria (in Virginia), 94, 250.  
 Annapolis (Royal), 238, 244, 252.  
 Anticosti Island, 27, 67.  
 Asia, 14, 16, 17, 18.  
 Azores Islands, 17, 26,  
 Bacaleos, 23.  
 Bahama Islands, 20.  
 Baie des Chaleurs, 25, 262.  
 Bannockburn, 9.  
 Beauport, 108, 9, 168.  
 Beausejour fort, 250.  
 Beaver Dams, 161, 171.  
 Boundaries of Brit. Columbia, 805.  
 " Canada, 148, 149.  
 " Hudson Bay, 298.  
 " New Brunswick, 261.  
 " Newfoundland, 283.  
 " Nova Scotia, 231, 4.  
 " Pr. Edward Isl., 274.  
 " Vancouver Isl., 805.

Boundary rivers of Canada, 150.  
 Breton, Cape, 50, 89, 103, 236, 245.  
 British N. America, extent of, 80, 32.  
 Buffalo, N. Y., 162, 174.  
 Burlington Heights, 166, 173.  
 Canaan, Ancient, 13.  
 Canada discovered, 25.  
 " name of, Patron Saint, 51.  
 Canada, geology of, 149.  
 " Upper, settled, 151.  
 Canary Isles, 13.  
 Canso, name of, 244.  
 Castle of St. Louis, 47.  
 Cataract, 63, 68, 74, 76. See  
 Frontenac and Kingston.  
 Cedars rapids, 170.  
 Cipango (Japan), 17, 20.  
 Chambly, 39, 74, 137, 170, 185.  
 Champlain Lake, 39, 72, 114, 167.  
 " Valley, 87.  
 Chateauguay, 164, 163, 5, 171.  
 Chedabucto, 243.  
 China, route to, 23, 68.  
 Chippewa, 163, 171, 2.  
 Chrysler's farm, 164, 5, 171, 3.  
 Cod, Cape, 237.  
 Connecticut, 73, 117, 133.  
 Concheching, Lake, 45, 129.  
 Coulouge, Lake, 42.  
 Creoy, 9, 12.

Crown Point, 86, 74, 95, 97, 102,  
 107, 137, 140.  
 Cuba, 21.  
 Detroit, 74, 83, 90, 116, 157, 173, 4.  
 Du Quene, Fort, 92, 173. (See  
 Pittsburg.)  
 Edward, Fort, 95, 96, 98, 101.  
 England, name of, 8.  
 Erie, Fort, 163, 172.  
 " Lake, 63, 120, 150, 162, 167.  
 Ferro Island, 15, 18.  
 Florida, 30, 38, 83.  
 France, Ancient, 11, 12.  
 Frederic, Fort St. (Crown Poin.)  
 Fredericton, 265, 267.  
 French River, 44, 86, 150.  
 Frontenac, 80, 97, 100, 104.  
 Fundy Bay, 38, 237, 249.  
 Gabarus Bay, name of, 246.  
 Gaspé Peninsula, 25, 62.  
 Gaul, Ancient, 11.  
 Georgia, State of, 133.  
 Georgian Bay, 34, 44, 150.  
 George Lake, 53, 85, 87, 93, 99, 107  
 Germany, 10.  
 Glenagarry cairn, 139.  
 Halifax, 249.  
 Hayti, discovery of, 21.  
 Havana, 21.  
 Hochelaga, 23, 35, 42, 51, 131, 168  
 Hudson Bay, 64, 73, 77, 80, 85.  
 Huron, Lake, 44, 150.  
 Illinois, river, 69.  
 Ireland, conquest of, 9.  
 Iroquois river. See Richelieu.  
 Isle aux Noix, 107, 114, 137, 166, 9  
 Kingston, 153, 166, 170, 191. See  
 Cataract and Frontenac.  
 Labrador, 13, 23, 291, 293.  
 Lachine, 23, 34, 41, 46, 76, 118, 121.  
 Lacolle, 160, 5, 171.  
 La Galette.  
 La Heve, 33.  
 Lakes of Canada, 150.  
 La Representation.  
 Long Sault, 53.  
 Louisbourg, 88, 100, 1, 106, 173, 24,  
 7, 250. See Ogdensburgh.  
 Louisiana, 70, 83, 109, 123.  
 Lundy's Lane, 166, 171, 2.  
 Mackenzie River, 239.  
 Magdalen Islands, 275, 291.  
 Maryland, 91, 94, 130.  
 Massachusetts, 73, 84, 94, 133, 141.  
 Malchedash Bay, 44, 210.

Memp  
 Michi  
 Michi  
 Miran  
 Miss  
 Mobil  
 Moha  
 Geogr

Mont  
 Mont  
 51  
 Moun  
 Navy  
 Neced  
 Nelson  
 New I  
 Newf  
 New I  
 New I  
 New  
 Niaga

15  
 Bipes  
 Potta  
 Lova  
 97  
 Ogden  
 Ohio  
 Ontar  
 Orien  
 " Oswe  
 Oswe  
 Ottav  
 Palos  
 Penet  
 Penn  
 Penol  
 Phoe  
 Phys

Pitts  
 Place

- Memphremagog, Lake, 83.  
 Michigan Lake, 63, 68, 117, 150.  
 Michilimacinao, 74, 118, 157, 167.  
 Miramichi, 266.  
 Mississippi, 66, 67, 69, 83.  
 Mobile settled.  
 Mohawk valley, 97, 102.  
 Geography of Canada, 148, 9.  
     " Nova Scotia, 233.  
     " New Brunswick, 261.  
     " Prince Edward Is., 274.  
     " Newfoundland, 282.  
     " Hudson Bay, 296.  
     " Vancouver I., 304.  
     " British Columbia, 305.  
 Montmorenci, Falls of, 88, 108.  
 Montreal settled, 51, name of, 28,  
     51, 74, 86, 116, 164, 168, 171, 190.  
 Mount Royal, 28, 41.  
 Navy Island, 186.  
 Necessity, Fort, 98.  
 Nelson River, 73, 80, 123.  
 New Brunswick, 25, 182, 190.  
 Newfoundland, 22, 24, 32-3, 85, 122.  
 New France, name of, 40, 89, 91.  
 New Hampshire, 97.  
 Newark (Niagara), 153, 210.  
 New York, 23, 76, 78, 98, 101, 116.  
 Niagara Falls, 69, 120.  
     Fort, &c., 74, 75, 90, 94, 106,  
     158, 161-2, 170-3.  
 Nipissing Lake, 34, 55, 86.  
 Pottawasaga, bay, 46.  
 Nova Scotia, (see Acadia), 65, 89,  
     97, 190, 233.  
 Ogdensburg, 90, 101, 114, 16.  
 Ohio Valley, &c., 89, 91, 94, 105, 121.  
 Ontario Lake, 45, 150.  
 Orleans Isle, 27, 108-9.  
     " New, 187.  
 Oswego, 74, 80, 86, 100, 106, 115, 181.  
 Oswegatchie. See Ogdensburg. 95.  
 Ottawa River, 44, 86, 151.  
 Palos, 18, 21, 34.  
 Penetanguishine, 44.  
 Pennsylvania, 91, 94, 107, 136.  
 Penobscot, 86, 237, 241, 3.  
 Phœnicians, Ancient, 13.  
 Physical features of—  
     British Columbia, 306.  
     Canada, 148, 149.  
     Hudson Bay, 298-9.  
     New Brunswick, 261.  
     Newfoundland, 283.  
     Nova Scotia, 234.  
     Prince Edward Island, 275.  
     Vancouver Island, 305.  
 Pittsburg, 94, 105, 120.  
 Placentia, 245.  
 Poitiers, 9, 12.  
 Port Royal, 36, 37, 78, 80, 232, 269.  
 Portugal, 13, 15, 21, 123.  
 Prairie du Chien, 167.  
 Prescott windmill, 188.  
 Prince Edward Island, 249, 274.  
 Prince Rupert Land, 299.  
 Quebec, 27, 32, 38, 85, 116, 137, 168.  
 Queenstown, 155, 159, 170, 3.  
 Quinté, Bay of, 45, 130, 150.  
 Red River (of the North), 214, 299.  
 Richelieu River, 30, 52, 87.  
 Rivers of Canada, 149, 150.  
 Rocky Mountains, 87, 123, 211.  
 Sabie, Cape, 264.  
     " Island, 30, 236.  
 Sackett's Harbour, 164, 6, 171.  
 Saguenay River, 27, 29, 66, 149.  
 St. Anthony Falls, 69.  
 Ste. Claire, Lake, 69, 120, 150.  
 Ste Croix, 36, 237, 263.  
 Ste. Foye, 55, 114, 168.  
 St. Helens, 141.  
 St. John (New Brunswick), 263.  
 St. John River (New Brun.), 237.  
 St. Johns (Newfoundland), 100.  
 St. Joseph, 55, 157.  
 St. Lawrence River, 149.  
 St. Malo, 24, 25, 43.  
 St. Maurice, 149.  
 San Salvador Island, 207.  
 Saratoga, surrender at, 141, 169.  
 Sarnia, name of, 151.  
 Saskatchewan, 123, 211, 299.  
 Sault Ste. Marie, 56, 63, 66, 74, 116.  
 Schenectady, 77, 100, 1.  
 Simcoe Lake, 34, 45, 127, 150.  
 Southern States, 94, 288.  
 Stadacona, 28.  
 Stoney Creek, 161, 170.  
 Superior Lake, 55, 87, 150.  
 Sydney. See Cape Breton Isl.  
 Tadoussac, 34, 36, 47, 49, 74, 236.  
 Thames River (U. C.) 150, 162, 164.  
 Three Rivers, 35, 50, 53, 63, 74, 77,  
     85, 132, 139.  
 Ticonderoga, 95, 99, 102, 106, 7, 137.  
 Toronto, 74, 90, 161, 166.  
 Trent River, 34, 153.  
 Utrecht. See Treaty.  
 Vancouver Island, 304.  
 Victoria. See Vancouver Isl.  
 Virginia, 91, 94, 130, 133, 141, 2, 239.  
 Welland Canal, 179, 223.  
 West India Company.  
 William Henry, fort, 95, 99, 101, 2.  
 Wolfe's cave and ravine, 109, 110.  
 Wyoming, massacre at, 117.  
 Yonge Street skirmish, 186.



**APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION OF THE MORE DIFFICULT  
FRENCH, INDIAN, AND OTHER NAMES IN THIS HISTORY.**

Ab-en-a'-quis.  
A-ca-di-a.  
Acadie, a-kad'-ee.  
Ad-i-ron'-dack.  
Aix-la-Chapelle, ahy'-la-sha-pel'.  
André, ahn'-dray.  
Algonquin, al-gons'-kans.  
Ar-kan'-sas, or ar-kan-saw'.  
As-sin-ue-boine, bwoin'.  
Beaultfarnois, bo-har'-nvwah.  
Beauport, bo'-pohr.  
Bienville, bee'-ens-veel.  
Bosquet, bos-keh'.  
Breton, bret'-tons.  
Cabot, cab'-o.  
Caen, kah'-en.  
Callières, kal'-le-yare.  
Cal'-u-met.  
Carnigan, car'-een-yan.  
Cartier, kar'-te-ay.  
Cataragui, ka-ta-rak'-wee.  
Chabot, shah'-bo.  
Chambly, sham'-blee.  
Champligny, sham'-pin-ye.  
Champlain, shaum'-plans.  
Charlemaigne, shart'-mans.  
Charlevoix, shart'-leh-vvoh'.  
Chateauguay, sha-to-gee'.  
Chattes, shat.  
Chauveau, shaw'-voh or sho-vo'.  
Chauvin, shaw'-vans or sho'-vans.  
Colbert, kol'-behr.  
Colligné, kol'-een-yay.  
Condé, kon'-day.  
Contrecoeur, kon'-tre-keur.  
Corteroal, kor-tay-ray'-al.  
Courcelles, koor'-sel.  
Coureur du bois, koo'-reur du bwa'.  
Coutume de Paris, koo'-chume de  
par'-ee.  
D'Alleboust, dah'-ye-boo.  
D'Argenson, dar'-zhon-sons.  
D'Avaugour, daw-vo'-goor.  
Des Meuelles, day-mew'-el.  
Dieskau, dee-es'-ko.  
Doublet, doob'-lay.  
Duchessau, due'-shen-o.  
Du Quesne, due-kehn'.  
Elgin, el'-ghin.  
Etch'-e-mins.  
Fen'-e-lon, or fen'-e-lon.  
Gabarus, gab'-a-roos.  
Gallissionière, ga-lis'-e-on-yare  
Gaspé, gas'-pay.  
Gen'-o-a.  
Ghent, or gons.  
Gravé, Dupont, due-pong'-gra-vay'.  
Grosellères, gro'-sel-e-yare.  
Hayti, hay'-tee.  
Hen'-ne-plin.  
Hi-er-o-glyph-ics.

Hochelaga, ho-she-lah'-ga.  
Iroquois, ee'-ro-quay.  
Isle aux Noix, eel-o-nwah'.  
Joliette, zhol'-ee-yet.  
Jonquière, zhonk'-o-yare.  
La-bra-dor, 'dore'.  
Lachine, la-sheen'.  
Lacolle, la-kol'.  
Lafontaine, la-fon'-tens.  
Lauzon, law'-zons.  
La-val'.  
Lescarbot, leh-scar'-bo.  
Longueuil, lohng-gay'-ee.  
Lemoine, leh-mwain'.  
Lévis, lay'-vee.  
Maisonneuve, may'-sons-nev.  
Marquette, mar-keh'.  
Mazarin, maz'-ar-ahns.  
Mézy, may'-zee.  
Michigan, mish'-e-gan.  
Mich-ll-i-mac'-i-nac, mish-  
Miramichi, mir-a-mi-she'.  
Montcalm, mont'-kahm.  
Montmagny, mont'-man-ye.  
Montmorency, mont-moh-rahns-see'.  
Monts, mohns'.  
Morin, mohr-ahns'.  
Nip'-pi-sing.  
Perrot, per'-ro.  
Pon'-ti-ac.  
Poutrincourt, poo'-trahns-koor.  
Prairie, prayr'-ee.  
Prideaux, preed'-o.  
Prevost, preh-vo'.  
Raleigh, ral-ly.  
Razillai, ra-zee-yay'.  
Richelieu, reesh'-el-yue.  
Rivière du Loup, reev'-yare-du-loo'.  
Roberval, rob'-er-vahl.  
Ste. Croix, saht-kroh'-wah.  
Ste. Foye, saht-fvoh'.  
St. Maurice, saht-mauhr-ees'.  
Sas-katch'-e-wan.  
Sault Ste. Marie, so'-saht-mar'-ea.  
Sal'-a-berry.  
Schuyler, sky-ler.  
Tadoussac, tad'-oos-sac.  
Talon, ta-lons.  
Tecumseth, te-cum'-seh.  
Ti-con-de-ro'-ga.  
Tollier, tol'-yay.  
Tonti, tohnt'-tee.  
Troyes, tro'-wah.  
Turenne, tu-ren'.  
Utrecht, you'-trekt.  
Vancouver, van-koo'.  
Varennnes, vah-ren'.  
Vaudreuil, voh-drah'-yee.  
Ventadour, vahn'-ta-door.  
Ves-pu'-ci-us, se-us.  
Voltaire, vol-tare'.



3.

3

**s-koor.**

oak.

**nt-mar'-e.**

3.